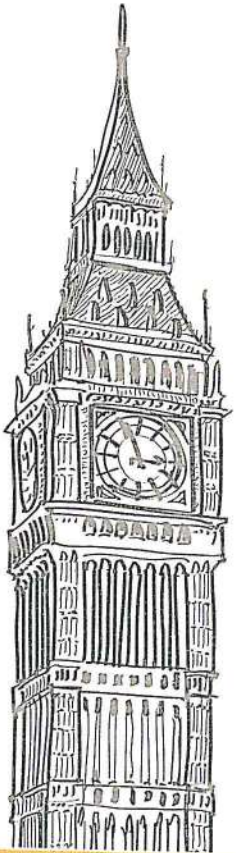
EL-MOASSER

GUIDE

New Hello!

ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors





2nd Prep. 2024

SECOND TERM

طبقًا لاحدث مواصفات
الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣ - ٢٠٢٤

GPS

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication & distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
15014 www.elmoasserbooks.com

Specifications for Second Year Preparatory English Examination 2023 - 2024

مواصفات امتحان اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثانى الإعدادى للعام الدراسى ٢٠٢٣ / ٢٠٢٤

Marks : 24 | **2023 / 2024** | **Time : Two hours**

A Listening (4 Marks)

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(4 Marks)*

Students listen to a text from (30 - 35) words. Topics should be related to the Set Books. Students listen and answer **FOUR (4)** multiple choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each. **(One mark each)**

B Language Functions (2.5 Marks)

2 Complete the following dialogue : *(2.5 Marks)*

A dialogue of **TEN (10)** exchanges with **FIVE (5)** deletions (3 responses & 2 stimuli) is provided. Students are asked to complete the deletions completely without providing them with any guidance. The situation should be provided and clear. The first sentence is given in full.

(Half a mark each)

C Reading Comprehension (4.5 Marks)

3 Read the following, then answer the questions : *(4.5 Marks)*

An unseen text of about **ONE HUNDRED and TWENTY-FIVE (125)** words is provided. This can be a short story, a factual text, a timetable or a letter. Most lexical items and all structures in the text should be from the Set Books. Students are required to answer **THREE (3)** multiple-choice questions with **FOUR (4)** options each **(Half a mark each)** and **THREE (3)** open-ended questions **(One mark each)**.

These questions should test the following reading comprehension skills :

- Giving the main idea (1 question)
- Extracting information (2 questions)
- Understanding reference (1 question)
- Guessing the meaning of vocabulary in context (1 question)
- Critical thinking skill (1 question)

D Vocabulary & Structure (7 Marks)

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(5 Marks)*

TEN (10) multiple-choice items (7 vocabulary & 3 structures) based on the Set Books are provided. Students are asked to choose the correct answer from the **FOUR (4)** options given. **(Half a mark each)**

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets: *(2 Marks)*

FOUR (4) structure sentences are provided. Students are asked to complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets. The given word(s) in brackets could be verbs, adjectives, adverbs ... etc. related to what students have studied. **(Half a mark each)**

E Writing (6 Marks)

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on ... : *(6 Marks)*

Students are asked to write a paragraph from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85) to NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books.

(One mark for organization-One mark for relevance of ideas - One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)

OR

Write an email of about NINETY (90) words on ... : *(6 Marks)*

Students are asked to write an email from **EIGHTY-FIVE (85) to NINETY-FIVE (95)** words on a specific topic related to the Set Books. Students must write who the email is to and from, as well as the subject of the e-mail. Names and addresses are provided.

(One mark for organization-One mark for relevance of ideas. One mark for choice of vocabulary - One mark for spelling - One mark for punctuation - One mark for grammar)

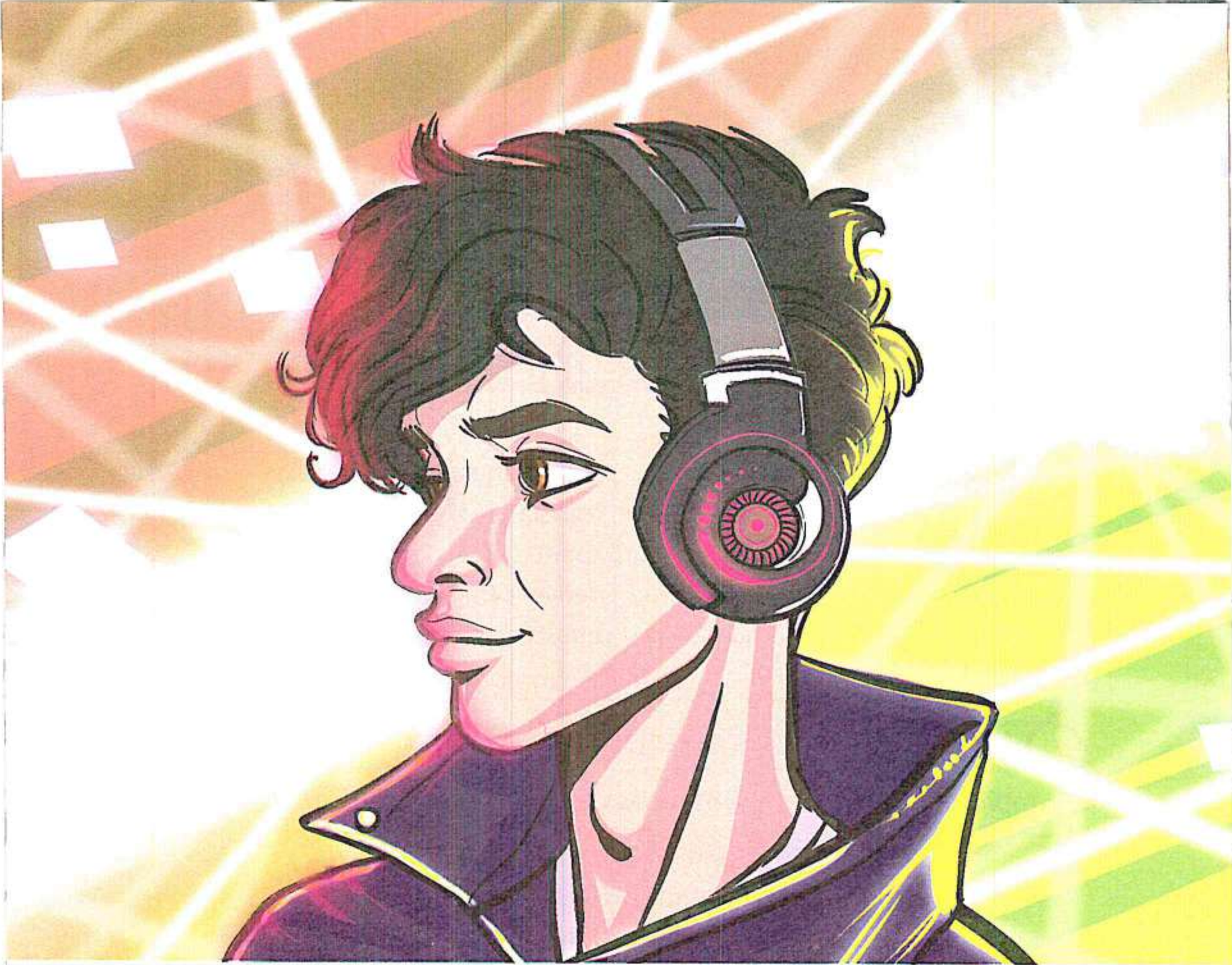
توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الثانى الإعدادى للعام الدراسى ٢٠٢٣/٢٠٢٤ Second Term

Months	New Hello! English for Preparatory Schools Year Two (SB+WB)
February	Unit 7
March	Unit 8 + Unit 9 + Review C + Unit 10
April	Unit 10 Cont. + Unit 11 + Unit 12
May	Review D + General Revision

Contents

Unit 7	Technology and the future	11
Unit 8	You are what you eat	65
Unit 9	Watch, listen and make	113
Review C		160
Unit 10	We are what we wear	165
Unit 11	The future of our planet	213
Unit 12	Languages and learning	262
Review D		310
Videoscript		313
Answers of Topics		315
Listening Texts		319





Unit 7

Technology and the future

SB pages 2:11 WB pages 70:76

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  A magazine article about online shopping; The Time Machine; a poster about the dangers of technology
- **Writing :**
  A reply to an online message; a formal email about a problem with a delivery
- **Listening :**
  A discussion about new inventions; people's problems with technology and suggested solutions
- **Speaking :**
  Giving opinions about inventions and technology; a debate
- **Language :**
  if / when + should for advice
- **Life Skills :**
  Critical thinking : technological awareness

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 2 : 5
WB pages 70 & 71



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

headphones (n)	سماعات الأذن	solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
invention (n)	اختراع	translate (d) (v)	يترجم
app (n)	تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الحاسوب	speed (n)	سرعة
motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية	delivery (n)	خدمة توصيل [للمنازل، للمكاتب ...]
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية [هليوكوبتر]	businesses (n)	مشاريع أو أعمال تجارية
electricity (n)	كهرباء	technology (n)	تكنولوچيا

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

delivery - Helicopters - motorbike - translate - app

1. .... are like planes, but they don't have wings.
2. My mobile phone has a/an .... that tells me about the weather.
3. I asked Mr Ahmed to .... the text from English into Arabic.
4. I wondered if there's a .... service in this restaurant. I want to order pizza.

Lesson 1 SB pages 2 & 3 WB page 70

language (n)	لغة	machine (n)	آلة
push (ed) (v)	يدفع	invent (ed) (v)	يخترع
correction (n)	تصحيح	translation (n)	ترجمة
wings (n)	أجنحة	resources (n)	مصادر
predict (ed) (v)	يتنبأ	research (n)	بحث
prediction (n)	تنبؤ	results (n)	نتائج

Lesson 2 SB pages 4 & 5 WB page 71

shopping (n)	تسوق	try (ied) (v)	يجرب - يحاول
online (adj), (adv)	متصل بالإنترنت	pollution (n)	تلوث
type (n)	نوع	benefits (n)	فوائد
choice (n)	اختيار	owe (d) (v)	يدين
shop(ped) (v)	يتسوق	coat (n)	معطف / بالطو

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs
تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
build	يبنى	built	built
know	يعرف	knew	known
speak	يتحدث	spoke	spoken
spend	يقضى - ينفق	spent	spent
find	يجد	found	found

Study these definitions
ادرس هذه التعريفات

app	a small computer program that you can use on a mobile phone or other electronic device	تطبيق
motorbike	a form of transport with two wheels and an engine	دراجة نارية
helicopter	a form of transport that flies using long, thin parts on top of it that turn round and round very quickly	طائرة مروحية
headphones	a piece of equipment that you wear over your ears so that you can listen to music without anyone else hearing it	سماعات الأذن
translate	change words into a different language	يترجم
speed	how fast something moves	سرعة

Collocations
متلازمات لفظية

have	free time	لديه وقت فراغ	**save**	time	يوفر الوقت
	money	لديه مال		money	يدخر مال
	a choice	لديه إختيار			
waste	money	يهدر المال	**go**	shopping	يتسوق
	time	يضيع الوقت			

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
necessary	ضرورى	essential / needed	unnecessary	غير ضرورى
famous	مشهور	well-known	unknown	غير معروف
real	حقيقى	true	false / unreal	غير حقيقى
strong	قوى	powerful	weak	ضعيف

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة وناهية
Prefix / Suffix	**Function** الوظيفة	**Examples** أمثلة
-tion	تكون الاسم من الفعل أو الصفة	prediction تنبؤ invention اختراع correction تصحيح
-ful	تكوّن الصفة من الفعل	useful مفيد
-y	تكون الاسم من الفعل	delivery توصيل

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The teacher wants our notebooks for correction. The suffix "-tion" in the word "correction" forms a/an ....
   a. verb   b. noun   c. adverb   d. adjective
2. Studying your lessons regularly is necessary. "Necessary" means ....
   a. unnecessary   b. optional   c. essential   d. true
3. The opposite of the word "real" is ".............." .
   a. happy   b. known   c. false   d. true
4. Going to the gym will make your muscles **strong**. The underlined word "**strong**" means not ".............." .
   a. good   b. weak   c. powerful   d. false
5. The "-y" in the word "delivery" makes it a/an ....
   a. noun   b. adverb   c. adjective   d. pronoun

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 will be able to + inf. تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شيء في المستقبل

- I'**ll be able to** do all the shopping in one place. *(SB page 3)*

2 * prefer + (inf. + ing) / noun يفضل

- I **prefer** going to real shops in my city.
- I **prefer** fruit as a snack.

*** ('d) would prefer to + inf.** يُفضّل أن

- She'**d prefer** to eat pizza.

*** prefer (noun / inf. + ing) to (noun / inf. + ing)** يفضل (شئ) على (شئ)

- He **prefers** reading **to** watching TV.
- She **prefers** tea **to** coffee. *(SB page 4)*

3 *** spend + (time) + (inf. + ing)** يقضى (وقت) في ...

- I don't want to **spend** lots of time **travelling** to the shops.

*** spend + (time) with + (noun)** يقضى (وقت) مع ...

- Other people like to **spend** time **with** friends at the shops.

*** spend + (money) on (noun/ inf. + ing)** ينفق على

- She **spends** more money **on** clothes.
- He **spends** most of his money **on** buying books. *(SB page 4)*

4 **لاحظ** : تستخدم businesses كاسم جمع معدود بمعنى مشاريع تجارية أو شركات

- My father has **a business** in Assiut and two **businesses** in Banha.

وتستخدم أيضًا business كاسم (لا يُعد) بمعنى عمل تجارى

- **Business** brings a lot of money. *(SB page 4)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
make you warmer	يجعلك أكثر دفئًا ...	translate from ... into ...	يترجم من اللغة ... إلى اللغة ....
make electricity	يولد كهرباء	push ... into the air	يدفع ... في الهواء
make people feel cooler	يجعل الناس تشعر بالانتعاش أكثر	at the speed of ...	بسرعة ...
		find out about	يكتشف عن ...
the latest technology	أحدث تكنولوجيا	stay at	يمكث في
do shopping online	يتسوق عبر الإنترنت	wait for	ينتظر
the least useful	الأقل فائدة	agree with ...	يتفق مع ...
make pollution	يسبب تلوث	go down a road	يمشى على الطريق
give your reasons	اذكر أسبابك / مبرراتك	You are for ...	أنت مع (مؤيد) ...
pass all my exams	اجتاز كل اختباراتي	You are against ...	أنت ضد ...
get hotter	يزداد حرارة / سخونة	run at ...	يسير بسرعة ...

UNIT 7

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

- on Lesson 1 SB page 2



This clever jacket uses an **app**[1] to make you warmer when the weather is cold.



When these **headphones**[2] hear another language, they can **translate**[3] it into your language.



Change roads into **solar panels**[4] ! This invention uses strong glass that you can drive on and make **electricity**[5] at the same time.



Is it a motorbike ? Is it a helicopter ? No, this **invention**[6] is half-motorbike and half-helicopter ! It can **push you into the air**[7] at the **speed**[8] of a fast car !

(1) تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الكمبيوتر	(2) سماعات الأذن	(3) يترجم
(4) ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	(5) كهرباء	(6) اختراع
(7) يدفعك فى الهواء	(8) سرعة	

- on Lesson 2 SB page 4

Shopping online - Yes or No ?

Injy - I love **online shopping** [1] !



Baher - I **prefer**[7] *going to* **real**[8] *shops in my city.*



Shopping online is great ! Firstly, it **saves**[2] me time. I don't want to spend lots of time **travelling**[3] to the shops. I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes. Secondly, I have more **choices**[4] online. Also, if more people **shop**[5] online, there will be fewer cars on the road and less **pollution**[6] **!** I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

Every time I buy clothes online, the thing that I buy is wrong ! At a shop, I can see what I am buying and I can **try**[9] it first. Also, I don't like to **waste**[10] time waiting for **a delivery**[11] – I want things now ! If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close. If they close, then lots of other **businesses**[12] like cafés will close, too.

(1) التسوق عبر الإنترنت
(2) يوفر
(3) سفر
(4) اختيارات
(5) يتسوق
(6) تلوث
(7) يفضل
(8) حقيقى
(9) يجرب
(10) يضيع / يهدر
(11) توصيل الطلبات للمنازل
(12) مشاريع تجارية

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information إستخراج معلومات

Learn 1. Why does Injy think shopping online is great ?
- ***Because it saves time and she has more choices online.***

Practise 2. Why does Baher prefer going to real shops in his city ?
....

on Lesson 2 WB page 71



Mother : Ahmed, your plane will **arrive in**[1] England at 11 o'clock.
Ahmed : Who will meet me at the airport if the plane's late ?
Mother : Uncle Sami will **wait for you**[2], don't worry !
Ahmed : What clothes will I wear if it's cold ?
Mother : You have a big coat, but it will be warm inside !
Ahmed : Who will I talk to if I don't know anyone at the school ?
Mother : There will be lots of new students, they'll be very friendly.
Ahmed : What will the teacher say if I don't understand the lesson ?
Mother : He or she will help you to understand.
Ahmed : What will I eat if I don't like the food ?
Mother : Aunt Judy will cook Egyptian food, but you should try English food, too !

(1) يصل إلى | (2) ينتظرك

Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 3

a


b


c


d


1. Narrator : Hatem
Hatem : Wow ! That looks so **cool**[1] ! I'm not sure it's very **useful**[2] **though**[3]. It won't be able to fly very high, will it ?

2. Narrator : Manal
Manal : I think lots of people will want to buy one of these; they'll be very useful for travelling. It won't help people to speak other languages though, will it ? It's only **good for**[4] listening.

3. Narrator : Tarek
Tarek : I think this is a good idea for people in cold places. It won't be very useful for me though ! Maybe they will make one to make people feel cooler ! That would be good here in the summer !

4. Narrator : Sawsan
Sawsan : I think that is an amazing invention. I hope they will build lots of these in Egypt. We have lots of sun and we could make lots of electricity.

(1) رائع | (2) مفيد | (3) برغم ذلك | (4) مفيد لـ/ جيد لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. I bought a new mobile phone with a/an .... that measures the temperature of the human body.
   a. app   b. device   c. road   d. job
2. I ordered a medium pizza but the .... was late.
   a. travelling   b. delivery   c. riding   d. driving
3. The mobile phone is one of the most important .... of our age.
   a. predictions   b. inventions   c. corrections   d. translations
4. I like to wear my .... on the bus to listen to music.
   a. helmet   b. headphones   c. glasses   d. jacket

5. This message is written in German. Can you .... it into Arabic ?
   a. transfer   b. predict   c. translate   d. fix

SB , WB and Previous Exams

6. A .... has two wheels and an engine. *(Helwan - Cairo 2023)*
   a. bike   b. taxi   c. motorbike   d. truck
7. .... panels make electricity from the sun. *(Tur Sinai - South Sinai 2023)*
   a. Snow   b. Wind   c. Moon   d. Solar
8. SB If the shops close, then lots of other .... like cafés will close, too.
   a. jobs   b. businesses   c. ideas   d. circles
   (Qallin - Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)
9. WB Do you think there will be many .... in your English homework ?
   a. corrections   b. apps   c. turns   d. tools
10. WB Do you .... that the weather will get hotter in the future ?
    a. have   b. invent   c. give   d. predict
    (Multidisciplinary exam - El Nozha - Cairo 2021)

El-Moasser Exercises

11. Scientists will .... a car that doesn't make any pollution in the future.
    a. invite   b. invent   c. invest   d. intend
12. Shopping online is great because it .... time.
    a. invites   b. invents   c. describes   d. saves

▶ Definitions

13. A/An .... is a form of transport that flies using long, thin parts on top of it.
    a. choice   b. helicopter   c. motorbike   d. invention
14. .... is how fast something moves.
    a. Speed   b. Weight   c. Length   d. Height

▶ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. Green buses and electric cars don't .... any pollution.
    a. tell   b. give   c. make   d. do
16. You should stay .... home in very hot weather.
    a. on   b. at   c. up   d. onto

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

1. Discussion on new inventions

١. مناقشة عن الاختراعات الحديثة

Questions	Answers
1. What invention do you hope you will see in the future ? - ما هو الاختراع الذي تتمنى أن تراه في المستقبل ؟	- I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon. - أتمنى أن يتم اختراع دراجة بخارية طائرة قريبًا.
2. Which of these inventions do you think won't be used very much in Egypt ? Why ? - أى من هذه الاختراعات تعتقد لن تكون ملائمة (مستخدمة) كثيرًا في مصر ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I think that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt because the weather here is not too cold. - أعتقد أن الجاكيت لن يكون مفيد كثيرًا في مصر لأن الطقس هنا ليس شديد البرودة.
3. Which of these inventions do you think will become the most used ? Why ? - أى من هذه الاختراعات تعتقد سيكون الأكثر استخدامًا ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I think the headphones will become the most used invention because they'll be useful for travelling. - اعتقد سماعات الأذن ستكون أكثر الاختراعات استخدامًا لأنها ستكون مفيدة للسفر.

2. Predicting the future

٢. التنبؤ بالمستقبل

Questions	Answers
1. What do you think will happen in the future ? - ماذا تعتقد سوف يحدث في المستقبل ؟	- I think that robots will be in every house. - أعتقد أنه سيكون هناك أجهزة إنسان آلى في كل منزل.
2. What do you think won't happen in the future ? - ما الذي تعتقد انه لن يحدث في المستقبل ؟	- I think people won't go to space on holiday. - أعتقد أن الناس لن تذهب إلى الفضاء في العطلة.

3. A discussion on online shopping
٣. مناقشة عن التسوق عبر الإنترنت

Questions	Answers
1. Do you like online shopping ? Why / Why not ? - هل تحب التسوق عبر الإنترنت ؟ لما / لما لا ؟	- Yes. Because it saves time. - نعم. لأنه يوفر الوقت. - No. Because I can't try things before I buy. - لا. لأنني لا أستطيع أن أجرب الأشياء قبل شرائها.
2. What type of things do you like to buy ? Why ? - ما نوع الأشياء التى تحب شرائها ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I like to buy clothes because I like to wear modern clothes. - أحب شراء الملابس لأننى أحب ارتداء ملابس عصرية.

3. Writing
مهارة الكتابة

"Advantages and disadvantages of online shopping"

مزايا وعيوب التسوق عبر الأنترنت

1. Shopping online is great because it saves time.

١. التسوق عبر الأنترنت رائع لانه يوفر الوقت.

2. When you shop online, you have more choices.

٢. عندما تتسوق عبر الانترنت ، يكون لديك اختيارات أكثر.

3. Shopping online reduces pollution.

٣. التسوق عبر الأنترنت يقلل التلوث.

4. When you shop online, there will be fewer cars on the road.

٤. عندما تتسوق عبر الأنترنت، سيكون هناك سيارات أقل على الطريق.

5. Other people prefer going to real shops in the city.

٥. بعض الناس يفضل الذهاب إلى محلات فى المدينة.

6. They can buy things and try them first.

٦. فهم يستطيعوا شراء الأشياء وتجربتها أولًا.

7. They don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery.

٧. أنهم لا يحبون أن يضيعوا وقتًا فى انتظار استلام الاشياء.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة الـ

قم بإستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة

80 Dialogues
80 Paragraphs & E-mails

Shopping online

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. What do you think about .... ? التسوق عبر الإنترنت
   - I think it is great.

2. Why do you think shopping online is .... ? رائع/ عظيم
   - Because I can stay at home and buy the things I want in a few minutes.

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is asking Samy about shopping online.

Ali : Do you like shopping online ?
Samy : (1) ....
Ali : (2) .... ?
Samy : Because it saves time.
Ali : (3) .... ?
Samy : Yes, it is easy to buy things online.
Ali : What kind of things do you usually order ?
Samy : (4) ....
Ali : Do you think that we will do all our shopping online in the future ?
Samy : (5) .... I think we will have to go to the shops. *(Bolak El Dakrur - Giza 2023)*

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Shopping online"

....

Inventions for the future

Step 1

1. What is your best .... for the future ? And why ? اختراع
   - I think these headphones because you hear another language and they can translate it into your language.

2. What do you think about this .... ? تطبيق
   - I think it is great and useful.

Step 2

Manar is asking Tala about the invention she hopes to see in the future.

Manar : What invention do you hope to see in the future ?
Tala : (1) ....
Manar : Flying suits ! (2) .... ?
Tala : A flying suit is a suit with buttons that you can press on to move from one place to another.
Manar : Great ! (3) .... ?
Tala : Yes, I think it'll be useful. It'll save a lot of time and solve the problem of traffic. What about you ?
Manar : (4) ....
Tala : Why do you think so ?
Manar : (5) ....
Tala : I agree with you. It'll be very expensive, but it will be a matter of time.

Step 3

"Your best invention for the future"

....

III Language

Remember تذكر

1. The future with "will" : المستقبل باستخدام (will)

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

ex. The headphones will be very useful for travelling.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject (الفاعل) + will not / (won't) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

ex. The boy won't be able to ride the bike.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

3 Yes / No Question السؤال بـ"هل"

Will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. ? (مصدر الفعل)

ex. - Will you go swimming next week ?

- Yes, I will. No, I won't.

4 Wh- Question السؤال بأداة استفهام

Question word (كلمة الاستفهام) + will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. ? (مصدر الفعل)

ex. - Where will you go tomorrow ?

- I will visit my uncle tomorrow.

Usage الاستخدام

Prediction without evidence : التنبؤ بالمستقبل بدون دليل :

تستخدم (will+ inf.) عند التنبؤ بأحداث في المستقبل [بدون دليل واضح على حدوث الشـيء] تأتى معها كلمات مثل :

- (hope يأمل/ think يعتقد / promise يوعد/ be sure متأكد/ expect يتوقع/ predict يتنبأ)

maybe	probable	probably	perhaps
ربما	محتمل	من المحتمل	ربما

ex. - I hope they will build lots of schools in Egypt.
- Maybe they will make this clever jacket to help people be warmer.

تستخدم الكلمات التالية مع زمن المستقبل البسيط:

tomorrow غدًا / in the future في المستقبل / soon قريبًا /
next القادم (week/month/year ...)

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. I hope we .... the next match. *(Bolak el Dakrour - Giza 2023)*
   a. wins b. winning c. won d. will win
2. They will .... a lot of things there. *(El Zawya El Hamra - Giza 2023)*
   a. doing b. do c. did d. does
3. WB .... shops close in the next ten years ?
   a. Do b. Are c. Have d. Will
4. SB I think the headphones .... very useful for travelling.
   a. will be b. are going to be c. be d. would be
5. WB Do you predict that the weather .... hotter in the future ?
   a. gets b. got c. will get d. are getting
6. SB What invention do you hope we .... in the future ?
   a. seen b. will see c. sees d. saw
7. Next month, I .... in the third year of prep school. *(El Salheya El Gedida - Sharkia 2022)*
   a. will be b. am c. was d. have

El-Moasser Exercises

8. I agree that the jacket won't .... useful in Egypt !
   a. be b. is c. are d. was
9. I hope that Egypt .... the richest country in the world.
   a. becoming b. will become c. to become d. became
10. What .... you do next weekend ?
   a. do b. are c. will d. have

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and previous Exams

1. WB I think we will .... (doing) the shopping online more.
2. WB I hope there .... (is) less air pollution in the future.
3. SB Maybe they .... (make) one to help people be cooler.
4. SB The machine won't .... (being) able to fly very high.
5. Scientists .... (find) new medicines in the future. *(Faqous - Sharkia 2022)*
6. I think you .... (will wins) the next medal. *(El Wakf - Qena 2023)*
7. Do you think that we will .... (invents) a car that doesn't make any pollution ? *(Saidi Salem - Kafr El Sheikh 2023)*

El-Moasser Exercises

8. She will probably .... (eating) pizza tomorrow.
9. .... (Do) you go with me to the zoo next week ? - No, I won't.
10. Samy .... (be) fifteen next Wednesday.

Remember تذكر

2. The first conditional الحالة الشرطية الأولى

Formation التكوين

1 Statements الجمل الخبرية

- If / When (عندما - إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , future simple (will / won't + inf.)
- Future simple (will / won't + inf.) + if / when (عندما - إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

لاحظ وضع comma (،) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية فى حالة وجود [If / When] فى البداية.

ex. - If/When I go to the shops, I will spend a lot of money.

2 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

(A) Yes/No question : (أ) السؤال بـ "هل" :

Will + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر) + if / when + present simple tense? (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - Will Ali wait for the bus if it is late ?
- Yes, he will. - No, he will not (won't).

(B) Wh-question : (ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word (كلمة استفهام) + will + subj. (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر) + if /when + present simple tense? (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - What will the teacher do if I don't understand the lesson ?
- He will help you to understand the lesson.

• Usage الاستخدام

• We use the first conditional to express prediction.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتعبير عن التنبؤ (للتحدث عن أشياء نتوقع حدوثها فى المستقبل).

ex. - When Huda visits Cairo, she will buy some new shoes.
- Hassan will not use the internet to buy food when he is older.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. If he .... all his exams, he'll be happy.
   a. pass b. passed c. will pass d. passes
   (Manshaat Al Qanater - Giza 2023)
2. What clothes .... if it's cold ?
   a. will I wear b. wear c. will wear I d. I will wear
   (El Maadi - Cairo 2023)

3. If Malak .... too much, she will put on weight.
a. ate b. eats c. eating d. eat
(West Shubra El Kheima - Qalyubia 2022)

4. SB If I .... to the shops, I will spend a lot of money.
a. go b. went c. goes d. going
(Faraskour - Damietta 2023)

5. SB If I help my mother at the weekend, she .... have more free time.
a. 'll b. 'd c. 's d. should

6. I .... do all my shopping online when I'm older. *(Daraw - Aswan 2023)*
a. was b. am c. will d. have

El-Moasser Exercises

7. If she .... the room with her sister, mother will be glad.
a. share b. shares c. shared d. is sharing

8. Hala .... good at English if she practises well.
a. will be b. can c. was d. would be

9. If Ahmed .... eat vegetables, he won't be healthy.
a. don't b. isn't c. doesn't d. didn't

10. Sally .... sad if she fails the exam.
a. be b. was c. being d. will be

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. SB Mona will look online for a new phone when she .... (get) home.
2. SB Hassan .... (not use) the internet to buy food when he is older.
3. WB Who will I talk to if I .... (not know) anyone at the school ?
4. If I see Mark, I .... (ask) him to call you. *(Agouza - Giza 2022)*
5. Ali will be sad if he .... (got) low marks. *(Al Bagour - Menoufia 2023)*

El-Moasser Exercises

6. What .... (would) you do if you get the prize ?
7. If he studies hard, ... (he will) get high mark.
8. When we have free time, we .... (goes) shopping.
9. What .... (you do) if you win the competition ?
10. Sara .... (buy) a car if she has enough money.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. What does Hoda love ?
   a. Sports b. Swimming
   c. Shopping online d. History
2. What does shopping online save ?
   a. Time b. Money c. Water d. Pollution
3. Where can she shop online ? - At ....
   a. shops b. school c. home d. work
4. Hoda can buy what she needs in a few .... at home.
   a. hours b. minutes c. places d. colours

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mariam and Noha are talking about shopping.

Mariam : What did you do today ?
Noha : (1) ....
Mariam : Did you buy anything ?
Noha : (2) ....
Mariam : (3) .... ?
Noha : I bought this coat. (4) ....?
Mariam : Yes, I like it a lot. It's very nice. Where did you buy it ?
Noha : At the mall.
Mariam : Was it expensive ?
Noha : (5) .... It cost just 200 pounds.

(Samalut - Minya 2022)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I don't have many .... This is the only solution.
   a. equipment b. choices c. advice d. information
   (Meet Abou Ghalab - Damietta 2023)
2. The mobile is the greatest .... in our life.
   a. invitation b. discovery c. invention d. translation
   (Menyat-El Nasr - Dakahlia 2023)

3. This modern car can travel at a high ....
   a. speed b. price c. panel d. app
4. Scientists .... that we won't use oil in the near future.
   a. build b. repeat c. predict d. invent
5. I like to wear my .... on the bus to listen to music.
   a. helmet b. motorbike c. helicopter d. headphones
   (Taba - South Sinai 2022)
6. In the future, cars will make less ....
   a. population b. translation c. competition d. pollution
7. If everyone shops online, the shops in our town ....
   a. will close b. closed c. closes d. has closed
   (El Zarka - Damietta 2023)
8. Scientists think that this medicine .... useful for coronavirus. It's amazing. *(Ain Shams - Cairo 2022)*
   a. aren't b. won't be c. are d. will be
9. If I finish my homework early, I .... watch TV.
   a. should b. will c. shouldn't d. didn't
10. Do you think it is easy to .... from Arabic into English ?
   a. invent b. translate c. speak d. stop

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If Rana .... (play) well, she will win. *(Meet Abou Ghaleb – Damietta 2023)*
2. If Emad goes to England, he .... (visit) London. *(Rafah - North Sinai 2022)*
3. Ali will .... (flies) to America next week. *(Benha - Qalyubia 2022)*
4. What ....(would) you do if you come first ?

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Shopping online"

....

....

....

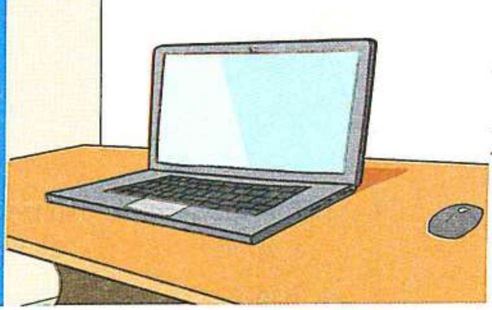
....

....

(Abu Hammad - Sharkia 2022)

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 6 : 8
WB pages 72 & 73



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

addicted (adj)	مدمن	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
horrible (adj)	رهيب / شنيع	lever (n)	رافعة / مقبض / ذراع تشغيل
headache (n)	صداع	explore (d) (v)	يستكشف

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

addicted - headache - horrible - social media - explore

1. People use .... apps to talk to each other on the internet.
2. Scientists went to the island to .... new places.
3. I saw a .... accident on the road.
4. Some young people always need to surf the internet. They are .... to it.

Lesson 3 SB pages 6 & 7 WB page 72

check (ed) (v)	يفحص / يتصفح	parents (n)	الوالدين
share (d) (v)	يشارك / يتشارك	planning (n)	تخطيط
expert (n)	خبير	drop (ped) (v)	يلقى - يسقط
injured (adj)	مصاب	climate change (n)	تغير المناخ

Lesson 4 SB page 8 WB page 73

time traveller (n)	مسافر عبر الزمن	copy (ied) (v), (n)	ينسخ - نسخة
time machine (n)	آلة الزمن	suddenly (adv)	فجأة
space (n)	الفضاء	planets (n)	كواكب
model (n)	نموذج	illness (n)	مرض

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
show	يوضح / يبين	showed	shown
hurt	يؤلم / يؤذى	hurt	hurt
sleep	ينام	slept	slept
cost	يتكلف	cost	cost
send	يرسل	sent	sent
understand	يفهم	understood	understood

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

addicted	• liking something so much that you want to do or have it all the time • always needing to do or have something	مدمن
disappear	suddenly go somewhere and become impossible to find	يختفى
explore	look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there	يستكشف
headache	a pain inside your head	صداع
horrible	very bad, not nice at all	رهيب / شنيع
lever	a handle that you push or pull to make a machine work	مقبض/رافعة
social media	websites and computer programs that allow people to communicate and share information on the internet using a computer or mobile phone	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
pull	hold something and move it towards you	يسحب - يشد
by mistake	something you do or say without intending to	عن طريق الخطأ
impossible	if an action or event is impossible, it cannot happen or be done	مستحيل

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
possible	ممكن/ محتمل	likely / probable	impossible	مستحيل
pull	يسحب/يجر	draw / drag	push	يدفع
appear	يظهر	show / come out	disappear	يختفى

horrible	رهيب - شنيع	terrible	attractive	جذّاب
allow	يسمح	let	stop / prevent	يمنع

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-ed	يحول الفعل إلى صفة	addicted	مدمن
im-	يعطى عكس الصفة	impossible	مستحيل
-ache	يعطى معنى ألم فى أحد أعضاء الجسم	headache	صداع

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To give the opposite of the adjective "possible", we add the prefix "............." .
   a. ir- b. im- c. il- d. un-
2. To turn the verb "addict" into an adjective, we add the suffix "............." .
   a. - ion b. - ment c. - ed d. -ly
3. "Let me help you, Ali". "Let" has the same meaning as "............." .
   a. prevent b. refuse c. stop d. allow
4. "Drag" has the opposite meaning of the word ".............".
   a. pull b. push c. give d. attract
5. "Headache" means a pain in someone's ....
   a. leg b. ear c. head d. heart

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 allow + مفعول + to + inf. يسمح ... أن

- Social media **allows** people **to** talk to each other on the internet.

let + مفعول + inf. يسمح ... أن

- Social media **lets** people talk to each other on the internet.

(WB page 72)

2 (be / become) addicted to + (inf. + ing) /noun مدمن لـ

- Hany **became addicted** to smoking.
- I think I **am addicted** to my phone.

(SB page 6)

3

لاحظ استخدام الفعل (make) بعدة معاني مختلفة :

* **make + مفعول + inf.** فعل فى المصدر — يجعل
  - It **makes** me feel sad. *(SB page 6)*
* **make + مفعول + صفة** — يجعل
  - It **makes** me sad.
* **make** — يصنع
  - Furniture is **made** in Damietta. *(SB page 6)*

4

لاحظ استخدام كلمة (copy) بعدة معاني مختلفة :

* **copy(n)** — نسخة
  - This is a **copy** of a machine that can go through time. *(SB page 8)*
* **copy (ied) (v)** — يُقلد - ينسخ
  - - A parrot can **copy** people's voices.
    - Our teacher asked us to **copy** all the lesson. *(SB page 8)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
a piece of technology	أحد أشكال التكنولوجيا	by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ
have a headache	يعانى من صداع	say horrible things about	يقول أشياء سيئة عن
play games online	يلعب ألعاب على الإنترنت	the sun came out	أشرقت الشمس
feel worried	يشعر بالقلق	travel (through / in) time	يسافر عبر الزمن
share a photo	يشارك صورة	ready to	جاهز لـ
(have / take) a break	يأخذ راحة	turn your phone off	أغلق تليفونك
take the road south	يسلك الطريق المتجه جنوبًا	take my computer away	يقوم بسحب الكمبيوتر الخاص بـ
make friends	يكون صداقات	for too long	لمدة طويلة جدًا
go north	يتجه ناحية الشمال	on social media	على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
explore the bottom of the sea	يستكشف قاع البحر	go into the past	يسافر إلى الماضي
		believe in	يؤمن بـ

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 6

Shady | Hala | Randa | Adam



1. Narrator : Shady

Shady : I'm not sleeping very well at the moment. I usually watch some videos on the internet before I go to sleep but sometimes I watch them for a few hours and then I can't sleep. My head often **hurts**[1] lots in the morning, too.

2. Narrator : Hala

Hala : I found this great **online game**[2], but I didn't know that when I got new things on it, it **costs**[3] real money ! I hope my parents aren't going to be angry when I tell them how much money I spent ...

3. Narrator : Randa

Randa : I love **social media**[4], I love watching videos online and I love talking to my friends on my phone. But now, I feel **worried**[5] if I don't have my phone or I can't **check**[6] it. I think it is starting to become a problem.

4. Narrator : Adam

Adam : My friends and I like to put funny pictures online but when I share a photo, everyone says my clothes are not **cool**[7] or my hair looks strange. It makes me feel sad.

(1) يؤلم / يؤذى | (2) لعبة على الإنترنت | (3) تتكلف | (4) وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى | (5) قلق | (6) يتصفح | (7) جذاب

on Lesson 3 SB page 6

Narrator : One

Woman : Shady, watching videos before bed is not a good idea. You should try not to take your phone into your bedroom at night.

Narrator : Two

Woman : Hala, you need to **talk to**[1] your parents. They should check that you can't buy anything when you play games online.

Narrator : Three

Woman : Randa, it is important not to become **addicted to**[2] technology. If you feel you can't live without your phone, you should try taking a break every day for an hour or more.

Narrator : Four

Woman : Oh Adam, they don't sound like good friends! Talk to them in real life and tell them how it makes you feel. If they don't change, maybe you should find some new friends.

(1) يتحدث إلى | (2) مدمن على

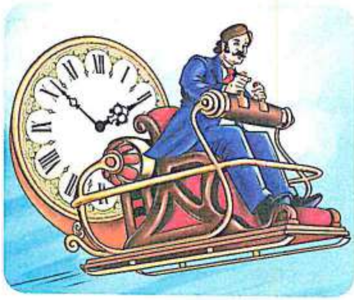
Reading

• on Lesson 4 SB page 8

The Time Machine [1]

by H. G. Wells

London, England, 1895



A group of friends meet for dinner at the Time Traveller's house. After dinner, the Time Traveller asks his friends if they think that it is possible to **travel through time**[2].

"It's impossible !" they reply, "We can only travel through space, not time".

The Time Traveller shows them a small **model**[3] of a machine that he has in his hand.

"This is a **copy**[4] of a machine that I **believe**[5] can go through time. It took me two years to **build**[6]", he tells them. The friends laugh.

"Pull this **lever**[7]," he tells one of **them**.

They feel some wind and then the machine suddenly disappears !

"Where is it ?" the other men ask.

"The model machine is in the future," the Time Traveller says. "Would you like to see the real machine ?" he asks.

He takes them to another room. Inside the room is another, bigger machine. It is not finished.

"In this machine," he says "I will **explore**[8] the past and the future !"

(1) آلة الزمن | (2) يسافر عبر الزمن | (3) نموذج | (4) نسخة | (5) يعتقد | (6) يصمم | (7) رافعة | (8) يستكشف

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information إستخراج معلومات

Learn 1. How long did it take to build the time machine ?
- *It took two years to build.*

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

Practise 2. What does the underlined pronoun **them** in the third paragraph refer to ?
....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Don't use too much social media or you will be .... to them.
   a. worried b. useful c. addicted d. possible
2. Pull this .... towards you to start the machine.
   a. lever b. lift c. liver d. level
3. People sometimes communicate with each other on ....
   a. transport b. social media c. headphones d. video games.

SB , WB and Previous Exams

4. I spent hours watching videos online and now I have a/an .... *(Helwan - Cairo 2023)*
   a. headache b. headphone c. earring d. toothache
5. WB If you don't .... the lesson, you should tell the teacher.
   a. stay b. try c. understand d. visit
6. SB We can only travel through ...., not time. *(Rasheed - Damietta 2022)*
   a. age b. seasons c. space d. advice
7. SB I think it is .... to travel in time. It can't happen.
   a. important b. impossible c. easy d. possible
8. The door was very heavy, so we had to .... it open. *(Manzala - Dakahlia 2023)*
   a. explore b. pull c. pick d. drop

El-Moasser Exercises

9. My father is a/an .... doctor. He knows everything about medicine.
   a. lazy b. expert c. happy d. ready
10. I can't find my watch. It's ....
    a. hurt b. found c. sent d. disappeared
11. I'd like to .... my new photos with my friends on the internet.
    a. discuss b. cut c. share d. explore

Definitions

12. "...................." means to look around a place where you have never been in order to find out what is there.
    a. Explore b. Help c. Allow d. Send

13. .... means very bad, not nice at all.
   a. Impossible   b. Exciting   c. Horrible   d. Free

▶ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

14. I took Omar's book .... mistake.
   a. at   b. in   c. by   d. on
15. Sitting next to the fire .... the old woman warmer.
   a. cleaned   b. burnt   c. caught   d. made
16. You should .... a break after sitting on a computer for a long time.
   a. make   b. have   c. do   d. feel

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▶ **Discussion about using technology every day**

مناقشة عن استخدام التكنولوجيا يوميًا

Questions	Answers
1. What types of technology do you use every day ? - ما هي أنواع التكنولوچيا التي تستخدمها كل يوم ؟	- I always use my smartphone, laptop and computer. - استخدم دائمًا هاتفي الذكي والكمبيوتر المحمول والحاسوب.
2. What do you use these types of technology for ? - فيما تستخدم هذه الأنواع من التكنولوچيا ؟	- I use them in communication, education and health. - استخدمهم في التواصل والتعليم والصحة.
3. Which is the most important piece of technology for you ? Why ? - ما هي أهم صور التكنولوچيا بالنسبة لك ؟ ولماذا ؟	- I think it is my smartphone. Because I use it to search for information, reading news and entertainment. - أعتقد أنه هاتفي الذكي وذلك بسبب أنني أستخدمه في البحث عن المعلومات وقراءة الأخبار والتسلية.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

"Video games"

ألعاب الفيديو

"Video games" ألعاب الفيديو

1. Playing video games is my favourite hobby. ١. ألعاب الفيديو هوايتي المفضلة.
2. I spend too much time online, but it's not a good habit.
   ٢. أقضي ساعات طويلة على الإنترنت لكنها ليست عادة جيدة.
3. I love playing video games with my friends. ٣. أحب أن ألعب ألعاب الفيديو مع أصدقائي.
4. I should spend my time doing useful things.
   ٤. يجب أن أقضي وقتي في أداء أشياء مفيدة.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة الـ
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues
80 Paragraphs & E-mails

Types of technology

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. What types of .... do you use in your daily life ? تكنولوجيا
   - I usually use a smartphone, a laptop and a tablet.
2. Which .... is the most useful in your school study ? نوع
   - Of course, the tablet.
3. Do you have any .... with technology ? مشاكل
   - Yes, I do.

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Amr and Ali are talking about technology.

Amr : Do you know much about technology ?
Ali : (1) ....
Amr : What types of technology do you use every day ?
Ali : (2) ....
Amr : (3) .... ?
Ali : I use the internet to communicate with many friends online.
Amr : (4) .... ?
Ali : Yes, sometimes I've problems online.
Amr : What should you do if you are worried about something online ?
Ali : (5) .... *(Aswan 2023)*

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Types of technology"

....

Social media

Step 1 Vocabulary

1. What is the most interesting thing on .... ? التواصل الاجتماعى
   - It's talking to my friends.
2. What do you feel if you can't .... social media websites? يتفحص - يتصفح
   - I feel worried.
3. What else do you like on social media .... ? مواقع
   - I like playing video games with my friends online.

Step 2 Speaking

Reem and Mai are talking about computer games.

Reem : Can I ask you some questions ?
Mai : (1) ....
Reem : (2) .... ?
Mai : No. Not all computer games are bad. Some are good.
Reem : (3) .... ?
Mai : Because some of them can help you learn things.
Reem : Do you think it's good to play games late at night ?
Mai : (4) ....
Reem : What should I play instead ?
Mai : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing

"Social media"

....

III Language

If / When + should / shouldn't for advice

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام If / When + should / shouldn't بمعنى إذا / عندما ... ينبغى أن / ينبغى ألا ...

Formation التكوين

1. If / When (عندما - إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + should + [inf.]..... (مصدر الفعل) .

تستخدم [If / when + should + inf.] للنصح بفعل شئ جيد أو مفيد :

Subject (الفاعل) + should + [inf.]..... (مصدرالفعل) if / when (عندما - إذا / لو) present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - The tourists should visit the Pyramids if they are in Egypt for the first time.

لاحظ وضع comma (,) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية فى حالة وجود [If / When] في البداية.

2. If / When (عندما - إذا / لو) + present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) , subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + [inf.]..... (مصدرالفعل) .

تستخدم [If /When + shouldn't + inf.] للنصح بعدم فعل أشياء غير مفيدة أو غير جيدة :

Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + [inf.]..... (مصدرالفعل) if / when (عندما - إذا / لو) present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط)

ex. - If you don't know someone, you shouldn't make friends with them online.

- You shouldn't stay outside for too long if it is very hot in the desert.

لاحظ يمكن إستخدام If / When + should / shouldn't فى صيغة الاستفهام كالتالى :

3. Should + subject + (inf.)..... مصدر الفعل if / when present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط → ?

ex. - Should I turn my phone off if I go to bed ?
- Yes, you should. - No, you shouldn't.

4. Question word كلمة إستفهام + should + subject الفاعل + (inf.)..... مصدر الفعل if / when present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط → ?

ex. - What should I do when I feel ill ?
- You should see a doctor.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. If you feel tired, you .... have a rest. *(Bani Ebeid - Dakahlia 2023)*
   a. can't b. should c. won't d. are
2. WB You .... swim in the sea if it is very cold.
   a. has to b. had to c. should d. shouldn't
3. If you feel ill, you .... a doctor. *(West Shubra El Kheima - Qalyubia 2022)*
   a. won't see b. should see c. see d. would see
4. If you .... do your homework, you should apologize to your teacher.
   a. didn't b. don't c. doesn't d. couldn't
   (Khalifa & Mokattam - Cairo 2023)
5. If you feel worried about something, you .... tell a parent or a teacher.
   (Mit Salsil - Dakahlia 2023)
   a. would b. should c. shouldn't d. won't
6. SB Should I .... for too long on the internet if I have a headache ?
   a. stays b. stay c. to stay d. staying

El-Moasser Exercises

7. If you want to get high mark in maths, you .... well.
   a. shouldn't study b. should study
   c. don't study d. studied

8. You .... eat many sweets if you have diabetes مرض السكري.
   a. should b. must c. shouldn't d. haven't

9. If it .... really hot outside, you should take an umbrella.
   a. was b. is c. has d. had

10. She .... go outside when it gets dark.
   a. should b. would c. shouldn't d. couldn't

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. When you .... (felt) tired, you should have a rest. *(Edfu - Aswan 2023)*
2. You .... (should) stay up late if you have to get up early. *(El Sayeda Zeinab - Cairo 2023)*
3. WB People who are addicted to eating sweets should .... (tries) eating fruit instead.
4. WB When you drop rubbish on the floor, you .... (pick) it up.
5. SB If they don't change, maybe you should .... (finding) some new friends.
6. SB They should check that you can't buy anything when you .... (played) games online.
7. SB If you .... (thinks) that your friend is addicted to social media, you should advise him.

El-Moasser Exercises

8. **A :** What .... (I do) if I've a problem ? **B :** You should tell your parents.
9. You should .... (turns) off the lights when you go to bed.
10. You .... (not eat) food when it is still hot.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Amr are talking about technology.

Amr : What types of technology do you use ?

Ahmed : (1) ....

Amr : Why do you like it ?

Ahmed : (2) ....

Amr : (3) .... ?

Ahmed : Yes, I'm addicted to it now.

Amr : (4) .... ?

Ahmed : I use it to take photos and go online.

Amr : You should keep it safe, Ahmed.

Ahmed : (5) .... *(Daraw - Aswan 2023)*

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My parents don't .... me to watch TV at night. *(Maadi - Cairo 2023)*
   a. drop b. let c. allow d. share
2. WB You shouldn't .... outside for too long if it is very hot in the desert.
   a. try b. swim c. stay d. visit
3. .... is a pain in your head.
   a. Stomachache b. Backache c. Toothache d. Headache
4. I have another .... of this book, you can take it.
   a. mistake b. feel c. copy d. road
5. It's .... for an elephant to fly.
   a. possible b. impossible c. easy d. horrible
6. My little son is .... to watching videos online. *(Tala - Menufia 2022)*
   a. damaged b. broken c. addicted d. forward
7. Facebook, Whatsapp, Instagram are examples of ....
   a. food b. games c. subjects d. social media

8. SB You shouldn't watch videos on the internet if your head ....
   a. had hurt b. 'll hurt c. hurts d. hurt

   (Menouf - Menufia 2021)

9. You shouldn't .... your time if you want to succeed.
   a. wastes b. waste c. wasting d. wasted

10. What .... I do if I want to come first in my exams ?
   a. would b. won't c. should d. may

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Dina should visit her aunt if she ....(go) to Alexandria.

   (Omraniya - Giza 2023)

2. If you .... (not feel) well in school, you should tell a teacher.

   (El Shohada - Monufia 2022)

3. You .... (stay up) late if you have to get up early.
4. You shouldn't .... (walking) in the sun if it is very hot.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Types of technology"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 9 & 10
WB pages 74 & 75



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

dangers (n)	مخاطر	debate (n)	مناظرة / مناقشة
screen (n)	شاشة	health (n)	صحة
hearing (n)	حاسة السمع	order (ed) (v), (n)	يأمر / يطلب - طلب
faithful (adj)	مخلص	damage (d) (v)	يتلف - يدمر

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

hearing - damaged - screen - faithful - health

1. I love my friend so much. He's very ....
2. Pollution causes dangerous .... problems.
3. My mobile fell on the ground so the .... broke.
4. Using headphones too much affects تؤثر my .... badly.

Lesson 5 SB page 9 WB page 74

text (ed) (v)	يرسل رسائل نصية	ear problems	مشاكل بالأذن
thought (n)	فكرة	view (n)	رأي
eye problems (n)	مشاكل في البصر	reasons (n)	أسباب / مبررات

Lesson 6 SB page 10 WB page 75

faithfully (adv)	بإخلاص / بوفاء	surname (n)	لقب [اسم العائلة]
sincerely (adv)	بإخلاص	wheel (n)	عجلة / إطار
billion (n)	بليون / مليار	forms of transport (n)	أنواع / أشكال المواصلات
regards (n)	تحيات	wish (ed) (v), (n)	يتمنى / أمنية
robots (n)	أجهزة الإنسان الآلي	website (n)	موقع إلكتروني

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
bring	يحضر / يسبب	brought	brought
teach	يُعلّم	taught	taught

Study this definition

ادرس هذا التعريف

order	ask someone to make, supply or deliver food or an object يطلب

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
positive	إيجابى	hopeful / practical / good	negative	سلبى
formal	رسمى	official	informal	غير رسمى
loud	عالى الصوت	noisy	low	منخفض

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–ing	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	hearing	حاسة السمع
–ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	faithfully	بإخلاص

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To change the adjective "faithful" into an adverb, we add the suffix "..............".
   a. –able　b. –tion　c. –al　d. –ly
2. The opposite of the word "informal" is "..............".
   a. official　b. strong　c. noisy　d. positive
3. Don't be .... Try to be positive.
   a. informal　b. positive　c. negative　d. low
4. The noun from the verb "hear" is "..............".
   a. hear　b. hears　c. hearing　d. heard
5. The synonym of the word "loud" is " ....".
   a. noisy　b. low　c. week　d. official

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 look forward to + (inf. + ing) / noun — يتطلع إلى / يتشوق إلى

- She **looks forward to** hearing from you.
- I'm **looking forward to** the summer holiday. *(WB page 75)*

2 change + اسم + for + اسم — يستبدل...بـ...

- I'd like to **change** the phone **for** a new one. *(SB page 10)*

3 * Compound nouns — الأسماء المركبة

الاسم المركب : يتكون من كلمتين، قد يكتبا منفصلتين أو متصلتين

- eye problems
- health problems
- headache
- headphone *(SB page 9)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

bring problems	يسبب مشاكل	give a headache	يسبب صداع
get enough sleep	يحصل على قدر كاف من النوم	get a headache	يصاب بالصداع
stay healthy	يظل بصحة جيدة	check social media	يتصفح وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
have eye problems	يعاني من مشاكل في البصر		
children aged 6 – 9	الأطفال ذوى الأعمار من السادسة إلى التاسعة	make it look interesting	يجعلها تبدو رائعة

Prepositions

on screens	على الشاشات	write down	يدون ملاحظات
bad for	ضار لـ	in my opinion	في رأيي ....
from my point of view	من وجهة نظرى	through headphones	من خلال سماعات الرأس
go on holiday	يذهب فى أجازة	hear from	يتلقى أخبار من

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

• on Lesson 5 SB page 9

The dangers of technology



Sleep : Many people text, check social media or watch videos online late into the night. Then they don't get enough sleep.



Eye problems : If you spend a lot of time on screens, you can have eye problems and headaches.



Ear problems : Listening to loud music or films through headphones can damage your hearing.



Exercise : Many people spend hours playing video games or watching TV and don't spend enough time outside doing exercise.

• on Lesson 6 SB page 10

Dear Sir / Madam,

I **ordered**[1] a new mobile phone last week and the delivery was today. When I opened the box, the screen was **damaged**[2]. I would like to change the phone for a new one that is not damaged. Can you tell me how I can do this ?

Yours faithfully,[3]

Lama Sabri

(1) طلبت | (2) تالف | (3) المخلص لك

on Lesson 6 WB page 75

Dear Sir / Madam,

I ordered a new game last week on your website. The delivery was today. When I opened the box, I found that I ordered a game for children aged 6-9 **by mistake**[1]. It did not say this on your website. I was not happy about this because I want to play the game with my friends, and we are all 13 or 14.

I would like to change the game for a new one that is for the correct age. Can you tell me how I can do this ?

I look forward to hearing[2] from you.

Yours faithfully,
Haytham Shabana

(1) عن طريق الخطأ | (2) انتظر الرد

on Lesson 6 WB page 75

Hi Fatma,

The jacket I ordered online arrived today, but it is the wrong colour ! I ordered a blue jacket and this one is red. I'm going to ask them how to change it !

See you soon,
love Maya

Listening

on Lesson 5 WB page 74

Debate about : All computer games are bad for you.

Hanan : Do you think that all computer games are bad for you, Lama ?

Lama : From my point of view, not all computer games are bad. Some of them can help you to learn things.

Hanan : I agree. If you don't play computer games all the time, it shouldn't be a problem.

Lama : It's not a good idea to play games late at night though.

Hanan : I agree. In my opinion, playing games late at night stops you sleeping.

Lama : Yes, it's a good idea to only play quiet, calm games in the evening.

Hanan : If you only play games that teach you things in the evening, it should be fine.

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. It's difficult to find a/an .... friend nowadays.
   a. dirty b. faithful c. selfish d. bad
2. Listening to loud music through headphones can damage your ....
   a. taste b. hearing c. smell d. sight
3. Spending a lot of time on .... causes some eye problems.
   a. headphones b. boards c. screens d. music
4. After a long .... we all agreed on the project.
   a. screen b. debate c. sleep d. diet

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. I .... a new camera online, but it didn't arrive. *(Helwan - Cairo 2023)*
   a. started b. improved c. ordered d. damaged
6. You should .... enough sleep. You look really tired. *(Talkha - Dakahlia 2023)*
   a. text b. get c. teach d. bring
7. SB I would like to .... the phone for a new one that is not damaged. *(El Tal El Keber - Sharkia 2022)*
   a. watch b. change c. exercise d. text
8. It is my habit to .... social media to get the latest news. *(Aswan 2023)*
   a. check b. choose c. break d. damage

El-Moasser Exercises

9. Her name is Leen Ashraf Fathi. Her .... is Fathi.
   a. name b. surname c. subject d. object
10. Cars, buses and planes are forms of ....
    a. nationalities b. countries c. transport d. technology
11. I prefer .... my friends to calling them.
    a. feeling b. texting c. fighting d. bringing
12. .... will help us do many dangerous and difficult jobs in the future.
    a. Animals b. Robots c. People d. Insects

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. I have a daughter .... seventeen.
    a. age b. ages c. aged d. ago
14. Watching much TV can .... you a headache.
    a. stop b. help c. give d. make

15. I'm looking forward to .... the new museum.
    a. visits b. visiting c. visited d. visit
16. You should eat fruit and vegetables to .... healthy.
    a. stay b. give c. cause d. damage

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

A debate about technology

* مناقشة عن التكنولوچيا

Positive opinions آراء إيجابية	Negative opinions آراء سلبية
1. Using technology to help you exercise is a good idea. - استخدام التكنولوچيا لمساعدتك في أن تتدرب هي فكرة جيدة.	- From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches. - من وجهة نظري، الإفراط في استخدام التكنولوچيا يمكن أن يسبب لك آلام بالرأس.
2. If you use technology well, it should help you become more healthy. - إذا استخدمت التكنولوچيا جيدًا، ينبغي أن يساعدك ذلك على أن تكون أكثر صحة.	- In my opinion, all technology can be bad for your health. - في رأيي، جميع أنواع التكنولوچيا قد تكون مضرة بصحتك.
3. If you don't become addicted to technology, you will be fine. - إذا لم تصبح مدمنًا للتكنولوچيا، سوف تكون على ما يرام.	- It isn't a good idea to spend too much time watching TV or playing on computer. - إنها ليست فكرة جيدة أن تقضى الكثير من الوقت فى مشاهدة التلفاز أو اللعب على الحاسوب.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

Writing tips

نصائح للكتابة

• Use these phrases to start or end a formal email.

• استخدم هذه العبارات عند بدء أو إنهاء رسالة بريد إلكتروني رسمي.

Starting phrases

عبارات البدء

١. يمكن أن تبدأ رسالة البريد الإلكتروني باستخدام [Dear Sir / Madam] بمعنى (عزيزي السيد / عزيزتي السيدة) (في حالة عدم معرفة اسم المرسل إليه).

٢. يمكن أيضًا استخدام هذه الاختصارات (اللقب + Mr / Mrs / Ms + surname] بعد Dear (في حالة معرفة اسم المرسل إليه).

Ending phrases

عبارات الخاتمة

• Yours sincerely

١. تستخدم هذه العبارة التالية في حالة معرفة الشخص :
• المخلص لكم / تفضلوا بقبول فائق الاحترام

• Best wishes
• Kind regards

٢. تستخدم هذه العبارات التالية في حالة معرفة الشخص جيدًا :
• مع أطيب التمنيات
• أطيب التحيات

• Yours faithfully

٣. تستخدم هذه العبارة التالية في حالة عدم معرفة الشخص :
• صديقك المخلص

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Shady loves playing ....
   a. basketball b. video games c. volleyball d. karate
2. Shady's parents are .... with him.
   a. angry b. happy c. sad d. worried
3. Shady's parents think playing video games is ....
   a. useful b. good c. useless d. dirty
4. If Shady doesn't stop playing games on computer so much, his parents will .... the computer away.
   a. take b. repair c. break d. sell

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB It's a good idea to only play .... games in the evening.
   a. noisy b. quiet c. boring d. hard
   (Amreya - Alexandria 2021)
2. The opposite of the word "positive" is "........................" .
   a. active b. friendly c. social d. negative
3. I .... a new phone online yesterday.
   a. saved b. made c. took d. ordered
4. He .... get a better job if he passes his exam.
   a. can't b. will c. is d. hasn't
5. **A :** What is your .... about modern technology ?
   B : I think it has made life easier. *(Fayid - Ismailia 2022)*
   a. problem b. opinion c. headache d. app
6. If you are worried about something online, you .... your parents. *(Ashmoun - Menofia 2022)*
   a. can't tell b. tell c. should tell d. have told
7. I dropped my mobile by mistake. Its .... is damaged now.
   a. mouse b. printer c. screen d. app
8. I think using too much technology can .... you a headache.
   a. make b. take c. give d. spend

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

9. WB From my point of .... , not all computer games are bad.

a. new b. view c. wish d. thought

10. At the class, you .... raise your hand when you want to ask a question. *(Desouk - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*

a. shouldn't b. have c. won't d. should

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Maybe Mr Helmy ....(send) me an email. *(Samanoud - Gharbia 2023)*
2. If it rains, I ....(not play) outside. *(El Hussinya - Sharkia 2022)*
3. When you have free time, you shouldn't .... (wasted) it.
4. You .... (see) a doctor when you feel sick.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Advantages and disadvantages of the internet"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Review on unit 7

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

invention	اختراع
headphones	سماعات الرأس
translate	يترجم
motorbike	دراجة بخارية
helicopter	طائرة هليوكوبتر
speed	سرعة
app	تطبيق على الكمبيوتر أو الهاتف الذكي
invent	يخترع
delivery	تسليم الطلبات للمنازل
addicted	مدمن
by mistake	عن طريق الخطأ
horrible	رهيب / فظيع
headache	صداع
impossible	مستحيل
pull	يسحب
lever	رافعة / مقبض
explore	يستكشف
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي

Language

1. Use will ('ll) and will not (or won't) to talk about future predictions.

• تستخدم (will/won't) للتعبير عن تنبؤات مستقبلية.

- The headphones will be very useful for travelling.
- The machine won't be able to fly very high.

2. Use if/when + present simple and future simple to express prediction.

• تستخدم الصيغة السابقة للتعبير عن التنبؤ.

- If everyone shops online, the shops in our towns and cities will close.
- I will do all my shopping online when I am older.

3. Use if/when + should / shouldn't to give advice.

• تستخدم الصيغة السابقة لإعطاء نصيحة.

- They should check that you can't buy anything when you play games online.
- If they don't change, maybe you should find some new friends.

Speaking

Giving opinions about inventions and technology

إعطاء الآراء عن الاختراعات والتكنولوجيا :

- I think I am addicted to my phone.
- Watching videos before going to bed is not a good idea.
- In my opinion, all technology is bad for your health.
- From my point of view, too much technology can give you headaches.

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Guessing the meaning of Vocabulary in context

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تخمين معنى مفردة من سياق النص] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا لتخمين المعنى.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

The most **popular** site is Facebook. More than one billion people use Facebook all over the world. It helps you to share news and events with your friends. You also can make videos and share them live. The problem is that a lot of people especially young men and women, spend too much time using it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- The underlined word of "**popular**" here means "........................".

a. famous b. unknown
c. uncommon d. dull

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تخمين معنى مفردة من النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع تخمين معنى المفردة واختيار المعنى الدقيق.

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

اقرأ وقم بالإجابة

Complete the following dialogue :

Amira is talking with Heba about mobile phones.

Amira : What type of technology do you use every day ?

Heba : (1) ....

Amira : (2) .... ?

Heba : Yes, I love watching videos online on my phone.

Amira : (3) .... ?

Heba : I always talk to my friends on the phone.

Amira : How do you feel if you don't have your phone ?

Heba : (4) ....

Amira : Do you think you are addicted to technology ?

Heba : (5) ....

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [التكنولوجيا] وتجد صعوبة في تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التي قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph) أو رسالة البريد الالكترونى (email) معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع. "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلى."

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (التسوق عبر الإنترنت) و (أنواع التكنولوچيا) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها فى تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraph
Online shopping	Write the meaning : يمكث - يبقى .... اختيارات .... التسوق عبر الإنترنت .... يقلل .... خدمة التوصيل	Fill in using vocabulary : 1. Some people think that .... is fantastic. 2. You can .... at home and order things in a little time. 3. You have many .... online. 4. Shopping online .... pollution. 5. Other people don't like shopping online because they don't want to wait for a	Write a paragraph on : "Online shopping" ....
Types of technology	التليفونات الذكية .... أسهل .... يتواصل .... الحياة .... مخاطر	1. Technology is very important in our daily .... 2. ...., internet and robots are types of technology. 3. Technology helps to make our life .... and faster. 4. Smartphones help us .... with others in every part of the world. 5. Technology has ...., too.	Write an email about : "Types of technology" .... تدريب تلقائى على مهارة الكتابة

Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. That boy .... a famous vet in the future. *(Talkha - Dakahlia 2023)*
   a. is b. was c. will be d. be
2. When the headphones hear another language, they can .... it into your language. *(Aswan 2023)*
   a. push b. make c. translate d. invent
3. This shop offers free .... to your home. *(North Suez - Suez 2023)*
   a. apps b. choices
   c. delivery d. pollution
4. I have many problems .... my car, so, I took it to the mechanic. *(Dokki - Giza 2022)*
   a. on b. at c. of d. with
5. I have many .... on my mobile, like Facebook. *(Manshaat al Qanater - Giza 2023)*
   a. machines b. tools c. apps d. tabs
6. He drinks a lot of coffee. He became .... to it. *(El Sahel - Cairo 2023)*
   a. expert b. good
   c. horrible d. addicted
7. If he .... all exams, he'll be happy. *(El Haram - Giza 2023)*
   a. pass b. passed c. will pass d. passes
8. I can play chess with my friends .... *(Seidi Salem - Kafr El Sheikh 2023)*
   a. on air b. online c. offline d. on desk
9. You .... tell your parents if you see people being horrible online. *(Tur Sinai - South Sinai 2023)*
   a. shouldn't b. couldn't
   c. don't have to d. should
10. I usually use my .... to listen to music. *(Qelein - Kafr El Sheikh 2023)*
    a. helmet b. glasses
    c. headphones d. trainers

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If I go to the shops, I .... (**spends**) a lot of money. *(Basyoun – Gharbia 2023)*
2. If you want to earn more money, you .... (**shouldn't**) work harder. *(North Sinai 2023)*
3. If she ....(**went**) to the shop, she will buy cheese. *(North Sinai 2023)*
4. I am looking forward to .... (**visit**) the museum. *(El Hamoul – Kafr El Sheikh 2023)*
5. When you feel ill, you .... (**see**) a doctor. *(West Mansoura – Dakahlia 2023)*

3. Write a paragraph of NINETY (90) words on :

"How to keep safe online"

....

....

Test on unit 7

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. When did you order the mobile phone ?
   a. Last month b. Last week c. Yesterday d. Last year
2. When did you receive the mobile ?
   a. Last year b. Last week c. Yesterday d. Today
3. How did you find the screen ?
   a. Damaged b. Modern c. New d. Useful
4. What did the shop do ? - They sent me a/an ....
   a. new laptop b. new headphone
   c. new mobile phone d. old mobile phone

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Basem is talking with Rahma about Facebook.

Basem : I always see you online on Facebook !
Rahma : (1) ....
Basem : Why are you always online ?
Rahma : (2) ....
Basem : Chat ! (3) .... ?
Rahma : I mean I talk with my friends.
Basem : (4) .... ?
Rahma : I usually spend from 5 to 6 hours a day.
Basem : Oh my God ! That's too much. (5) ....
Rahma : Thanks for your advice. I'll try to use it less time.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My cousin Osama is addicted to video games. His mother warned him several times that it could hurt his eyesight. A week ago, he complained about his eyes and the headaches he suffered from all week long. I advised him to see a doctor. Later on, he saw **one**. The first

thing the doctor asked him was how long he played video games. Of course, Osama was surprised to know that all these games caused his headaches. He advised him to practise more exercises and eat lots of carrots. When my cousin followed the doctor's instructions, he became *fine once again.*

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**one**" refer to ....
   a. Osama b. the doctor c. the mother d. a video game
2. Osama followed the doctor's ....
   a. headaches b. games c. exercises d. instructions
3. Osama began eating lots of ....
   a. cheese b. fish c. carrots d. eggs

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

   ....

5. What did Osama suffer from ?

   ....

6. What is the cause of Osama's headaches ?

   ....

(El Serw - Damieta 2023)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My mother bought new .... to listen to music.
   a. gloves b. trousers c. headphones d. helmets
   (Basyoun - Gharbia 2023)
2. This factory uses solar .... to make electricity.
   a. canals b. panels c. turbines d. controls
   (Samanoud - Gharbia 2023)
3. I'm sorry. I took your pen by ....
   a. social media b. shop c. mistake d. debate
4. Social media is very useful, but it has .... , too.
   a. information b. dangers c. hobbies d. ways
   (Kalyoub - Kalyoubia 2023)
5. .... you have a headache, you should go to bed.
   a. While b. If c. Before d. By
   (Talkha - Dakahlia 2022)

6. Do you know who .... the mobile phone ? *(Aswan 2023)*
   a. visited b. invited c. met d. invented

7. **A :** Is it .... to enter the theatre without a ticket ?
   B : No, you can't.
   a. possible b. impossible c. bad d. dangerous

8. WB If we want to stop climate change, we .... together.
   a. work b. worked c. should work d. works

9. If you want to get to the park quickly, you .... the bus
   a. takes b. take c. should take d. took

10. Don't .... friends with bad people. *(Luxor 2023)*
   a. give b. wear c. have d. make

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of word(s) in brackets :

1. If you exercise daily, you .... (be) healthy. *(Kafr saad - Damitta 2023)*
2. If Huda .... (visit) Cairo, she will see the Cairo Tower. *(Hihya - Sharkia 2022)*
3. If Hala does the housework, I .... (reward) her.
4. I think people .... (not have) flying cars in the future.

E. Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Farid to tell him about "How technology is useful"
Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@yahoo.com.
Your friend's email address is farid@gmail.com.

New message ×
Secure | https:

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : ....

.... ,
....
....
....
....
....

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 7 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Ali : What are you doing, Khalid ?
Khalid : (1) ....
Ali : Do you like drawing ?
Khalid : (2) ....
Ali : (3) .... ?
Khalid : I like to draw fish and flowers.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. brings – of – money – **Business** – a lot.

....

2. reduces – **Shopping** – pollution – online.

....

3. in – our – life – very important – is – **Technology** – daily.

....

4. use – my friends – **I** – to text – my mobile.

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I like to use the Facebook .... on my smartphone.
   a. app   b. object   c. virus   d. program
2. My teacher always asks me to write the .... of any project.
   a. technology   b. sounds   c. resources   d. speed
3. .... are like planes, but they do not have wings !
   a. Headphones   b. Motorbikes   c. Helicopters   d. Trains
4. Life .... easier in the future.
   a. is   b. was   c. will be   d. were
5. If you feel ill, you .... a doctor.
   a. sees   b. saw   c. should see   d. would see

4 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :

"How to be safe online"

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Mohamed : Do you like shopping online ?

Ali : (1) ....

a. Yes, I am b. Yes, I did
c. Yes, I do d. No, I am not

Mohamed : (2) .... ?

a. What do you like
b. Why do you like online shopping
c. When do you do online shopping
d. How do you do online shopping

Ali : Because it saves time.

Mohamed : (3) .... ?

a. Do you get things online
b. Did you buy things online
c. Does it help you
d. Is it easy to buy things online

Ali : Yes, it is easy to buy things online.

Mohamed : What type of things do you usually order ?

Ali : (4) ....

a. Hospitals and chemists'
b. Foods and footwear
c. Cars and planes
d. Rivers and oceans

Mohamed : Do you think that we will do all our shopping online in the future ?

Ali : (5) ....

a. That's a good idea.
b. See you soon.
c. Yes, I think so.
d. Yes, there is.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. I hope Ali .... (**would**) succeed in his final exams next month.
   a. could b. should c. will d. will be
7. He is clever. He will .... (**solving**) the problem.
   a. solve b. solved
   c. solves d. solve to
8. If we .... (**not**) eat vegetables, we won't be healthy.
   a. doesn't b. don't
   c. aren't d. didn't
9. When it is raining, you should .... (**stayed**) at home.
   a. staying b. stay c. stays d. stay to
10. If you feel tired, you .... (**shouldn't**) have a rest.
   a. shall b. should
   c. won't d. can't

February Test
اختبار شهر فبراير

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. When did Ali go to Luxor?
   a. Last month b. Last weekend c. Last year d. Last summer
2. With whom did Ali go to Luxor?
   a. His friends b. His parents c. His family d. His teachers
3. They stayed in a ....
   a. hotel b. village c. valley d. house
4. How long did they stay in Luxor?
   a. Six days b. Three days c. Four days d. Seven days

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

A teacher is talking to Rania about using mobile phones.

Teacher : What types of technology do you use every day ?

Rania : (1) ....

Teacher : What do you use your phone for ?

Rania : (2) ....

Teacher : (3) .... ?

Rania : I check social media once an hour.

Teacher : (4) .... ?

Rania : Yes, I have some problems when I use technology.

Teacher : How does watching videos online make you feel ?

Rania : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think **it** saves time because they don't spend much time travelling to the shops. And they can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have

many choices online. In their **view**, shopping online will make less cars on the streets so there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people don't think the same. They don't like shopping online. They say they always have a wrong delivery when they shop online. They don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery. They prefer to try things and see materials before buying them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**view**" can be replaced by ....
   a. pollution b. opinion c. material d. shopping
2. If more people shop online, the streets will be less ....
   a. cleaned b. popular c. polluted d. common
3. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. spending much time b. shopping online
   c. delivery d. travelling

B. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

   ....

5. What do you think of shopping online ?

   ....

6. Where can you stay while shopping online ?

   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Don't use too much social media or you will be .... to them.
   a. addicted b. useful c. worried d. happy
2. I would like to .... a machine to tidy my bedroom.
   a. pull b. discover c. invite d. invent
3. I have a new phone that has a/an .... to help me do my homework.
   a. motorbike b. app c. wing d. headphone
4. He can speak different .... such as French and German.
   a. books b. inventions c. ideas d. languages

5. .... means very bad.
   a. Horrible b. Nice c. Amazing d. Interesting
6. Some people feel worried when they can't .... their phones.
   a. shake b. bake c. wake d. check
7. Many sweets are not .... for us.
   a. bad b. good c. terrible d. useless
8. If you .... Cairo, you should go to the Egyptian Museum.
   a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. visited
9. My son .... 8 years old next month.
   a. will b. is being c. will be d. is going to be
10. .... tell my teacher if I don't understand ?
   a. I should b. I have c. Should I d. Have I

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. When Hany .... (visit) Cairo, he will buy new shoes.
2. I think the exam .... (would) be easy.
3. If she is ill, she should .... (sees) a doctor.
4. If you have a lot of money, ... (you will) buy a new car ?

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Are you for or against online shopping ?"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....



Unit 8 You are what you eat

SB pages 12:21 WB pages 77:83

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  Texts about what people eat; a healthy food quiz; a recipe; an article about unusual food; an article about a healthy island
- **Writing :**
  An email about a favourite snack; a paragraph about a country's diet; a paragraph about sleep
- **Listening :**
  A discussion about favourite snacks; a conversation at dinner; teenagers sharing their worries about food and health
- **Speaking :**
  Describing food; offering, accepting and refusing food politely; giving advice about being healthy
- **Language :**
  a lot, a little and a few
- **Life Skills :**
  Self-management

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 12 : 15
WB pages 77 & 78



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	salty (adj)	مالح
spicy (adj)	متبل [كثير التوابل]	energy (n)	طاقة
juicy (adj)	ملئ بالعصير	allergic (adj)	لديه حساسية
sweet (adj)	حلو المذاق	fast food (n)	وجبات سريعة
	Foods	أطعمة	
sfenj	السفنج [فطائر مغربية]	rojak	روجاك [طبق سلطة خضار وفواكة ماليزى]
samosa	سمبوسة [طبق هندي]	hawawshi	حواوشى [أكلة مصرية]
fava beans	الفول الأخضر	watermelon	بطيخ
spices	بهارات / توابل	rice pudding	أرز باللبن
olives	زيتون	falafel	فلافل [طعمية]
chocolate	شيكولاته	nuts	مكسرات
chips	رقائق بطاطس مقلية	grapes	عنب

Pop Quiz
تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

salty - allergic - spicy - Fast - energy

1. The doctor advised me to avoid .... foods.
2. I'm .... to nuts, so I don't eat them.
3. Seawater is .... , you can't drink it.
4. .... food is not healthy for us.

Lesson 1
SB pages 12 &13 WB page 77

oven (n)	فرن	taste (d)(v) , (n)	يتذوق / مذاق
fat (n)	دهن	though (conj) , (adv)	مع ذلك / ولو أن

Famous countries & cities

Egypt	مصر	Malaysia	دولة ماليزيا
Britain	دولة بريطانيا	Morocco	دولة المغرب
India	دولة الهند	Okinawa	محافظة أوكيناوا [في اليابان]

Lesson 2

SB pages 14 & 15 WB page 78

invite (d)(v)	يدعو	strong (adj)	قوى
teenager (n)	مراهق	netball (n)	كرة الشبكة
athletics team (n)	فريق ألعاب القوى	washing up (n)	غسل الأواني

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

allergic	having a condition that makes you feel ill after you eat, breathe or touch something	لديه حساسية
delicious	very nice to eat	لذيذ
energy	the ability to do a lot of work or activity without becoming tired	الطاقة
fast food	food that can be served very quickly in a café or restaurant because it is already prepared	وجبات سريعة
juicy	full of juice	ملئ بالعصير
salty	tasting of salt or containing a lot of salt	مالح
spicy	containing the tastes from spices	متبل [كثير التوابل]
taste	know what something is when you put it in your mouth	يتذوق

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
lucky	محظوظ	happy / fortunate	unlucky / unhappy	غير محظوظ
popular	محبوب / مشهور	famous / common	unpopular	غير محبوب / غير مشهور
delicious	لذيذ الطعم	tasty	terrible / horrible	سيئ
full	شبعان / ممتلئ	complete	hungry	جوعان
salty	مالح	savory	sweet / sugary	سكرى / حلو

Prefixes & Suffixes		مقاطع بادئة وناهية
Prefix / Suffix	**Function** الوظيفة	**Examples** أمثلة
–ic	تحول الاسم لصفة	allergic لديه حساسية
–y	تحول الاسم لصفة	healthy صحى spicy كثير التوابل juicy ملئ بالعصير

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The opposite of the word "lucky" is "..............".
   a. happy b. fortunate c. tasty d. unlucky
2. The food in this restaurant is tasty. This means it is ....
   a. fortunate b. lucky c. delicious d. terrible
3. Fruit and chocolate are sweet, but fish and cheese are ....
   a. salty b. spicy c. juicy d. allergic
4. To get the adjective from the word "allergy", we add the suffix "..............".
   a. -ic b. -al c. -tion d. -able
5. Healthy is a/an ...., but health is a noun.
   a. adverb b. verb c. pronoun d. adjective

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 * **chicken (n)** لحم الدجاج (اسم لا يُعد)

- Do you like **chicken**, Amal ?

* **a chicken - chickens** دجاجة - دجاج (اسم يُعد)

- My aunt is feeding her **chickens**. *(SB page 15)*

2 **allergic to** لديه حساسية لـ ....

- I'm **allergic to** nuts. *(WB page 78 / SB page 14)*

3 * **practise (v)** يمارس

- She **practises** the piano every day.

* **practice (n)** تمرين - ممارسة

- After athletics **practice**, my friends and I sometimes get some fast food. *(SB page 14)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
make food sweet / salty	يجعل الطعام حلو / مالح	for most of the time	لمعظم الوقت
get ill	يمرض / يصاب بمرض	on the way home	فى الطريق للمنزل
make offers	يقدم عروض	ask for things	يطلب اشياء
do the washing up	يقوم بغسل الأوانى	good for	مفيد لـ

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

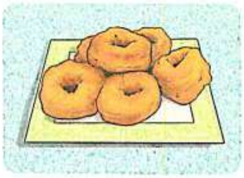
Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

on Lesson 1 SB page 13

Speaker 1 :

Sfenj(1) is a kind of cake from **Morocco**(2) .
It has lots of **sugar**(3) and **fat**(4) in it and is very sweet, so it is not very healthy, but I love it ! We sometimes eat sfenj for breakfast and sometimes as a **snack**(5) with some tea or a cup of coffee.



Speaker 2 :

In many places, people use **fava beans**(6) to make **falafel**(7). They are the best ! Falafel is really delicious and it is very **popular**(8) in Egypt.



Speaker 3 :

In Britain, we often buy chips from **a fish and chip shop**(9). People often put some salt on their chips. I don't put any **salt**(10) on mine because I don't like salty food. It is not very healthy.



Speaker 4 :

You can buy **samosas**(11) on the street everywhere in India. Samosas have **spicy vegetables**(12) inside them. People often eat samosas for a snack. I love to eat them with some hot tea.



(1) السفنج (فطائر مغربية)	(2) دولة المغرب	(3) سكر	(4) دهن	(5) وجبة خفيفة	(6) فول أخضر
(7) طعمية (8) محبوب / مشهور	(9) محل أسماك ومقرمشات		(10) ملح	(11) سمبوسة (طبق هندى)	(12) خضروات متبلة

Speaker 5 :

Rojak[13] is a fruit snack you can buy in the street in **Malaysia**[14] and people also make it at home. Rojak is very **sweet**[15] and **juicy**[16]. People use different **spices**[17] *in different parts of the country, but it's* always delicious.



(13) روجاك (طبق سلطة خضار وفاكهة من ماليزيا) | (14) دولة ماليزيا | (15) حلو المذاق | (16) كثير العصير | (17) توابل

on Lesson 2 SB page 15

Grandmother : Would you like some more chicken, Amal ?
Amal : Yes, please, **just a little**[1].
Grandmother : And would you like some more beans, too ?
Amal : Yes, thank you, grandmother... stop, **that's enough**[2] ! I mustn't eat too much.
Huda : Do you like chicken, Amal ?
Amal : Yes, I love Grandmother's spicy chicken. It's the best !
Huda : Thank you, Grandmother, that was a delicious dinner !
Grandmother : Would your girls like some more rice pudding ?
Huda : No, thank you, I'm **really full**[3].
Grandmother : What about you, Amal ?
Amal : Thank you, but I really couldn't. Why don't you **have a rest**[4] now, Grandmother ? Huda and I can take the plates to the kitchen and we'll **do the washing up**[5].



(1) قليلًا فقط | (2) هذا يكفي | (3) شبعان بالفعل | (4) يأخذ قسطًا من الراحة | (5) يقوم بغسل الأطباق

on Lesson 2 WB page 78

Grandma : Would you like some cake, Leila ?
Leila : Yes, please, just a little. I mustn't eat too much.
Grandma : Would you like a cup of tea with the cake ?
Leila : Thank you, I like tea.
Grandma : Do you like sugar in your tea ?
Leila : Yes, please, but that's enough. I only like a little sugar.
Grandma : Here you are, tea with cake !



Reading

on Lesson 1 WB page 77

Hi Tom,
How are you ? Thanks for your last email. You asked me to describe my favourite snack.
I love hawawshi and I often have it when I get home from school. It is easy to make. First, you need some nice bread. Then you put some meat and vegetables inside the bread. You can put some salt on it, too. I don't like to have any salt, though, because it is not very healthy. Now you cook it in the oven. It is delicious ! Do you have any favourite snacks ? Describe them to me in your next email !
Best wishes,
Osama

on Lesson 2 SB page 14

What I eat



My name's Imad. I am **allergic**(1) to nuts, so I must be **careful**(2) what I eat. If I eat something with nuts in it, I will **get ill**(3) ! For most of the time, this is not a problem. However, I like sweet things, and there are a few types of cake that have nuts in them, so I can't eat those. I'm **lucky**(4) because my mother makes me many different, delicious things to eat at home. She says I should eat more vegetables and salad. I have a lot of fruit, and that's healthy !



I'm Mustafa. I'm on the school **athletics team**(5) and I go running every day, so I need food that gives me **energy**(6). I eat a lot of rice and pasta every day. I also eat a few healthy snacks, like nuts. After athletics **practice**(7), my friends and I sometimes get some fast food, like pizzas, on the way home, but I **try**(8) not to eat too much !

(1) لديه حساسية
(2) حريص
(3) يصبح مريض
(4) محظوظ
(5) فريق العاب القوى
(6) طاقة
(7) تدريب
(8) يحاول

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information استخراج معلومات

Learn 1. Why must Imad be careful about what he eats ?
- Because he is allergic to nuts.

Practise 2. How often does Mustafa go running ?
....

on Lesson 2 WB page 78

Judy plays squash every week and needs to be healthy, so what does she eat ? She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat any cakes because they sometimes have nuts in them. She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her strong. A few hours before a **netball**[1] **game**[2], she always eats some fish with a lot of pasta, because this gives her energy. When she is playing netball, she drinks a little water. Then, after the game, she eats a few sweets. She does not have many because she knows they are not very **good for**[3] her.

(1) كرة الشبكة (تشبه كرة السلة) | (2) مباراة | (3) مفيد لـ

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Some people eat .... between the main meals.
   a. lunch b. snacks c. sugar d. dinner
2. Watermelon is a .... fruit.
   a. salty b. sour c. spicy d. juicy
3. Don't put much salt, please. I don't like .... food.
   a. salty b. sweet c. fresh d. juicy

SB , WB and Previous Exams

4. I'm .... to sweets, so I never eat them. *(Tukh - Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. kind b. hungry c. polite d. allergic
5. Eating rice and pasta gives us .... *(Kaha - Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. salt b. fast food c. energy d. sweet
6. A/An .... is a boy or a girl aged 13-19. *(El Montazah - Alex. 2023)*
   a. old man b. baby c. child d. teenager
7. .... food tastes hot. *(Minya El Qamh - Sharkia 2022)*
   a. Juicy b. Nice c. Spicy d. Sweet
8. SB In many places, people use fava beans to make ....
   a. pasta b. falafel c. soup d. dessert
9. WB She eats a lot of fish because it helps to make her ....
   a. nervous b. tired c. fat d. strong

El-Moasser Exercises

10. We help mum with the .... after meals.
    a. eating b. cooking c. washing up d. diving

11. My mother's food .... delicious. I like it so much.
    a. best b. tests c. tastes d. rests
12. Chocolate is a/an .... dessert around the world.
    a. popular b. unknown c. different d. new

▶ Definitions

13. .... means very nice to eat.
    a. Allergic b. Dirty c. Delicious d. Healthy
14. .... means food that is quick and easy to buy or cook.
    a. Desert b. Fast food c. Sfenj d. Snake

▶ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. Milk is good .... your health.
    a. for b. into c. at d. with
16. In summers, many shops and restaurants .... great offers.
    a. do b. make c. cause d. drive

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▶ 1. Describing Food

١. وصف الطعام

تستخدم الصيغ التالية في الاستفسار عن الرغبات في تناول الأشياء :

Questions	Answers
1. What's your favourite juicy fruit that you like to eat when you're thirsty ? - ما هي فاكهتك العصيرية المفضلة التي تحب أن تتناولها عندما تكون عطشان ؟	- I like oranges and watermelons. - أحب البرتقال والبطيخ.
2. What can you do if you eat something that is very hot and spicy so that it hurts your mouth ? - ماذا يمكنك أن تفعل عندما تأكل شيئًا ما حار جدًا ومتبل حيث أنه سبب ضرر بفمك ؟	- I can drink a cup of milk. - يمكنني تناول كوبًا من اللبن.
3. The water in the sea is salty. Can you think of a food with this taste ? - المياه في البحر مالحة. هل يمكنك التفكير في طعام له نفس المذاق ؟	- I think salty fish. - اعتقد انه السمك المملح.
4. If we don't want to use sugar to make food sweet, what other things can we use ? - إذا كنا لا نريد استخدام سكر عند تحلية الطعام، ما الأشياء الأخرى التي يمكن أن نستخدمها ؟	- I think we can use honey. - اعتقد أننا يمكننا استخدام العسل.

▸ 2. Accepting and refusing offers of food politely

٢. قبول ورفض الطعام بطريقة مهذبة

offering food politely تقديم الطعام بطريقة مهذبة	accepting القبول	refusing الرفض
- Would you like some more chicken? هل تريد / تحب أن تتناول المزيد من الدجاج ؟	- Yes, please. نعم، من فضلك.	- Thank you, but I am really full. شكرًا لك، لكنى بالفعل شبعان [ممتلئ المعدة]. - Thank you, but I really couldn't. شكرًا لك، لكنى بالفعل لا أستطيع.
- Would you like a little salt on your chips ? هل تريد القليل من الملح على المقرمشات؟	- Yes, please. Just a little. نعم ، من فضلك. مجرد القليل.	- No, thank you. لا ، شكرًا لك.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

Healthy and unhealthy food الطعام الصحى وغير الصحى

1. I'm allergic to nuts, so I must be careful what I eat.
١. لدى حساسية ضد المكسرات، لذا يجب أن أكون حذر لما أتناوله.

2. My mother makes me many different delicious things.
٢. أمي تصنع لي أشياء مختلفة كثيرة ولذيذة.

3. Eating more vegetables is very important. ٣. تناول المزيد من الخضروات مهم جدًا.

4. Eating fish makes you strong. ٤. تناول السمك يجعلك قويًا.

5. I like healthy snacks such as vegetables and fruits.
٥. أحب الوجبات الصحية الخفيفة مثل الخضروات والفاكهة.

6. Fast food like pizza doesn't make me healthy.
٦. الوجبات السريعة مثل فطائر البيتزا لا تجعلنى بصحة جيدة.



Your favourite type of food

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر إتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. What is your favourite .... fruit ? ملئ بالعصير
   - I like watermelons and oranges.
2. Do you like .... food ? كثير التوابل
   - Yes, I do.
3. Which type of food are you .... ? لديه حساسية
   - I'm allergic to strawberries.

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Huda is talking with Lamees about food.

Huda : Do you like food ?
Lamees : (1) ....
Huda : (2) .... ?
Lamees : I like rice and pasta.
Huda : (3) .... ?
Lamees : Because they give me enough energy.
Huda : Are you allergic to any kind of food ?
Lamees : (4) ....
Huda : What kind of food are you allergic to ?
Lamees : (5) ....

(Mit Ghamr - Dakahlia 2023)

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Your favourite type of food"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Your favourite snack

1. What is your favourite .... ? وجبة خفيفة
   - I like nuts.
2. Would you like .... more tea ? بعض
   - Yes, please.
3. Would like a .... milk on your tea ? قليل من
   - Yes, please. Just a little.

Mona and Eman are talking about snacks.

Mona : What's your favourite snack ?
Eman : (1) ....
Mona : (2) .... ?
Eman : Because it is very delicious.
Mona : (3) .... ?
Eman : I eat it in restaurants.
Mona : What else do you eat ?
Eman : (4) ....
Mona : How often do you eat vegetables ?
Eman : (5) ....

"Your favourite snack"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

III Language

1. Countable and uncountable nouns الأسماء التي تُعد والتي لا تُعد

Countable nouns الأسماء التي تعد (لها جمع)		Uncountable nouns الأسماء التي لا تعد (ليس لها جمع) وتعامل معاملة المفرد أي يأتي بعدها فعل في صيغة المفرد	
an apple تفاحة	apples	time وقت	water ماء
a potato ثمرة بطاطس	potatoes	furniture أثاث	money نقود
a man رجل	men	salt ملح	sugar سكر
an ox ثور	oxen	advice نصيحة	news اخبار
a loaf رغيف خبز	loaves	gold ذهب	information معلومات
a child طفل	children	bread خبز	molokhia ملوخية
a lentil حبة عدس	lentils	koshari كشرى	lamb لحم الحمل

ex. - Sweets are not good for her. [تعد]
- I eat a lot of rice. [لا تعد]

2. Some - Any

A. Some : تستخدم (some) بمعنى بعض :

Affirmative statements : تستخدم فى الجمل الخبرية المثبتة :

a) Uncountable nouns : أ. مع الأسماء التي لا تعد :

ex. - We sometimes eat sfenj with some tea.

b) Plural countable nouns : ب. مع الأسماء الجمع :

ex. - Some cakes have nuts in them.

تستخدم فى السؤال فى الحالات التالية :

a) Request : أ. عند الطلب:

ex. Can I have some water, please ?

b) Offer : ب. عند العرض:

ex. Would you like some tea ?

B. Any : تستخدم (any) بمعنى أي :

Negative statements : في الجمل الخبرية المنفية :

[مع الأسماء الجمع التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد]:

ex. - There aren't any apples in the fridge.
- I don't put any salt on my chips.

Interrogative : في صيغة الإستفهام :

ex. - Is there any salt in this dish ? - Do you have any pens, Ali ?

3. A lot of, a little and a few

1
a lot of
كثير من

تستخدم "a lot of" بمعنى كثير من في الجملة المثبتة قبل الأسماء الجمع التي تعد والأسماء التي لا تعد :

+ countable noun اسم يعد — ex. - I have a lot of oranges.

+ uncountable noun اسم لا يعد — ex. - I drink a lot of milk.

2
a little
قليل من

تستخدم "a little" بمعنى [قليل من] قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد للتعبير عن كمية قليلة دون تحديدها :

ex. - I only have a little salad.

3
a few
قليل من

تستخدم "a few" بمعنى [قليل من] قبل الأسماء الجمع للتعبير عن عدد قليل دون تحديده :

ex. - Amal eats a few healthy snacks.

Note that : لاحظ أن :

- تستخدم (many) بمعنى [الكثير] قبل الاسم الجمع في الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية.
  ex. I don't eat many snacks.
- تستخدم (much) بمعنى [الكثير] قبل الاسم الغير معدود [الكمية] في الجملة المنفية والاستفهامية :
  ex. I don't have much salad.
- يستخدم الفعل (like) للتعبير عما نفضله أو نحبه.
  ex. I like orange, but I don't like tea.
- تستخدم (would like) عند تقديم عروض أو طلب أشياء :

Offer عرض
ex. A : Would you like a sandwich ?
B : Thank you, but I'm really full.

Request طلب
ex. I'd like some beans, please.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. WB I don't like to have .... salt in my food because it is not very healthy. *(Haram – Giza 2022 / Damietta 2023)*
   a. some b. any c. many d. several

2. She eats .... fish because this gives her energy. *(Maadi - Cairo 2023)*
   a. any b. a lot c. a lot of d. lots
3. There are .... cars near my house. *(Samanoud – Gharbia 2023)*
   a. some b. any c. much d. a lot
4. SB **A :** Would you like .... salt on your chips ?
   B : No, thank you.
   a. a little b. a few c. many d. several
   (Multidisciplinary exam - El Wasta – Beni Suef 2021 / Port Fouad - Port Said 2022)
5. Ali has only .... flowers. He can't give you one. *(Sers - Menoufia 2022)*
   a. a few b. a lot c. any d. a little
6. Would you like .... cold orange juice ? *(Assuit 2022)*
   a. few b. lots c. any d. some

El-Moasser Exercises

7. The children ate .... of rice yesterday.
   a. few b. many c. any d. a lot
8. I have .... free time for hobbies because I work a lot.
   a. a few b. much c. a little d. many
9. Do you want .... coffee ? - No, thanks.
   a. any b. some c. many d. plenty
10. I haven't seen .... lions when I was in Africa.
   a. any b. some c. much d. a little

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. He wasn't very hungry, so he didn't eat .... (little) rice. *(Shohada - Menoufia 2023)*
2. SB I eat .... (a lot) rice and pasta every day. *(Diyarb Negm - Sharkia 2022)*
3. WB When she is playing netball, she drinks .... (a few) water.
4. SB Would you like .... (any) coffee ? *(El Serw - Damietta 2023)*
5. SB I eat .... (a little) healthy snacks. *(Agouza - Giza 2022)*
6. I don't have .... (some) cheese in the fridge. *(Talkha - Dakahlia 2022)*
7. SB What .... (will) you like for breakfast ?

El-Moasser Exercises

8. My mom likes to put .... (any) spices in food.
9. She had .... (little) of money so she bought a big house.
10. We don't have .... (many) sugar.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. We rarely order fast food from ....
   a. markets b. restaurants c. shops d. stores
2. How is the food your mother cooks ?
   a. Horrible b. Unhealthy c. Bad d. Delicious
3. What does your mother advise you not to eat ?
   a. Vegetables b. Fast food c. Chips d. a & b
4. What types of food do you eat a lot ?
   a. Sweets b. Cakes c. Fruits d. Nuts

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Aya and Dina are talking about popular snacks.

Aya : What's your favorite snack, Dina ?
Dina : (1) ....
Aya : I like koshari too, but I like falafel more.
Dina : (2) .... ?
Aya : Falafel is made of beans and vegetables.
Dina : (3) .... ?
Aya : I usually eat it for breakfast.
Dina : Well, what other popular snacks do you like ?
Aya : (4) .... Do you like it ?
Dina : (5) .... Hawawshi is delicious. *(New Cairo - Cairo 2023)*

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB You cook hawawshi in the .... *(Itsa - Fayoum 2021)*
   a. over b. oven c. offer d. often
2. "....................". means getting ill when you eat or touch something.
   a. Salt b. Taste c. Good d. Allergic
   (Itsa - Fayoum 2021)
3. Mum always cooks us .... food to keep us strong. *(Aswan 2023)*
   a. spicy b. healthy c. sweet d. unhealthy

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

4. Sporty people like to eat rice and pasta because they give them ....
   a. money b. salt c. energy d. sugar

   (Ashmoun - Menofia 2022)

5. .... students are absent today. *(Beni Suef 2023)*
   a. A few b. A little c. A d. Any

6. I don't like .... food. It is always hot.
   a. sweet b. popular c. juicy d. spicy

7. We can't drink seawater. It is ....
   a. sweet b. spicy c. salty d. fresh

8. We .... food with our tongue. *(Kafr Sakr - Sharkia 2022)*
   a. taste b. hear c. smell d. see

9. Children should drink .... of milk to have strong bones.
   a. little b. any c. few d. a lot

   (Farshout - Qena 2022)

10. Would you like .... cake, Reham ? - No, thanks. *(Luxor 2023)*
    a. any b. some c. many d. plenty

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Eating .... (a lot) fruit is good for you.

   (Ahnasia - Beni Suef 2023)

2. There are .... (a little) grapes left. *(El Hamool - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*
3. .... (Will) you like to eat fish for lunch ?
4. Maher eats .... (a few) food. He wants to lose weight.

   (El Wasta - Beni Suef 2022)

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite snack"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

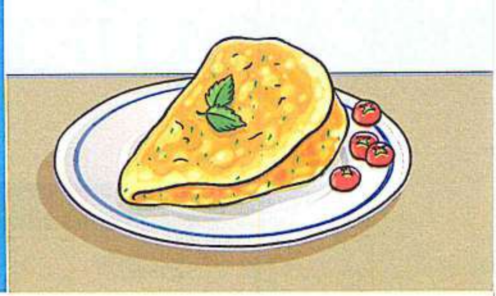
....

....

Lessons

3 & 4

SB pages 16 : 18
WB pages 79 & 80



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

dairy products (n)	منتجات ألبان	recipe (n)	وصفة [طهي]
protein (n)	بروتين	sense (n)	حاسة
bones (n)	عظام	instructions (n)	تعليمات
unusual (adj)	غريب / غير مألوف	fresh (adj)	طازج
smell (ed) (v), (n)	يشم - رائحة	fry (ied) (v)	يقلي
boil (ed) (v)	يغلي / يُسلق [طعام]	serve (d) (v)	يقدم [طعام]
heat (ed) (v)	يسخن	chop (ped) (v)	يقطع
pour (ed) (v)	يصب / يسكب	add (ed) (v)	يضيف

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

omelette - senses – instructions - protein - bones

1. Humans have five ....
2. Meat, fish and eggs all have .... in them.
3. Milk and cheese make our .... strong.
4. You have to follow your teacher's ....

Special foods أطعمة خاصة

durian fruit	فاكهة [دوريان البحرية]	champorado	شامبورادو [عصيدة أرز بالشيكولاته - أكلة فلبينية]
century eggs	بيض القرن [أكلة فى الصين]	tuyo	تويو [السمك المجفف]
ful medammas (n)	فول مدمس	fried chicken	دجاج مقلي

Lesson 3 SB pages 16 &17 WB page 79

humans (n)	البشر	fridge (n)	ثلاجة
dining room (n)	حجرة الطعام	frying pan (n)	طاسة القلي
omelette (n)	أومليت [أكلة تحتوى على البيض]	knife (n)	سكين

Lesson 4 SB page 18 WB page 80

ground (n)	أرض	centimetres (n)	سنتيمترات

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept
beat	يضرب / يخفق	beat	beaten
smell	يشم	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled
grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew	grown

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

beat	mix food quickly using a fork, wooden spoon, etc.	يخفق / يضرب
bone	one of the hard parts of the skeleton هيكل عظمى inside a person or animal	عظمة
chop	cut something into small pieces	يقطع
dairy products	things that you can eat which are made from the milk of a cow, such as cheese and butter	منتجات الألبان
durian fruit	a hard green fruit common in Malaysia, with a soft yellow inside that smells bad but tastes nice	فاكهة الدوريان
fry	cook something in hot oil or fat	يقلى
frying pan	a flat, metal pan used for frying food	طاسة القلى
pour	make a liquid flow يتدفق out of or into something such as a cup or bowl	يصب / يسكب
protein	one of the many things found in food such as meat, cheese, fish, or eggs, that is necessary for the body to grow and be strong	بروتين
serve	provide food or drinks	يقدم [طعام]
smell	know what something is using your nose	يشم
unusual	different from others of the same type in a way that is surprising or interesting	غير عادى

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
dry	جاف	arid	wet	رطب / مبلل
normal	طبيعى	natural / typical	abnormal	غير طبيعى
inside	داخل	indoor	outside	خارج

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
un–	تكون عكس الصفة	unusual غير عادى
–ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	fried مقلى chopped مقطع/مفروم

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Summer is a dry season. This means it isn't ....
   a. dry b. high c. fresh d. wet
2. To give the antonym of the word "normal", we add the prefix "............".
   a. un– b. ab– c. il– d. ir–
3. "Inside" and "indoor" are ....
   a. opposites b. antonyms c. different d. synonyms
4. To get the adjective from the verb "chop", we add the suffix "............".
   a. –ed b. –tion c. –able d. –ity

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 fresh

لاحظ هذه التعبيرات مع كلمة fresh :

fresh air	هواء نقى	**fresh** water	مياه عذبة
fresh fruit	فاكهة طازجة	**fresh** bread	خبز طازج
fresh weather	طقس بارد		

(SB page 79)

2

لاحظ أن أفعال الحواس تتبع بصفة :

smell / taste / look / feel / sound } + adj. صفة

- SB It **smells** terrible. رائحته كريهة
- SB It **tastes** delicious. مذاقه لذيذ

(SB page 18)

3

لاحظ استخدام حرف الجر (for) مع الوجبات :

- I always eat falafel **for** breakfast.

(SB page 18)

Important Expressions & Prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

make you sleep longer	يجعلك تنام لمدة أطول	quite good	جيد إلى حد ما
		have a salty taste	ذو مذاق مالح

Prepositions

an example of	مثال لـ	take ... out of	يخرج ... من
a piece of	قطعة من	chop ... into squares	يقطع ... إلى شكل مربعات
made from	مصنوع من		
pour ..... into	يسكب ..... في	on the outside	في الجزء الخارجي
recipe for	وصفة لـ	different from	مختلف عن
under the ground	تحت الأرض	on the inside	في الجزء الداخلي

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 3 SB page 16

A healthy food quiz[1]

1. If you want to be healthy, you should eat ....
   a. only fruit and vegetables b. a lot of meat and cheese
   c. (some of all types of food)
2. We need to drink .... glasses of water every day.
   a. eight b. two c. four
3. **Dairy products**[2] like milk and cheese help us to ....
   a. have lots of hair b. have strong **bones**[3] c. run fast
4. Meat, cheese and nuts have **protein**[4] in them and we need protein to ....
   a. sleep well b. move fast c. have a strong body
5. A lot of sugar ....
   a. makes it difficult to sleep b. is bad for your teeth
   c. makes you sleep longer
6. Examples of healthy snacks are ....
   a. fruit and nuts b. chocolate and sweets c. salty chips

(1) امتحان قصير | (2) منتجات ألبان | (3) عظام | (4) بروتين

7. People need to eat .... pieces of fresh fruit and vegetables every day.
   a. one to two b. five to ten c. one
8. People often like fast food because ....
   a. it has lots of fat and sugar in it b. it gives you energy
   c. you can eat a lot of it and not **feel full**[5]
9. Food is usually healthy and good for you when it is ....
   a. expensive b. **fresh**[6] c. from a big supermarket

Answers :
One point for each correct answer :
1c 2a 3b 4c 5b 6a 7b 8a 9b
Score 7-9 : Very good! You know all about healthy eating.
Score 4-6 : Quite good. You need to learn a little more to be really healthy !
Score 1-3 : Not good. There are a lot of things you need to learn about healthy eating.

(5) يشعر بالامتلاء (الشبع) | (6) طـازج

on Lesson 3 SB page 17



▸ How to make an omelette

1. **Beat**[1] two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
2. Add a little salt to the eggs and milk.
3. **Heat**[2] some butter in a **frying pan**[3].
4. Pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.
5. When the omelette is ready, **take it out**[4] of the frying pan and **serve**[5] with salad.

▸ How to make a tomato salad



1. Take two big tomatoes and half an onion.
2. Chop all the vegetables into small squares.
3. Put the chopped vegetables into a bowl.
4. Add a little oil, salt and lemon juice.
5. Serve the salad with your omelette.

(1) قم بخفق | (2) قم بتسخين | (3) مقلاة | (4) قم بإخراج | (5) قم بتقديم الطعام

on Lesson 3 WB page 79

▸ How to make ful medamas



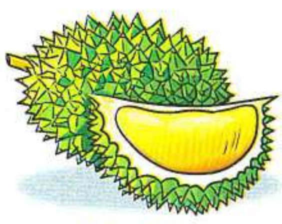
1. Wash some beans and put them in a pan.
2. Add some water to the beans.
3. Heat the beans in the water until it boils.
4. Pour some lemon juice over the hot beans.
5. Serve it with warm bread.

• on Lesson 4 SB page 18

Unusual but delicious

Some food **smells**[(1)] bad or looks unusual - but still **tastes good**[(2)]! **"Durian fruits"**[(3)] grow in Indonesia and Malaysia. Some fruits can be 30 centimetres long. They are hard and green on the outside , but soft and yellow on the inside.

Some people don't want to eat them because they smell terrible, but they are very healthy and taste delicious. People use durian fruits to make juice, ice creams and soup.



durian fruit

In the Philippines, people eat something called **'champorado**[(4)]**'** with **'tuyo'**[(5)] for breakfast. "Champorado' is sweet chocolate rice and 'tuyo' are small salty fish. For most people, it's unusual to eat sweet and salty things together, but it is popular in the Philippines !



champorado with tuyo

In China, people eat eggs that are months or years old ! They are called **century eggs**[(6)] and they are black and green inside. To make them, people put fresh eggs under the ground for a long time. Century eggs smell a lot and have a salty taste, but lots of people think they are delicious.



century eggs

Answer the following questions :

Giving the main idea إعطاء الفكرة الرئيسية

Learn 1. What is the main idea of the passage ?

- *Unusual food.*

Extracting information إستخراج معلومات

Practise 2. Where do durian fruits grow ?

....

(1) يفوح منه رائحة | (2) مذاقه جيد | (3) فاكهة دوريان | (4) تشامبورادو (عصيدة أرز محلى بالشيكولاته) (أكلة فلبينية)

(5) نوع سمك مجفف | (6) بيض القرن

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▸ Key vocabulary

1. Our brain controls all our ....
   a. senses b. objects c. subjects d. smiles
2. Mum is cooking fish and rice. The food .... very nice.
   a. smells b. smiles c. adds d. makes
3. The new restaurant .... breakfast and lunch only.
   a. adds b. puts c. serves d. takes

SB , WB and Previous Exams

4. To make an omelette, ... eggs in a bowl. *(Al Agami - Alexandria 2023)*
   a. beat b. serve c. feed d. heat
5. We often eat in the .... room. *(Qena 2023)*
   a. dining b. bedroom c. bathroom d. living
6. WB Which of these types of food doesn't have much protein ?
   a. Meat b. Nuts c. Fish d. Apples
7. SB Meat, cheese and nuts have .... in them.
   a. salt b. protein c. sugar d. milk
8. SB Please, ... some tea into my cup. *(Baltime - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*
   a. heat b. pull c. beat d. pour
9. SB When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying ....
   a. glass b. plate c. pan d. cup
10. Food is healthy and good for you when it is ....
    a. stolen b. fresh c. rotten d. terrible

(El Salam - Cairo 2023)

El-Moasser Exercises

11. You should be careful when you use the sharp ....
    a. fork b. knife c. bowl d. plate
12. To drive cars safely, you should follow a lot of ....
    a. products b. instructions c. recipes d. menus

▸ Definitions

13. To .... means to cook something in hot oil or fat.
    a. fly b. fry c. feed d. fail
14. ....products are things made from the milk of a cow.
    a. Lucky b. Dairy c. Diary d. Daily

(Beni Ebeid - Dakhlia 2022)

▶ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. Durian fruits are hard and green .... the outside.
   a. in b. off c. at d. on

16. They chop the watermelon .... squares.
   a. out b. on to c. into d. too

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▶ **A discussion about unusual food** مناقشة عن الطعام الغير تقليدي

Questions	Answers
1. What are the tastes and smells that you like and don't like ? - ما هي بعض الأطعمة والروائح التي تحبها والتي لا تحبها ؟	- I think that fried chicken tastes really good. - أعتقد أن الدجاج المقلى مذاقه جيد حقاً. - In my opinion, fish smells horrible. - في رأيي، رائحة السمك كريهة.
2. What unusual food or drink have you tried ? What was it like ? - ما الطعام / الشراب الغير تقليدي الذي جربته ؟ ماذا كان يبدو ؟	- I have tried durian fruits. They smelt terrible, but they were healthy and tasted delicious. - لقد قمت بتجربة تناول فاكهة الدوريان. رائحتها فظيعة لكنها صحية ومذاقها لذيذ.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

"A famous recipe"

1. Omelette is a very delicious dish.	١. الأومليت أكلة لذيذة جدًا.
2. Its recipe is very easy and famous.	٢. وصفة طهى الأومليت سهلة جدًا ومعروفة.
3. This is how we make omelette.	٣. هذه طريقة كيفية إعداد الأومليت.
4. Beat two eggs in a bowl with little milk.	٤. اخفق بيضتين في سلطانية مع القليل من اللبن.
5. Add a little salt to them.	٥. أضف إليهم القليل من الملح.
6. Heat some butter in a frying pan.	٦. قم بتسخين بعض الزبدة في طاسة القلى.
7. Pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter.	٧. قم بسكب البيض في طاسة القلى وقم بطهيه فى الزبدة.
8. When the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan.	٨. عندما يعد الاومليت قم بإخراجه من طاسة القلى.
9. Serve it with the salad and warm bread.	٩. قم بتقديمه مع السلطة والخبز الدافى.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة الـ
قم بإستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues
80 Paragraphs & E-mails

Unusual food you have tried before

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. Did you try any .... food ? غريب / غير معتاد
   - Yes, I did.
2. What did you .... ? يجرب
   - I tried century eggs.
3. What are they like ?
   - They are black and green .... بالداخل

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

A : Have you tried any unusual food ?
B : (1) ....
A : (2) .... ?
B : It's from China.
A : (3) .... ?
B : I tried century eggs.
A : What are they like ?
B : (4) ....
A : Did you like it ?
B : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Unusual food you have tried before"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Your favourite recipe

Step 1 Vocabulary

1. What is your favourite .... ? وصفة طهى
   - It's omelette.
2. Do you .... much salt to your recipe ? يضيف
   - No, much salt is unhealthy for me.

Step 2 Speaking

A : Do you like trying food recipes ?
B : (1) ....
A : (2) .... ?
B : My favourite recipe is ful medames.
A : (3) .... ?
B : I like it spicy.
A : What do you pour over it ?
B : (4) ....
A : Do you like ful medames served with onions ?
B : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing

"Your favourite recipe"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

III Language

Imperative صيغة الأمر

Formation التكوين

- It always starts with the infinitive form of the verb without "to".

تبدأ الجملة الأمرية المثبتة دائمًا بفعل فى المصدر بدون «to».

[Inf.] مصدر الفعل + باقى الجملة

ex. - Take, Go, Change, Sit down, Open, ... etc.

1 We use the imperative when we tell someone to do something.

نستخدم صيغة الأمر عندما نريد أن نخبر شخص ما أن يفعل شيئًا.

ex. - **Chop** the tomatoes !

2 We use the imperative to give instructions or advice.

نستخدم صيغة الأمر لإعطاء تعليمات أو نصيحة.

ex. - **Heat** the beans in water until it boils.

3 We use "Don't" for the negative form of the imperative.

نستخدم « **Don't** » فى صيغة الأمر المنفى ويأتى بعدها الفعل فى المصدر.

Don't + [inf.] مصدر الفعل

ex. - **Don't add** too much salt !

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. .... drink many fizzy drinks. *(El Wasta - Beni Suef 2023)*
   a. Not b. Don't c. Doesn't d. Didn't
2. Wash some beans and .... them in a pan. *(Edfu - Aswan 2023)*
   a. put b. putting c. to put d. puts

3. WB .... the knife to chop the vegetables.
   a. Used b. Uses c. Use d. Using
4. SB .... two eggs in a bowl with little milk to make an omelette.
   a. Beat b. Beats c. Beating d. Beaten
   (Multidisciplinary exam - Samalut - Minya 2021)
5. SB .... ful medammas with warm bread.
   a. To serve b. Serve c. Serving d. Serves
6. Don't .... the birds. I've already done that.
   a. feed b. feeding c. feeds d. fed
   (Minya El Qamh - Sharkia 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises

7. .... straight on then turn left to get to the park.
   a. Go b. Going c. Goes d. Went
8. .... make noise at the library.
   a. Doesn't b. Don't c. Didn't d. Aren't
9. Don't .... many sweets. They are bad for your teeth.
   a. eats b. eating c. to eat d. eat

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Don't .... (putting) too much salt in the soup.
   (Burg Al Arab - Alexandria 2023)
2. WB .... (Turns) the lights off before you sleep.
3. SB Please, ... (adding) some olive oil on salad.
   (Faqous - Sharkia 2022)
4. Don't .... (touching) electric wires. *(Metoubes - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*
5. WB Don't .... (heats) butter for too long. *(Souhag 2023)*
6. SB .... (Not boil) oil more than one time.

El-Moasser Exercises

7. .... (Does) exercise after school.
8. When water boils, ... (turns) off the stove.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Sara and Aseel are talking about healthy food.

Sara : What types of food should we eat to be healthy ?

Aseel : (1) ....

Sara : (2) .... ?

Aseel : Because dairy products help us to have strong bones.

Sara : (3) .... ?

Aseel : No. Sugar is bad for our teeth.

Sara : What else should we do to be healthy ?

Aseel : (4) ....

Sara : Do you have any other advice for me?

Aseel : (5) .... *(Bab El Shaeria - Cairo 2023)*

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB Humans have 210 .... in their bodies.
   a. eyes b. ears c. bones d. arms
2. The teacher asked the pupils to .... their books out of bags.
   a. make b. give c. take d. do
3. WB "...................." means to mix food quickly using a fork.
   a. Peel b. Beat c. Boil d. Pour
4. I don't like fried eggs. I like them ....
   a. boiled b. juicy c. terrible d. sweet
5. Put the food in the .... to keep it cold. *(Khanka – Qalyubia 2022)*
   a. oven b. microwave c. kettle d. fridge
6. SB Don't .... the tomatoes too small.
   a. chops b. chop c. to chop d. chopping
7. .... drink fizzy drinks. *(West Cairo - Cairo 2022)*
   a. Isn't b. Don't c. Doesn't d. Didn't

8. Who .... food at a restaurant ? – A waiter.
   a. chops b. beats c. adds d. serves
9. Which of these is not a dairy product ? *(Maghagha - Minya 2022)*
   a. Milk b. Cheese c. Rice d. Butter
10. Please, ... me to carry that box. *(El Waily - Cairo 2023)*
   a. helping b. helps c. help d. to help

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of word(s) in brackets :

1. .... (Not boil) oil more than one time.

(Hadaek El Qubba - Cairo 2023)

2. Always .... (to add) olive oil to salad.
3. .... (Turns) the lights off before you sleep.

(New Cairo - Cairo 2023)

4. Don't .... (heats) butter for too long.

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Sami to describe to him how to make an omelette. Your name is Reda and your email address is reda@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is sami@gmail.com.

New message ×

Secure | https:

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

....

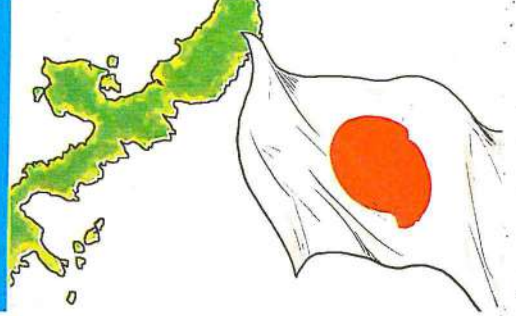
....

....

Lessons

5 & 6

SB pages 19 & 20
WB pages 81 & 82



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

balanced diet (n)	نظام غذائى متوازن	conclude (d) (v)	يختم / يستنتج
advice (n)	نصيحة	pepper (n)	فلفل
reason (n)	سبب / مبرر	spinach (n)	سبانخ
relax (ed) (v)	يسترخي	sweet potato (n)	بطاطا
conclusion (n)	خاتمة	upset (v), (adj)	يزعج - منزعج

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

• **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

reason - upset - depend on - Peppers - balanced

1. I was .... because my dad was late for my birthday party.
2. Having .... food is necessary for your health.
3. .... and lettuce are green vegetables.
4. Can you give me a .... for coming late ?

Lesson 5 SB page 19 WB page 81

athletics club (n)	نادى ألعاب القوى	drawing (n)	الرسم
art school (n)	مدرسة لتعليم الرسم	painting (n)	التلوين
amount (n)	كمية / مقدار	perhaps (adv)	ربما
own (ed) (v)	يمتلك	explain (ed) (v)	يشرح - يفسر

Lesson 6 SB page 20 WB page 82

sort (n)	نوع	introduce (d) (v)	يقدم
Okinawa Island	جزيرة أوكيناوا [في اليابان]	purple (adj)	أرجواني اللون
Okinawan (adj)	خاصة بجزيرة أوكيناوا	situation (n)	موقف
unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ	point (ed), (v), (n)	يشير / نُقطة - فكرة
surprise (d) (v)	يفاجئ / يدهش	olive oil (n)	زيت الزيتون

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
upset يزعج	upset	upset
forget ينسى	forgot	forgotten

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

pepper	a kind of vegetable that is usually green, red or yellow, with seeds in the middle فلفل
spinach	a vegetable with wide, dark green leaves that go soft when you cook them سبانخ
sweet potato	a vegetable that looks like a potato and has purple, yellow or white flesh and a sweet taste بطاطا

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 Furthermore (adv)

إضافة لذلك - علاوة على ذلك

- Ayman is a teacher. **Furthermore**, he is a trader تاجر. *(SB page 20)*

2 To conclude, ... = To sum up, ...

تستخدم لتلخيص أهم النقاط أو الفكرة الرئيسية كخاتمة للموضوع

- SB - **To conclude,** a healthy diet means eating enough healthy things. *(WB page 82)*

3 * dish (es)

طبق (أطباق - صحون)

- I will wash the **dishes** for mum.

*** dish (es)**

أكلة - صنف من الطعام

- I like Egyptian **dishes.** They taste delicious. *(SB page 19)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
have a snack	يتناول وجبة خفيفة	live on	يعيش على / يتغذى على
make sure	يتأكد من	stay up late	يسهر لوقت متأخر
do some drawings	يقوم ببعض الرسومات	revise for the exam	يراجع للامتحان
eight hours' sleep	النوم لمدة ٨ ساعات	depend on	يعتمد على
have athletics club	لديه تمرين فى نادى الألعاب الرياضية	for about 14 or more hours	لمدة حوالى [١٤]ساعة أو أكثر

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 5 SB page 19

It's good that you don't eat fast food, but if you feel very hungry between **meals**(1), it's a good idea to have a snack. How about **bringing**(2) a few healthy snacks to school on the days when you have **athletics club**(3) ? If you want to have more **energy**(4), why don't you try eating more food that gives you energy like rice and pasta ? Perhaps you could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning, too.

(1) وجبات | (2) إحضار | (3) نادى ألعاب القوى | (4) طاقة

on Lesson 5 WB page 81

How much **sleep**(1) should we have ? The answer **depends on**(2) your age. Very small **babies**(3) sleep for about 14 or more hours a day ! Children **aged**(4) six to seventeen should sleep for about ten hours a night. Then you need less sleep. Most people aged 18 – 65 need about eight hours' sleep.



(1) نوم | (2) يعتمد على | (3) أطفال رضع | (4) بالغ من العمر

on Lesson 6 WB page 82

A healthy diet



It may **surprise**(1) you to know that **West African countries**(2) have one of the healthiest diets in the world. Why is this ?
Firstly, people in countries such as **Senegal**(3), Mali and **Sierra Leone**(4) eat a lot of fruit and vegetables, which are very vegetables, which are very healthy. Furthermore, the people eat a lot of rice, nuts and fish. These have a lot of protein.

(1) يدهش / يفاجئ | (2) دول غرب أفريقيا | (3) دولة السنغال | (4) دولة سيراليون

Another important **point**[5] is that the people of West Africa don't eat much food with a lot of salt and sugar in it.
To **conclude**[6], a healthy diet means eating enough healthy things like fish and vegetables, and not eating a lot of salt, sugar and fast food.

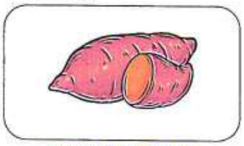
(5) نقطة / فكرة	(6) يختم/ يستنتج

on Lesson 6 SB page 20

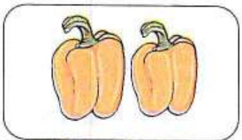
The Okinawan[1] diet



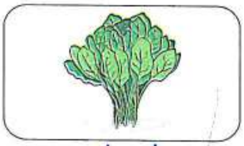
I come from **Okinawa**[2] in Japan and the diet on my **island**[3] is very healthy.
This is for three **main reasons**[4].
Firstly, we eat a lot of fresh vegetables.
We eat green, **purple**[5] and yellow vegetables like **spinach**[6], **sweet potato**[7] and **peppers**[8]. **Furthermore**[9], we don't have much fat in our diet : we only eat a little meat and a few dairy products. Another important thing is that we eat a very healthy breakfast. We have **soup**[10] with spinach or eggs with rice, and this gives us lots of energy to start the day.



sweet potato



yellow pepper



spinach

As you can see, our diet is healthy. That's why Okinawans live a long time. Some of the oldest people in the world live on my island !



(1) خاصة بجزيرة أوكيناوا	(2) جزيرة أوكيناوا	(3) جزيرة	(4) الأسباب الرئيسية	(5) أرجوانى اللون
(6) سبانخ	(7) بطاطا	(8) فلفل	(9) بالإضافة إلى	(10) شوربة

• on Lesson 7 WB page 83

The recipe for pizza

Firstly, chop some tomatoes.

Then put the tomatoes onto the ***pizza bread***[1].

Add some cheese and pour on a little olive oil.

Cook the pizza in the oven for ten minutes.

Add a few olives and a little salt.

Serve with a fresh salad.



(1) عجينة البيتزا

• on Lesson 7 SB page 21

Leila : Is there any cheese in the **fridge**[1] ? I don't need any now, but I want to make a salad later.

Mother : I think there is a little cheese. I'm going **shopping**[2] now. Would you like me to buy some cheese at the market ?

Leila : Yes, please ! Could you get a few tomatoes, too ? I don't have **enough**[3] for the salad.

(1) ثلاجة | (2) التسوق | (3) كاف

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 19

Ali : My name's Ali. My mum and dad own a restaurant and I often help in the kitchen. The **cook**[1] is my friend and he is teaching me to make different cakes. The problem is, I'm always **trying**[2] them, so I eat too many cakes. I also know I don't do enough **exercise**[3], but that's because I don't have time. When I'm not at school or doing my homework, I'm usually at the restaurant. I don't want to stop helping my parents, so I don't know what to do.



(1) طباخ | (2) يجرب | (3) تدريب

Eman : I'm Eman. I do a lot of sport and I have a very **healthy diet**[4]. I eat lots of fruit and vegetables and I almost never eat fast food. I never eat snacks either, not even when I'm really hungry after athletics club. I know eating snacks isn't good for you. But I'm tired all the time. I never feel I get enough sleep, even when I go to bed early ! I want to have more energy.



Tamer : I'm Tamer. I want to go to **art school**[5] when I'm older, but I don't have enough time to do any drawing or painting at the moment. I'm working really hard at school. I'm worried about my exams. When I feel worried, I don't feel hungry. My mother doesn't think I eat enough, so then she gives me even more food. I don't want to **upset**[6] her, so I can't tell her it's too much !



(4) نظام غذائى صحى | (5) مدرسة لتعليم الرسم | (6) يزعج / يضايق

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▸ Key vocabulary

1. You have to write a/an .... at the end of the paragraph.
   a. introduction b. conclusion c. photo d. drawing
2. In Egypt, we buy roasted sweet .... at the streets.
   a. salad b. potatoes c. pizza d. eggs
3. Doctors always advise people to have .... diets.
   a. high b. big c. balanced d. full
4. Listening to quiet music can help you ....
   a. eat b. mix c. relax d. write

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. It was not easy for him to join the school .... team.
   a. athletics b. allergic c. tests d. athlete
   (Shebin El Kom - Menoufia 2023)
6. You should have a/an .... diet to stay healthy. *(El Wakf - Qena 2023)*
   a. balanced b. heavy c. unhealthy d. spicy

7. SB You want to make something for them. ...., you do not know how to cook ! *(Multidisciplinary exam - Abu Suwir - Ismailia 2021)*
   a. Luckily b. Unfortunately c. Happily d. So
8. SB Take small .... of food but finish them.
   a. amounts b. bins c. balls d. baskets

El-Moasser Exercises

9. My father .... a small shop in Cairo. He bought it three years ago.
   a. brings b. owns c. finds d. makes
10. My dad .... me with a cute puppy.
   a. calmed b. upset c. surprised d. ordered
11. I asked the science teacher to .... the causes of pollution to me.
   a. explain b. have c. protect d. paint

▶ Definitions

12. .... is a plant that can be green, red and yellow.
   a. Lemon b. Pepper c. Fig d. Sweet potato
13. .... is a vegetable with wide, dark green leaves that go soft when you cook them.
   a. Spinach b. Okra c. Pepper d. Peas

▶ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. Our future depends .... our hard work.
   a. all b. in c. off d. on
15. Next Sunday, we have a maths test. I need to revise .... the exam.
   a. for b. of c. on d. in
16. Don't .... up late. It's an unhealthy habit.
   a. spend b. stay c. keep d. practise

2. Speaking مهارة التحدث

▶ Giving advice about being healthy إعطاء النصيحة بشأن كيف تكون صحي

Questions	Answers
1. What should I eat if I want to have more energy ? - ماذا ينبغي أن أتناول إذا أردت أن يكون لدى طاقة أكثر ؟	- If you want to have more energy, why you don't try eating rice and pasta. - إذا أردت أن يكون لديك طاقة أكثر، لما لا تأكل أطعمة مثل الأرز والمكرونة.
2. What should I do if I want to relax ? - ماذا ينبغي أن أفعل عندما أريد أن أسترخى ؟	- It's a good idea to exercise. Exercise can help you relax. - إنها فكرة جيدة أن تمارس بعض التمارين. ممارسة التمارين قد يساعدك على الاسترخاء.

III Language

enough, too much, too many

1
enough
كافِ

◀ تستخدم " **enough** " قبل الاسم بمعنى «كافٍ».

enough + noun
اسم

ex. - Sleeping for **enough time** is important.
- I think she doesn't sleep for **enough hours**.

◀ تستخدم " **not enough** " قبل الاسم بمعنى «غير كاف» .

[not] enough + noun
اسم

ex. - Mr Hesham goes to bed at 1 a.m. and gets up at 7 a.m. This is **not enough sleep**.

2
too many
عدد أكثر من اللازم

too much
كمية أكثر من اللازم

+	countable noun اسم يعد جمع	**ex.** - I think she sleeps for **too many hours**.
+	uncountable noun اسم لا يعد	**ex.** - Malek sleeps from 10 p.m. to 9 a.m. I think this is **too much sleep**.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. There are too .... books in the bag. I can't carry it.
   a. few b. much c. many d. enough
   (6th October - Giza 2023)

2. WB I don't like this soup. There is too .... salt in it.
   a. much b. many c. enough d. few
   (Kafr Saad - Damietta 2021 / Abu Tesht - Qena 2023)

3. WB Can I have some more sugar, please ? - There is .... in this tea.
   a. too much b. too many c. a few d. not enough
   (Aswan 2023)

4. SB We don't have .... fat in our diet.
   a. much b. many c. few d. a lot
5. I don't want more rice. I have .... *(West Nasr City - Cairo 2022)*
   a. many b. few c. enough d. little
6. WB Let's not go to the beach. There are .... people there today.
   a. too much b. too many c. a little d. a few
7. SB Could you get a few tomatoes ? - I don't have .... for the salad.
   a. enough b. much c. a little d. a few

El-Moasser Exercises

8. I think too .... technology can give you a headache.
   a. many b. few c. less d. much
9. She doesn't have .... oil for her food.
   a. too many b. enough c. a few d. a lot
10. There are .... many mistakes in this email.
   a. two b. toe c. too d. to

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. She is fat as she eats .... (many) rice. *(Kafr El Zayat - Gharbia 2023)*
2. SB I try not to eat .... (to) much fast food!
3. She ate .... (much) sweets yesterday. *(Manshiyat Naser - Cairo 2022)*
4. He wasn't very hungry, so he didn't eat .... (little) rice. *(Shubra - Cairo - 2022)*
5. SB Tamer's mother gives him too .... (many) food.
6. SB Ali eats too .... (much) cakes.
7. SB Eman feels tired all the time and doesn't get .... (sleep enough).

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Last summer holiday, I earned .... (money enough).
9. I spent too .... (many) money on clothes yesterday.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Make sure you have a .... diet.
   a. balanced b. boiled c. fried d. grilled
2. Eat some of all the .... of food.
   a. seeds b. tastes c. types d. smells
3. To be healthy, you have to .... well.
   a. play b. sleep c. study d. fry
4. Don't .... too much to be healthy.
   a. worry b. bring c. practise d. sleep

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB Don't .... oil more than one time. *(Faquos - Sharkia 2023)*
   a. boils b. boiling c. to boil d. boil
2. .... sugar is bad for your health.
   a. Enough b. Too many c. Too much d. A little
3. He doesn't have .... money to buy the mobile.
   a. enough b. too many c. many d. a few
   (Nekhel - North Sinai 2022)
4. I have too .... friends. I can't really count them.
   a. many b. much c. a lot of d. few
5. Spinach is a kind of ....
   a. fruit b. snacks c. vegetables d. fats
6. They've played for long. Surely, they are .... now.
   a. heated b. tired c. fried d. boiled
7. We always fry eggs in a ....
   a. pin b. bin c. pan d. ban
8. I don't like .... food. It's unhealthy.
   a. slow b. quick c. fast d. fresh
9. I haven't eaten anything. I feel ....
   a. worried b. hungry c. thirsty d. excited
10. Rice and pasta give us more ....
   a. oil b. olive c. energy d. taste

3 Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Healthy food" *(Luxor 2023)*

....
....
....

Review on unit 8

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

spicy	متبل
snack	وجبة خفيفة
juicy	ملئ بالعصير
allergic to	لدية حساسية تجاه
energy	طاقة
fast food	الوجبات السريعة
bones	عظام
protein	بروتين
dairy products	منتجات الألبان
fresh	طازج
beat	يخفق / يضرب
heat	يسخن
fry	يقلى
chop	يقطع
pour	يصب / يسكب
serve	يقدم [طعام]
athletics club	نادى العاب القوى
balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن
sweet potato	بطاطا
pepper	فلفل
spinach	سبانخ

Language

Some & any :

1. Use some in positive sentences with uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns.

• تستخدم (some) في الجمل المثبتة مع الأسماء غير المعدودة والأسماء المعدودة الجمع.

- We sometimes eat some cookies with tea.
- People often put some salt on their chips.

2. Use any in negative sentences and yes/no questions with uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns.

• تستخدم (any) مع الجمل الاستفهامية المبدوء بفعل مساعد والجمل المنفية مع الأسماء غير المعدودة والأسماء المعدودة الجمع .

- I don't put any salt on food. Is there any salt in this ?

A lot of, a little and a few

1. Use a lot of with countable and uncountable nouns.

• تستخدم (a lot of) مع الأسماء المعدودة الجمع والأسماء غير المعدودة.

- I have a lot of oranges/fruits. I also eat a lot of rice and pasta.

2. Use a few with countable nouns and a little with uncountable nouns.

• تستخدم (a few) مع الأسماء المعدودة و (a little) مع الأسماء غير المعدودة

- I eat a few healthy snacks. (= I don't eat many snacks.)
- I only have a little salad. (= I don't have much salad.)

Speaking

1. Offering, accepting and refusing offers of food politely :

A : Would / Do you like a sandwich ?

B : Thank you, but I'm really full.

A : Would you like a little salt on your chips ?

B : No, thank you.

2. Giving advice about being healthy :

- It's a good idea to have a snack.
- You could eat a bigger breakfast in the morning.
- It's good that you don't eat fast food.
- If you want to have more energy, why don't you try eating some rice or pasta ?

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Critical thinking

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [Critical Thinking] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا [لإعطاء رأى مناسب].

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

We don't live alone in this world. There are animals and birds living with us, too. Farmers have got a lot of animals on their farms. They keep cows, camels, buffaloes, horses and goats. Animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can copy sounds. Animals do communicate, both to us and to each other. Some animals use body language. For example, horses touch their noses to say (hello) to another horse they like. Bees, dance when they find a good flower. To understand what animals want, you should be careful, watch and listen to what they are trying to tell you.

- Why do you think we should watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell us ?

....

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى إبداء الرأى.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع [أن تبدى رأيك حسب الفكرة المذكورة].

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Abdo is at the restaurant.

Waiter : How can I help you ?

Abdo : (1) ....

Waiter : OK. Here you are. What would you like to have ?

Abdo : (2) ....

Waiter : (3) .... ?

Abdo : Yes, I would like a salad.

Waiter : (4) .... ?

Abdo : I would like some orange juice.

Waiter : Anything else !

Abdo : (5) ....

(El Omrania - Giza 2023)

التحدى تريد [التحدث عن الأطعمة] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية [paragraph] معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع. "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلى"

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع [الوجبات السريعة] و [وصفة طهى مشهورة] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية وكيفية استخدامها فى تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic: Fast food

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning :

- لذيذ ....
- طاقة ....
- سهل ....
- غير صحى ....

Step 2 Sentences

Fill in using vocabulary :

1. Fast food is quick and .... to buy or cook.
2. It is ...., but it is not healthy.
3. You shouldn't eat .... food.
4. Healthy food gives you .... and makes you strong.

Step 3 Paragraph

Write a paragraph on :

"Fast food"

....
....
....
....
....

Topic: A famous recipe

Step 1

- جاهز ....
- طبق ....
- وصفة طهى ....
- يصب - يسكب ....
- يخفق ....
- يضيف ....
- يسخن ....

Step 2

1. Omelette .... is very easy.
2. First, ... two eggs in a bowl with little milk.
3. .... a little salt to them.
4. .... some butter in a frying pan.
5. .... the eggs in the pan and cook them.
6. When it is ...., take it out of the pan.

Step 3

Write an email about :

"How to make omelette"

....
....
....
....
....
....

تدريب تلقائى على مهارة الكتابة

Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There are .... grapes left. Would you like some ? *(Komombo - Aswan 2023)*
   a. little b. a lot c. a few d. a little
2. There isn't .... rice. We should buy some. *(Abou Homous - Beheira 2023)*
   a. many b. enough c. a little d. some
3. .... can be green, red or yellow. It is healthy, I like eating it very much. *(Rod El Farag - Cairo 2023)*
   a. Paper b. Pepper c. Diet d. Meat
4. In many places, people use fava beans to make .... *(Luxor 2023)*
   a. pasta b. falafel c. soup d. dessert
5. She is allergic to nuts, so she doesn't eat .... *(Maghagha - Souhag 2023)*
   a. a few b. any c. some d. a lot of
6. Your .... is the kind of food that you eat every day. *(Bander Damanhour – Beheira 2023)*
   a. work b. exercise c. diet d. situation
7. We .... with our noses. *(North Sinai - Sinai 2023)*
   a. hear b. taste c. touch d. smell
8. He doesn't eat any cakes because he is .... to them. *(West Shoubra El Kheima / Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. balanced to b. long c. old d. allergic
9. Eat some of all the .... of food. *(Alexandria 2023)*
   a. sizes b. colours c. flavours d. types
10. Humans have 210 .... in their bodies. *(Kafr El Dawar - Beheria 2023)*
    a. eyes b. ears c. bones d. hairs

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Would you like .... (any) coffee ? *(Tur Sinai - South Sinai 2023)*
2. They don't have .... (some) books. *(Qena 2023)*
3. .... (Added) some butter in a frying pan. *(Nasser - Beni Suef 2023)*
4. There are too .... (much) people in the market today. *(Ezbet El Borg - Damietta 2023)*
5. .... (Not forget) to add some salt. *(Youssef El-Sadeek - Fayoum 2023)*
6. Don't .... (touching) electric wires. *(Motobis - Kafr El-Sheikh 2023)*
7. There is too .... (many) salt in the soup. *(Shohada - Menoufia 2023)*
8. .... (Doesn't) play in the street. *(Omraniya - Giza 2023)*
9. Maher eats .... (a few) food. He wants to lose weight. *(El Wasta - Beni Suef 2023)*
10. I sometimes eat .... (a little) grapes for breakfast. *(Port Said 2023)*

Test on unit 8

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Most people .... snacks.
   a. love b. hate c. dislike d. mind
2. .... snacks are bad for us.
   a. All b. Few c. Some d. Many
3. Sometimes, it is .... to eat crisps and cakes.
   a. bad b. OK c. heavy d. noisy
4. Eating .... is a good example of a healthy snack. *(Edfu - Aswan 2023)*
   a. salt b. sweets c. apples d. crisps

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking a doctor about the best healthy diet.

Ahmed : Please, doctor, what's the best way to stay healthy ?

Doctor : (1) ....

Ahmed : (2) .... ?

Doctor : For example, eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.

Ahmed : (3) .... ?

Doctor : You shouldn't eat food that has fat or much sugar.

Ahmed : Should I do exercise ?

Doctor : (4) ....

Ahmed : Thank you for your advice.

Doctor : (5) .... *(Bandar Damanhour - Beheira 2023)*

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

We all agree that eating healthy food means having a healthy life. The food we eat affects our life more than anything else. Most people have three meals a day, but in fact they don't care about what they should eat for each meal. These meals must contain everything that our bodies need

like vegetables, fruit, milk and potatoes. Although fast food is **delicious** and an easy solution for people who works long hours and have no time to cook, it is unhealthy and so expensive. **It** also causes a lot of dangerous diseases. To be healthy, you should eat healthy food and also drink much water.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. People who work for long hours buy fast food as they have no time to ....

   a. print b. eat c. cook d. drink

2. The underlined word "**delicious**" means ....

   a. active b. lazy c. tastes bad d. tastes nice

3. Eating healthy food means having healthy ....

   a. life b. light c. fight d. line

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" refer to ?

   ....

5. Do you think that eating one kind of food is healthy ? Why ? Why not ?

   ....

6. What is the main idea of the passage ?

   ....

(Desouk – Kafr El Sheikh 2023)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I like cakes with .... in them. *(New Cairo - Cairo 2023)*

   a. meat b. vegetables c. nuts d. salad

2. Carrots need to be .... into small pieces. *(Malawy - Menia 2023)*

   a. shopped b. shipped c. chopped d. clapped

3. WB .... means to provide food or drinks.

   a. Taste b. Smell c. Keep d. Serve

4. Fruit and nuts are examples of healthy ....

   a. snakes b. snacks c. snails d. sails

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

5. .... your food in the fridge.
   a. Break b. Boil c. Fry d. Keep

6. Fruits give us a lot of .... to be active all the day.
   a. salt b. energy c. sleep d. allergy

(6th October - Giza 2022)

7. Following a healthy .... keeps you strong and fit.
   a. date b. dot c. diet d. data

8. .... you like to have some juice ? - No, thanks.
   a. Could b. Would c. Shall d. Can

(Multidisciplinary exam - Qalyub - Qalyubia 2021)

9. .... touch the machine with wet hands.
   a. Doesn't b. Don't c. Haven't d. Aren't

10. I like my tea with .... sugar.
   a. a few b. many c. a lot d. a little

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Would you like to have .... (any) tea ? *(Rod El Farag - Cairo 2023)*
2. Don't .... (forgot) to do your homework. *(Aswan 2023)*
3. His bag is light, it has .... (a little) books.
4. There is .... (a few) tea in the cup. I have drunk most of it.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Fast food"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 8 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Nahed : Are you going out this afternoon ?
Nehal : (1) ....
Nahed : (2) .... ?
Nehal : Because I haven't finished my homework yet.
Nahed : (3) .... ?
Nehal : In an hour. When I finish, I'll call you.
Nahed : OK. I'll wait for your call then.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. food – us – energy – **Healthy** – gives.

....

2. cake – from – Morocco – **Sfenj** – of – a kind – is.

....

3. have – bodies – in – bones – 210 – **Humans** – their.

....

4. important – **Eating** – vegetables – more – is – very.

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My mother likes .... sugar in her tea, not much.
   a. any b. a little c. many d. a few
2. Would you like .... coffee ?
   a. few b. any c. a lot d. some
3. Lemons and oranges are .... fruits.
   a. spicy b. juicy c. salty d. thirsty
4. What is the .... for coming late today ?
   a. reason b. point c. season d. cause
5. Healthy .... are good for your health.
   a. snakes b. snacks c. talks d. looks

4 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :

"Healthy food"

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to Complete the following dialogue :

Mira is talking with her friend Mona about food.

Mira : Can I ask you some questions about food ?

Mona : (1) ....

a. No, you're busy
b. Yes, of course
c. Yes, it's better to stay here
d. No, I can't read this story

Mira : What is your favourite food ?

Mona : (2) ....

a. Nuts b. Beans c. Salad d. Flafel

Mira : Why do you like nuts ?

Mona : (3) ....

a. We need to sleep all the time
b. We shouldn't be strong
c. Nuts give me energy
d. I don't need food that gives me energy

Mira : (4) .... ?

a. Why do you need fats
b. Why do you need sweets
c. Why do you need salty fish
d. Why do you need energy

Mona : We need energy to be able to do many things.

Mira : (5) .... ?

a. What should we eat
b. What should we drink
c. What should we read
d. What should we study

Mona : We should eat healthy food.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in brackets from a, b, c, or d :

6. There are .... **(much)** cars in the centre of the city.
   a. a lot b. a lot of c. a little d. little
7. We don't like this soup. There is too .... **(many)** salt in it.
   a. a lot b. much c. enough d. few
8. Don't .... **(adding)** salt in your food. It's unhealthy.
   a. add to b. added c. add d. adds
9. Omar doesn't do .... **(a lot)** exercise.
   a. few b. little c. enough d. a little
10. I don't like .... **(some)** sugar in my coffee.
   a. any b. many c. a lot d. few



Unit 9

Watch, listen and make

SB pages 22:31   WB pages 84:90

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  An internet chat message; a review of an art gallery; Little Women; a review of a film
- **Writing :**
  A short review; a paragraph on a musician
- **Listening :**
  A report about an orchestra; an invitation on the telephone
- **Speaking :**
  Saying what people can do; talking about preferences and giving recommendations; inviting a person somewhere
- **Language :**
  Talking about ability : can, know how to and be able to
- **Life Skills :**
  Collaboration; respect for diversity

Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 22 : 25
WB pages 84 & 85



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

scenery (n)	منظر طبيعي - خلفية المسرح	century (n)	قرن [١٠٠ سنة]
script (n)	نص - سيناريو [فيلم أو مسرحية]	view (n)	رأى / وجهة نظر
costumes (n)	أزياء المناسبات الخاصة	sculpture (n)	فن النحت - قطعة فنية منحوتة
make-up (n)	المكياج [فن التجميل]	recommend (ed) (v)	يزكى - يوصى
show(ed) (v), (n)	يعرض / عرض	review (n)	مقال نقدي
acting (n)	التمثيل	pottery (n)	صناعة الأواني الفخارية
musical instruments (n)	آلات موسيقية	artist (n)	فنان / رسام
cartoons (n)	رسوم متحركة	portrait (n)	لوحة فنية/صورة [لشخص]

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

costumes - script - recommend - artist

1. Sewing .... is Ghada's favourite hobby.
2. An .... is someone who paints, draws or makes sculptures.
3. Writing a .... is not an easy job for the writer.

Lesson 1

SB pages 22 & 23 WB page 84

concert hall (n)	قاعة حفلات موسيقية	play (n)	مسرحية
theatre (n)	مسرح	act(ed) (v)	يؤدى - يمثل
firefighter (n)	رجل الإطفاء	drama club (n)	نادى الدراما [المسرح]

Lesson 2

SB pages 24 & 25 WB page 85

painting (n)	لوحة مرسومة	clay (n)	فخار - صلصال
colourful (adj)	ملون	stone (n)	حجر
recommendations (n)	توصيات	Textile Museum (n)	متحف المنسوجات
calligraphy (n)	فن الخط	statue (n)	تمثال
TV programme	برنامج تليفزيوني	Islamic area (n)	المنطقة الإسلامية

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sew	يخيط / يحيك	sewed	sewn
pay	يدفع [ثمن]	paid	paid

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

artist	someone who does paintings and drawings	فنان / رسام
instrument	an object that is used for playing music	آلة موسيقية
make-up	what people put on their faces in order to make themselves look nice or different	مكياج
portrait	a painting, photograph, drawing, etc. of a person's face	لوحة فنية/صورة [لشخص]
cartoon	a funny drawing usually showing people or animals	رسم كاريكاتيري
pottery	• the activity of making pots, cups, plates, etc. from clay صناعة الأواني الفخارية • things that are made from clay, such as cups and plates	الأواني الفخارية
view	your opinion about something	وجهة نظر/رأى
preference	the fact that you like something or someone more than another thing or person	تفضيل
recommend	advise someone to do something or go somewhere because it is good or you like it	يوصى/يزكى
recommendation	a suggestion that something is good to do or see	توصية/تزكية
scenery	the painted background of a theatre stage	خلفية المسرح
show	a play or performance for people to watch	عرض
sculpture	art made from stone or wood that looks like people, animals or other things	النحت - قطعة فنية منحوتة
costumes	clothes that you wear to look like someone or something else	أزياء / ملابس لمناسبة خاصة
script	the words for a film or a play which the actors learn	نص سيناريو

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

do	make-up يضع مكياج [مساحيق التجميل]	**give**	opinions يقدم آراء
play	instrument يعزف على آلة موسيقية		recommendations يقدم توصيات
use	a computer يستخدم الحاسب الآلي	**take**	photos يلتقط صور

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
ancient	قديم / عتيق الطراز	old / old-fashioned	modern / new	حديث / جديد
dark	مظلم / غامق اللون	dim / black	light	مضئ / فاتح اللون
amazing	رائع / مدهش	surprising / incredible	ordinary / usual	عادى
busy	مشغول / مزدحم	crowded / engaged	free	فاضى / غير مشغول

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–ist	تحول إلى الاسم المشير للوظيفة	artist	فنان
–al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	musical	موسيقىّ
–ation	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	recommendation	توصية
–ence	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	preference	تفضيل
–ful	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	colourful	ملون

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. This car is old-fashioned. It is not ....
   a. old b. modern c. dirty d. free
2. To get the job of the person from the word "art" we add "..............".
   a. –ity b. –able c. –y d. –ist
3. The word "amazing" can be the antonym of the word ".............." .
   a. surprising b. incredible c. crowded d. ordinary
4. The room is crowded. I will look for a/an .... one.
   a. free b. crowded c. busy d. engaged
5. "Recommend" can be a noun by adding the suffix "..............".
   a. –al b. –ation c. –ity d. –able

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 scenery - view

* **scenery** — منظر طبيعي (يقصد به التضاريس الطبيعية لمكان ما)
  - The countryside **الريف** has an attractive **scenery**.
* **scenery** — الأثاث - الخلفية - الرسومات المستخدمة على خشبة المسرح لتجعل المشهد حقيقيًا
  - The **scenery** on the stage seems to be a real hospital.
* **view** — منظر (ويقصد به ما تراه من خلال النافذة أو من أعلى برج مثلًا)
  - There is a wonderful **view** of the sea from our hotel room.

(SB page 23)

2 costume - custom

* **costume (n)** — ملابس (لمناسبة معينة)
  - We often wear **costumes** on special occasions.
* **custom (n)** — عادة - عُرف
  - The villagers have their own **customs**.

(SB page 23)

3 sculpture - sculptor

* **sculpture (n)** — فن النحت / تمثال منحوت
  - **Sculpture** is making objects from stone, wood, clay, etc.
  - There are a lot of **sculptures** in the museum.
* **sculptor (n)** — نحات
  - **A sculptor** is a person who makes figures and objects of stone, wood, clay, etc.

(SB page 24)

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
have an end-of-year show	يقيم عرض نهاية العام	get ready for	يستعد لـ
answer the phone	يرد على الهاتف	help with (music)	يساعد في (الموسيقى)
quite dark	مظلم إلى حد ما	act in a play	يمثل في مسرحية
recommend + (inf. + ing/n)	يوصي - يزكي	famous for	مشهور بـ
such as	مثل	learn to + (inf.)	يتعلم أن

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 23

Habiba: Mrs Medhat says we can have **an end-of-year show**[1]! It will be about the play we read in **the English class**[2]. I'm very **excited**[3], but I need help! Can anyone act or write **scripts**[4]? We also need people who are able to do **make-up**[5], **sew**[6] **costumes**[7], paint **scenery**[8] and play **instruments**[9].

Lamar: **Cool**[10]! I can talk to the people at drama club about acting.

Azza: Mariam and I know how to sew costumes! We love clothes and Lara is THE BEST at doing make-up!

Lara: YES!! I can do make-up.

Manal: I can paint scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up. Are you able to help with music, Talia ?

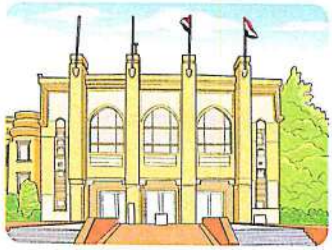
Talia: Yes, I can play the music! It sounds fun. Habiba, you are the best at writing, can you write the script ?

Habiba: Ok, I can try to write something ... You are all amazing!!! Thanks so much!

(1) عرض نهاية العام	(2) حصة لغة إنجليزية	(3) متحمس	(4) نصوص مسرحية	(5) مكياج
(6) يخيط/يحيك	(7) زى المناسبات الخاصة	(8) خلفية المسرح	(9) آلات موسيقية	(10) رائع

on Lesson 2 SB page 24

Review[1] of the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art[2]



By Wagdy Badr

Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo.

Egypt is famous for its **ancient art**[3], but I was interested in seeing art by Egyptians from the 20th and 21st **centuries**[4]. From my point of view, the artists were really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. There were portraits of both important and normal Egyptian people. I thought the cartoons were also really cool! I also saw lots of sculptures, both big and small.

My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. It made me feel happy because it was very **colourful**[5].

The best thing about the museum is that it is free to visit! I **recommend**[6] visiting it if you are in Cairo, but it's a good idea to go early when it is not very busy.

(1) مقال نقدي
(2) متحف الفن المصري الحديث
(3) الفن القديم
(4) قرون / عصور
(5) ملون
(6) يزكي / يوصي بـ

on Lesson 2 WB page 85

Review of the Textile Museum in Cairo, by Injy Zaki



Last month, I visited the Textile Museum in Cairo. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. I thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic. **From my point of view**[1], the statues showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past.

My favourite thing was the Islamic area where you can see different **kinds of**[2] calligraphy. I recommend looking at the clothes from other countries, too, **such as**[3] Iran. They are very interesting. If you want to **take photos**[4], it is a good idea to take a good camera, because the museum is quite dark.

(1) من وجهة نظرى | (2) أنواع من | (3) مثل | (4) يلتقط صور

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. A .... is a period of 100 years.
   a. decade b. century c. fortnight d. week
2. Your face is beautiful. Don't use much ....
   a. make-up b. mistakes c. photos d. chemicals
3. I read many .... about the film. Let's watch it !
   a. cartoons b. revisions c. reviews d. previews
4. **A :** What musical .... can you play ? **B :** The guitar.
   a. machines b. instruments c. costumes d. sculptures

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. Writing .... of films needs skill and experience. *(Nasr city - Cairo 2023)*
   a. texture b. disaster c. suspicion d. scripts
6. SB There were .... of important and normal Egyptian people in the museum.
   a. portraits b. plays c. cartoon d. pottery
7. WB My dress is damaged, so my mother is .... it.
   a. cleaning b. sewing c. tiding d. washing
   (Omrania - Giza 2021)
8. Maya is very happy because she is going to .... in a play next summer.
   a. add b. act c. make d. save
9. Samy .... visiting Alexandria. It is very good in summer.
   a. recommends b. listens c. reads d. mends
   (Borg Al Arab - Alexandria 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises

10. Mickey Mouse is a .... character.
    a. carton b. real c. cartoon d. musical
11. The .... is a place where we can watch plays.
    a. museum b. theatre c. park d. hall
12. Old bowls were made of .... from the river.
    a. wood b. glass c. clay d. stone

Definitions

13. A/An .... is someone who does paintings and drawings.
    a. writer b. pianist c. artist d. musician

14. Things that are made from clay, such as cups and plates are called ………………… .
    a. poetry b. pottery c. portrait d. views
15. A ………………… is a play or performance for people to watch.
    a. script b. portrait c. show d. view

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

16. I must hurry. I have 30 minutes to ………………… ready for the concert.
    a. give b. take c. get d. play
17. Mona can't ………………… the phone as she is busy now.
    a. make b. call c. answer d. have

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

1. Talking about preferences

١. التحدث عن الأشياء المفضلة

I'd rather + inf. مصدر الفعل

- أفضل أن ……

ex. - I'd rather go to bed early.

أفضل الذهاب إلى النوم مبكرًا.

I prefer + noun / inf. + ing

- أفضل ……

ex. - I prefer playing football at the club.

أفضل لعب كرة القدم بالنادي.

My favourite thing is / was ...

(كان) الشيء المفضل بالنسبة لي هو ...

ex. - My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said.

كان الشيء المفضل بالنسبة لي في المتحف هو لوحة فنية تسمى المدينة بواسطة محمود سعيد.

I am interested in + inf. + ing/n.

- إنني مهتم بـ ……

ex. - I am interested in reading funny stories.

- إنني مهتم بقراءة القصص المضحكة.

2. Giving opinions

٢. إبداء الآراء

- يمكن أن تستخدم هذه العبارات عند إبداء الآراء:

- From my point of view من وجهة نظري
- It made me feel لقد جعلني هذا أشعر
- I think أفكر / اعتقد
- In my opinion من رأيي

ex. - From my point of view, the artists were really good.

3. Giving recommendations

٣. إعطاء التوصيات / التزكية

- يمكن أن تستخدم هذه العبارات عند إعطاء التوصيات:

- I recommend + (inf. + ing)
- It's a good idea to + inf.
- You should + inf.

ex. - I recommend visiting the Textile Museum in Cairo. It is fantastic.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة الـ
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues
80 Paragraphs & E-mails

The Modern Egyptian Art Museum

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. Did you visit the Modern Egyptian .... ? متحف الفن
   - Yes, I did.

2. What were there in the museum ?
   - There were .... of both important and normal Egyptian people. لوحات فنية

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Eman is talking to Heba who went to the Modern Egyptian Art Museum yesterday.

Eman : Hello, Heba. How are you ?
Heba : Hello, Eman. (1) ....
Eman : (2) .... ?
Heba : I went to the Modern Egyptian Art Museum yesterday.
Eman : (3) .... ?
Heba : I went by taxi.
Eman : What did you see ?
Heba : (4) ....
Eman : Did you enjoy it ?
Heba : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Review of the Modern Egyptian Art Museum"

....

The Textile Museum in Cairo

Step 1 Vocabulary

1. When did you visit the .... ? متحف المنسوجات
   - Last week.

2. What was your .... about the museum ? وجهة نظر
   - From my point of view, the statues showing people wearing the clothes really teach you about life in the past.

Step 2 Speaking

A : Can I ask you some questions ?
B : (1) ....
A : (2) .... ?
B : The Textile Museum is in Cairo.
A : (3) .... ?
B : Yes, it is far from here.
A : How can I go there ?
B : (4) ....
A : What do you think about the museum ?
B : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing

"Review of the Textile Museum in Cairo"

....

III Language

Expressing ability and inability in the present

التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة في المضارع

نستخدم **can / can't + inf.** للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة للقيام بشيء ما في المضارع.

1 Can يستطيع

- **Affirmative** الإثبات → Subject الفاعل + can + inf. مصدر الفعل .
  - **ex.** She can draw a picture.
- **Negative** النفي → Subject الفاعل + can't + inf. المصدر ....
  - **ex.** I can't do make-up.
- **Interrogative** صيغة الاستفهام → Can + subject الفاعل + inf. المصدر ?
  - **ex.** Can you drive a car ? - Yes, I can.

تستخدم (know how to) للتحدث عن القدرة على فعل شيء ما.

2 know how to يعرف كيف أن ....

- **Affirmative** الإثبات → Subject الفاعل + know / knows how to + inf. المصدر .
  - **ex.** - Habiba knows how to write a script.
  - - I know how to sew clothes.
- **Negative** النفي → Subject الفاعل + don't / doesn't + know how to + inf. المصدر .
  - **ex.** - I don't know how to do calligraphy.
  - - He doesn't know how to write stories.
- **Interrogative** صيغة الاستفهام → Do / Does + subject الفاعل + know how to + inf. المصدر ?
  - **ex.** - Do you know how to play an instrument ?
  - - Does she know how to sew ?

◂ تستخدم **[be] able to** للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شيء ما.

3 (be) able to يكون قادر على

Affirmative الإثبات → Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + able to قادراً على + inf. المصدر .

ex. - Tamer is able to swim.
- I am able to draw.

Negative النفى → Subject الفاعل + am not / isn't / aren't + able to قادراً على + inf. المصدر .

ex. Mostafa isn't able to act.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام → Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + able to قادراً على + inf. المصدر ?

ex. - Are you able to help with music ?
- Is she able to play the drums ?

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Do you know .... to use a computer ? *(Zefta - Ghariba 2023)*
   a. what b. who c. how d. which
2. Do you know .... this mobile ? *(Luxor 2023)*
   a. fix b. how fix c. how to fixing d. how to fix
3. He can't swim, but he .... to play football very well.
   a. can b. can't c. is able d. isn't able
   (West Mahalla – Ghariba 2023)
4. .... you able to draw and paint ? *(Obour - Qalyubia 2022)*
   a. Can b. Are c. Will d. Would
5. He is .... start work now. *(Shubrakhit - Beheira 2022)*
   a. can b. able c. able to d. can be

6. SB Do you know how to .... an instrument ? - Yes, I do.
   a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
7. SB I .... talk to people at drama club about acting.
   a. can b. able to c. is able d. able

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Dalia .... swim, but she can fly a kite.
   a. don't b. isn't c. can't d. hasn't
9. .... Rokaya able to ride her motorbike well ?
   a. Can b. Is c. Does d. Did
10. Do you .... play the piano ?
   a. know how b. know how to c. able to d. are able

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Does Ali .... (knows) how to spell words ? *(Heliopolis - Cairo 2023)*
2. SB I can .... (playing) the guitar. *(El Marg - Cairo 2022)*
3. SB .... (You know) how to do any of the types of art ?
4. SB I know how .... (sew) costumes.
5. WB Can you .... (to play) football or tennis ?
6. Do you know .... (what) to do make up ? *(Montaza - Alexandria 2022)*
7. Ali .... (able) play tennis. *(West Shubra El Kheima - Qalyubia 2022)*

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Sara .... (know) how to paint a scenery.
9. What can you .... (did) in your free time ?
10. I .... (be) able to ride a bike.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. When did Hani visit the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art ?
   a. Last week b. Last month c. Last year d. Last May
2. Where is the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art ?
   a. In Luxor b. In Giza c. In Cairo d. In Aswan
3. How much did Hani pay for the visit ?
   a. 20 pounds b. A little money c. Nothing d. Much money
4. What did Hani see there ?
   a. Sculptures b. Pyramids c. Portraits d. Instruments

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman and Helmy are talking about art.

Ayman : Hello, Helmy. Do you like art ?

Helmy : (1) ....

Ayman : Can you draw and paint ?

Helmy : (2) ....

Ayman : What things do you like to draw ?

Helmy : (3) ....

Ayman : (4) .... ?

Helmy : Yes, I like nature very much.

Ayman : (5) .... ?

Helmy : I also like to make sculptures.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My friend is good at writing .... for plays. *(Maadi - Cairo 2023)*
   a. scripts b. scenery c. costumes d. instruments
2. Ahmed Zaki was a famous .... He played many amazing roles in many films.
   a. actor b. doctor c. nurse d. farmer
3. You don't pay money for getting into the museum. It's for ....
   a. expensive b. free c. cheap d. ancient

4. The actors will wear special .... *(Heliopolis - Cairo 2023)*
   a. customs   b. costumes   c. customers   d. hair
5. From my point of .... , Egypt is the best country in the whole world.
   a. portrait   b. script   c. review   d. view
6. There are big and small .... in the museum.
   a. opinions   b. musicians   c. concerts   d. sculptures
7. "...................." is the opposite of "old".
   a. Modern   b. Famous   c. Strong   d. Awesome
8. WB .... you know how to use the computer ?
   a. Have   b. Were   c. Do   d. Are
9. SB I .... play music. *(North Suez - Suez 2021)*
   a. able to   b. am able to   c. able   d. am able
10. I don't .... how to send any e-mails. *(Samalut - Minya 2022)*
   a. knows   b. knowing   c. knew   d. know

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. She is .... (able) cook our lunch on her own.
2. She can .... (cooking) koshari.
3. .... (Be) you able to do sport ? *(Fayid - Ismailia 2022)*
4. My father knows .... (what) to climb the mountain.

(Heliopolis - Cairo 2023)

5 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Soha telling her about your visit to the Egyptian Museum and the things you saw there. Your name is Khalid and your email address is khalid@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is soha@gmail.com

New message ×

Secure | https:

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 26 : 28
WB pages 86 & 87



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

orchestra (n)	فرقة موسيقية	wonder (ed) (v)	يتعجب - يتسائل
musician (n)	موسيقار	hug (ged) (v)	يحضن
radio reporter (n)	مراسل إذاعي	blind (n), (adj)	أعمى - كفيف
disabled (n), (adj)	عاجز - لديه إعاقة	deaf (n), (adj)	أصم
concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية	Braille (n)	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين
proud (adj)	فخور	public transport	وسائل المواصلات العامة

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

wonders - disabled - public transport - deaf

1. Ali is .... He isn't able to hear.
2. Ahmed .... if he can travel to Aswan alone.
3. Using .... can help to reduce pollution.

Lesson 3
SB pages 26 & 27 WB page 86

skills (n)	مهارات	classical music	موسيقى كلاسيكية
surprising (adj)	مدهش - مفاجئ	wheelchair (n)	كرسي متحرك
traffic lights (n)	إشارات المرور	introduction (n)	مقدمة
stairs (n)	درجات السلم	difficulty (n)	صعوبة - عائق

Lesson 4
SB page 28 WB page 87

relationship (n)	علاقة	events (n)	أحداث
carefully (adv)	بحذر - بحرص	blog (n)	مدونة إلكترونية
imagine (d)(v)	يتخيل	newspaper (n)	جريدة

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
learn	يتعلم	learned / learnt	learned / learnt
fall	يسقط	fell	fallen
leave	يترك - يغادر	left	left

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

blind	not able to see	كفيف البصر
deaf	not able to hear	أصم
disabled	not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can	عاجز - لديه إعاقة
cello	a large, wooden musical instrument with four strings that you hold between your knees to play	آلة التشيلو
flute	a musical instrument that you play by blowing across a hole near one end	آلة الناي
hug	put your arms around someone and hold them closely, usually because you love them.	تحتضن
orchestra	a large group of musicians who play many different instruments together	أوركسترا [فرقة موسيقية]
hide	go to a place where you cannot be seen or found, or put something in a place where it cannot be seen or found	يخفى /يختبئ
musician	someone who is very good at playing music, usually as a job	موسيقار
trombone	a large, metal musical instrument that you play by blowing into it and moving a part in and out to make different sounds	ترومبون [آلة موسيقية]
Braille	a type of reading you can do with your hands	طريقة برايل [للمكفوفين]
violin	a wooden musical instrument that you can play by moving a wooden bow across four strings	آلة الكمان
cry	produce water from eyes, usually because you are sad, angry or hurt	يبكي

UNIT 9

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms
مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
interesting	شيق - ممتع	exciting / fantastic	boring	ممل
international	دولى / عالمى	global / universal	local	محلى
special	خاص / مميز	important / particular	common / ordinary	عادى
difficult	صعب / شاق	hard	easy	سهل

Prefixes & Suffixes
مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	carefully recently	بحرص / بحذر حديثًا
–ship	تكون اسمًا	relationship	علاقة / صلة
–al	تكون صفة	classical	تقليدى / كلاسيكى
–ian	تكون اسمًا [يدل على وظيفة]	musician	موسيقار

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The antonym of the word "local" is "..............".
   a. national b. international c. classical d. historical
2. The exam was difficult, it wasn't ....
   a. hard b. unavailable c. common d. easy
3. To get the adverb from the adjective "careful", we add the prefix "..............".
   a. –ly b. –al c. –ous d. –y
4. To get the job from the word "music", we add the suffix "..............".
   a. –ance b. –tion c. –ian d. –ship
5. The word "special" has the same meaning as the word "..............".
   a. particular b. common c. ordinary d. easy

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 orchestra / band / concert

* **orchestra** فرقة موسيقية (دائمًا تعزف الموسيقى الكلاسيكية)
  - - Om Kalthoum had a great **orchestra**.
* **band** فرقة موسيقية (دائمًا تعزف الموسيقى الشعبية أو موسيقى الجاز)
  - - Tamer's band plays pop music well.
* **concert** حفلة موسيقية
  - - I love music. I will go to the **concert**.

(SB page 26)

2 disabled / the disabled / unable

* **disabled (adj)** لديه إعاقة - عاجز
  - - He has lost his leg. He is **disabled**.
* **the disabled** متحدي الإعاقة (تعامل كإسم جمع)
  - - **The disabled** have a private gate to get into the cinema.
* **unable (adj)** غير قادر
  - - He's **unable** to use the computer.

(SB page 27)

3 instrument - tool

* **instrument (n)** آلة (موسيقية)
  - - The violin is a musical **instrument**.
* **tool (n)** أداة (مثل الأدوات التي يستخدمها النجار)
  - - Hammers, ladders and nails are **tools** used by carpenters.

(SB page 28)

4

عند استخدام **(the)** أمام بعض الصفات تتحول إلى اسم جمع

- The blind المكفوفين - The deaf الصم

Important Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions

make notes يدون ملاحظات	have a good relationship لديه علاقة طيبة (جيدة)
Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra أوركسترا جمعية النور والأمل	become blind يصبح كفيف
spend a long time يقضي وقتًا طويل	practise instruments يتدرب على الآلات الموسيقية
swap roles يتبادل الأدوار	read the music يقرأ النوتة الموسيقية

Prepositions			
on the floor / street	على الأرضية / في الشارع	a list of	قائمة من
a person in a wheelchair	شخص على كرسي متحرك	in the way	بالطريقة
be in the orchestra	يكون عضو في الفرقة الموسيقية	a school for girls	مدرسة بنات
special about	مميز بخصوص	throw .... down	يطرح [شيء] أرضًا
an introduction to	مقدمة لـ	shout at	يصيح / يصرخ في
at the end	في النهاية	on public transport	في وسائل المواصلات العامة

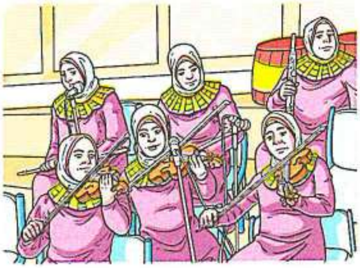
II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 26



Radio Reporter[1] :

Today I'm visiting a very **special school**[2] in Cairo. This is a music school for girls. All the students study their **usual**[3] subjects in the morning and then **practise**[4] their instruments in the afternoon.

Many of the students at this school **join**[5] **an orchestra**[6] called the Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra. This orchestra **plays**[7] **concerts**[8] in Australia, Germany, China and all around the world. What is most special about the school and the orchestra is that all the students here are **blind**[9]!

The orchestra plays **international**[10] **classical**[11] and Arabic music.

All the students learn to read the music using **Braille**[12], a type of reading you can do with your hands. Then, they have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time. Let's go to meet some of the **musicians**[13].

(1) مراسل إذاعي	(2) مدرسة خاصة	(3) طبيعي / عادى	(4) يمارس / يتدرب	(5) يلتحق بـ / ينضم
(6) أوركسترا (فرقة موسيقية)	(7) يعزف	(8) حفلات موسيقية	(9) كفيف البصر	(10) دولي / عالمي
(11) تقليدى / كلاسيكى	(12) طريقة برايل للمكفوفين	(13) عازفي الموسيقى		

Reading

on Lesson 3 WB page 86

The Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is at a school for blind girls in Cairo.

Eman Badr is one of the musicians.

She is able to play the **violin**(1) very well.

She started playing when she was six. Eman became blind when she was two years old. She likes playing in the orchestra because she loves music and being with her friends. **Recently**(2), she visited **Oman**(3) and **France**(4) with the orchestra.



I think the orchestra is **amazing**(5). It must be very difficult to read music with your hands and then remember it. I would like to go to one of their concerts.

(1) آلة الكمان
(2) حديثًا / مؤخرًا
(3) دولة عمان
(4) دولة فرنسا
(5) رائع / مدهش

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information إستخراج معلومات

Learn 1. When did Eman Badr become blind ?
- ***She became blind at the age of two.***

Practise 2. What countries has Eman visited recently with the orchestra ?

....

on Lesson 4 SB page 28

Little Women by Louisa May Alcott

Meg, Beth and Amy were **sewing**(1) when Jo came into the room with a **newspaper**(2).
She sat down and started to read it.
"Anything interesting ?" asked Meg.
"Oh, only a story," Jo replied.
"What's it called?" asked Beth.
She **wondered**(3) why Jo was **hiding**(4) behind the newspaper.
"It's called *The Rival Painters,"* said Jo.
"Why don't you read it to us?" asked Amy.
Jo started to read it very quickly. The girls listened carefully. The story was very sad.



(1) يخيط / يحيك
(2) جريدة
(3) تساءلت
(4) يخفي / يختفي

"I liked it," said Meg at the end. She was **crying**[5] a little.
"Isn't it strange that the **characters**[6] are called two of our favourite names ?"
Beth saw Jo's face. "Who wrote the story?" she asked.
Jo jumped up, threw the paper down and said, "Your sister!"
"You?" shouted Meg. "It's very good!" said Amy.
"I knew it ! I knew it! Oh, I am so **proud**[7]!" said Beth, **hugging**[8] her sister.

(5) يبكى
(6) شخصيات (القصة)
(7) فخور
(8) يحضن

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. She .... why Jasmin was hiding behind the newspaper.
   a. wandered b. wondered c. read d. cried
2. My mother .... me when I do something good.
   a. punishes b. hugs c. hits d. drives
3. Using .... transport can reduce pollution in Cairo.
   a. public b. private c. cheap d. expensive

SB , WB and Previous Exams

4. My brother is a/an .... in the orchestra. *(El Dokki - Giza 2023)*
   a. owner b. maker c. musician d. pair
5. The .... is my favourite musical instrument. *(Sheikh Zayed - Giza 2023)*
   a. carriage b. ruler c. violin d. hammer
6. What is your favourite musical instrument ? B : The ....
   a. clarinet b. cook c. laptop d. TV
   (Ashmoun - Menoufia 2023)
7. If a person is ...., they are not able to hear.
   a. blind b. deaf c. strong d. weak
   (Minya - Minya 2022 / Agouza - Giza 2023)
8. SB What .... do you think musicians need ?
   a. money b. skills c. time d. power
9. .... people can't walk. *(Al Amerya - Alexandria 2022)*
   a. Blind b. Deaf c. Dumb d. Disabled
10. "Braille" is a special writing for the ....
    a. blind b. deaf c. orchestra d. disabled
    (El Matarya - Cairo 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises

11. You should look at the .... before crossing the road.
    a. traffic lights b. books c. people d. houses

12. .... you are flying, where would you like to fly ?
    a. Join b. Imagine c. Put d. Decide

Definitions

13. A/An .... is a large group of musicians who play different instruments together.
    a. concert b. orchestra c. opera d. staff
14. A .... is a musical instrument that you play by blowing across a hole near one end.
    a. violin b. guitar c. flute d. cello

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. What is special .... Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra ?
    a. in b. out c. about d. for
16. Don't shout .... children. You should be kind to them.
    a. on b. at c. of d. from

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

Discussion on helping disabled people

مناقشة عن مساعدة ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة

Questions	Answers
1. How do you think we can help disabled people ? – كيف تعتقد يمكننا مساعدة ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة ؟	- I think we should ask a person in a wheelchair if they need help. – أعتقد أنه ينبغي أن نسأل أي شخص يستخدم كرسي متحرك إذا كان يحتاج أي مساعدة.
2. Do you think it is a good idea to have special schools for blind people ? Why / Why not ? – هل تعتقد إنها فكرة جيدة ان تؤسس مدارس خاصة للمكفوفين ؟ لما/لما لا ؟	- Yes, I do. Because they need special help to learn well. – نعم، أعتقد ذلك، لأنهم يحتاجون للمساعدة بشكل خاص ليحصلوا على تعليم جيد.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

"Blind people" المكفوفين

1. Blind people are those who can't see at all.
   ١. المكفوفين هم هؤلاء الأشخاص غير القادرين على الرؤية على الإطلاق.
2. The blind can practise many things easily.
   ٢. يستطيع المكفوفين ممارسة العديد من الأشياء بسهولة.
3. Most blind people are very clever and active.
   ٣. يمتاز معظم المكفوفين بالذكاء والنشاط.
4. There are many famous blind people such as Taha Hussein.
   ٤. يوجد العديد من المكفوفين المشاهير مثل طه حسين.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة الـ

قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues
80 Paragraphs & E-mails

How to help disabled people

Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. How can we help .... people? ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة

   - I think we should ask any person in a wheelchair if they need help.

2. What does the word "disabled" .... ? تعنى - تقصد

   - It means not able to use a part of the body in the way other people can.

Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

A : Can I ask you some questions ?
B : (1) ....
A : (2) .... ?
B : It means not able to use parts of the body in the way other people can.
A : (3) .... ?
B : Yes, blind and deaf people are disabled.
A : Are there any schools for disabled people ?
B : (4) ....
A : How can blind people read and write ?
B : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"How to help disabled people"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Blind people

Step 1 Vocabulary

1. Who was Taha Hussien ?

   - He was a famous Egyptian .... كاتب

2. Do you think .... people can participate in creative activities ? المكفوفين

   - I think blind people can do fantastic things.

Step 2 Speaking

A : What are you doing ?
B : (1) ....
A : What is the article about ?
B : (2) ....
A : (3) .... ?
B : Taha Hussien was one of the most famous Egyptian writers.
A : (4) .... ?
B : He went blind when he was a child.
A : How was he at school ?
B : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing

"Blind people"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Rawan is a .... girl.
   a. brave b. blind c. dumb d. deaf
2. She likes ....
   a. English b. sport c. cooking d. calligraphy
3. She plays .... in a team.
   a. table tennis b. basketball c. volleyball d. tennis
4. She came .... in the last competition.
   a. first b. second c. third d. fourth

(Menouf - Menoufia 2023)

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Eman is talking with Dina about musical instruments.

Eman : Hi, Dina. Where are you going ?
Dina : (1) ....
Eman : (2) .... ?
Dina : I started the guitar lesson two months ago.
Eman : (3) .... ?
Dina : I go there three times a week.
Eman : Is it near from here ?
Dina : (4) ....
Eman : Can I come with you ?
Dina : (5) ....

(El Salam - Cairo 2022)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Mona always gives her grandmother a big .... when she sees her.
   a. hug b. sculpture c. table d. house

(Kafr Sakr - Sharkia 2023)

2. I love my cousins. We .... a good relationship.
   a. are b. have c. shout d. cry
3. Flutes, cellos and trumpets are .... instruments.
   a. historical b. personal c. musical d. electrical

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

4. He is in a/an .... because he can't walk.
   a. orchestra b. wheelchair c. chamber d. armchair
5. A/An .... person can't use the parts of the body in the way other people can. *(El Arish - North Sinai 2022)*
   a. successful b. disabled c. clever d. artist
6. A musician needs special .... to play music.
   a. legs b. hand c. skills d. fingers
7. My little sister can't go up and down the ....
   a. events b. concert c. stairs d. traffic
8. They .... able to know who the writer of the story is.
   a. isn't b. aren't c. wasn't d. doesn't
   (Agouza - Giza 2023)
9. Does she know how .... the test ? *(Hurghada - South Sinai 2022)*
   a. answered b. answer c. to answer d. answers
10. I can .... a car. *(Edfu - Aswan 2022)*
   a. drive b. drives c. drove d. driving

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Amira is able .... (play) a musical instrument. *(El Sahel - Giza 2023)*
2. .... (Be) he able to read French ? *(Heliopolis - Cairo - 2022)*
3. Magdy is able .... (in) play basketball. *(El Dokki - Giza 2023)*
4. What can you ....(doing) to help disabled people ?

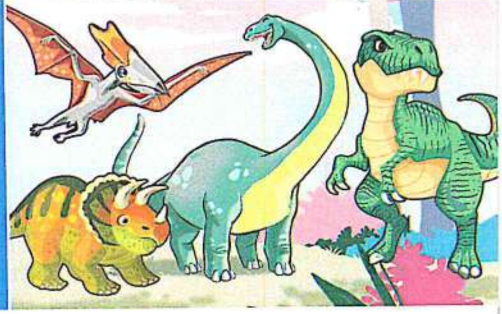
5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"How to help the disabled"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 29 & 30
WB pages 88 & 89



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

invitation (n)	دعوة	adventure film (n)	فيلم مغامرات
request (n)	طلب	star (n)	نجم / ممثل مشهور
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	reviewer (n)	ناقد أدبي
theme park (n)	مدينة ملاهي	invite (d) (v)	يدعو
actions (n)	أحداث [فى فيلم أو رواية]		

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

escaped - invitation - star - theme park

1. Mayar sent me a/an .... to go to the concert.
2. A large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc is called ....
3. The thief climbed the garden fence and ....

Lesson 5 SB page 29 WB page 88

telephone conversation	محادثة تليفونية	table tennis (n)	لعبة تنس الطاولة
family party (n)	حفلة عائلية	complete (d) (v)	يكمل

Lesson 6 SB page 30 WB page 89

Jurassic (n)	العصر الجوراسي	hidden (adj)	مخفي - مخبأ
scary (adj)	مخيف	summary (n)	ملخص
machine (n)	آلة	fires (n)	حرائق
recycle (d)(v)	يعيد تصنيع	present (ed) (v)	يقدم - يعرض
land (ed)(v), (n)	يهبط / أرض يابسة	schoolboys (n)	تلاميذ

Study these definitions ادرس هذه التعريفات

action	the things that happen in a film	أحداث [في فيلم أو رواية]
adventure film	a film that has a lot of exciting events	[فيلم ذو أحداث مثيرة]
adventure	an exciting and sometimes dangerous experience	مغامرة

escape	to leave a place that you should stay in	يهرب
review	to present a summary, an opinion and recommendation of a film, book or play	ينتقد - ينقد
theme park	a large park with machines to ride on or play games on, and with cafés, restaurants, etc.	مدينة ملاهي
wonder	think about something and want to know why it is true	يتسائل

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

give	information	يقدم معلومات	**make**	a presentation	يعد عرض
	a presentation	يقدم عرض		films	يصور / يصنع أفلام
	advice	يقدم نصيحه		sculptures	يصنع قطع فنية منحوتة
do	calligraphy	يمارس فن الخط	**stop**	fires	يطفئ الحرائق

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
escape يهرب	run away	stay يبقى / يظل
horrible فظيع / رهيب	terrible	good جيد fantastic رائع

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
re–	تشير إلى أداء الفعل مرة ثانية	recycle يعيد تصنيع
–ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	action حركة
–er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	writer كاتب

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The prefix "..............." used to add the meaning "do again".
   a. un– b. re– c. im– d. dis–
2. The antonym of the word "horrible" is "..............." .
   a. bad b. ugly c. fantastic d. sad
3. To get the noun from the verb "act", we add the suffix "...............".
   a. –er b. –ion c. –ness d. –ed

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 adventure (n)
مغامرة (اسم يعد)

- Basem likes **adventures.**

عند استخدام كلمة (adventure) قبل اسم آخر تتحول لصفة للاسم ولا تجمع أبدًا.

- adventure stories قصص مغامرات
- adventure film فيلم مغامرات

(SB page 30)

2 star (n)
نجم (اسم يعد)

- The **stars** are shining in the sky.

وتشير أيضًا إلى شخص مشهور في (التمثيل - الموسيقى أو الرياضة).

- a football star لاعب كرة قدم مشهور
- a film star ممثل سينمائي مشهور

(SB page 30)

3 park - bark

* **park (n)** حديقة

- The children are playing in the **park.**
- Cairo has a lot of public **parks.**

* **park (v)** يركن سيارة

- Don't **park** your car here. It's not allowed.

* **bark (v)** ينبح

- Dogs **bark** when they see strangers.

(SB page 30)

4 scary - scared

* **scary (adj)** مخيف

- I don't like **scary** films.

* **scared (adj)** خائف / مرعوب

- Rahma feels **scared** when seeing dogs.

(SB page 30)

Important Expressions & Prepositions
تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions		Prepositions	
See you then.	أراك لاحقًا.	instead of	بدلًا من
leave my house	أغادر منزلي	view of ...	منظر / رؤية لـ ....
How's it going ?	كيف تسير الأمور؟	decide to	يقرر أن
nearly dark	مظلم تقريبًا	decide on	يحدد / يختار
present your ideas	اعرض أفكارك	on the radio	على / عبر الراديو
have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة فى الهواء الطلق	summary of ...	ملخص لـ ...

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 29





Rawia : Hi, Warda!

Warda : Hi Rawia, how's it going ?

Rawia : Fine thanks, how are you ?

Warda : Yeah, I'm good. I was **wondering**(1) if you would like to come to watch a film at my house tonight.

Rawia : Yeah, cool, I'd love to. Which film ?

Warda : I've got the film of a famous book. Would you like to watch Little Women ?

Rawia : Oh, yes please - I love the book! Shall I **bring**(2) some **drinks**(3) or **snacks**(4) ?

Warda : I have lots of snacks but not much to drink. Could you bring some **fruit juice**(5) ?

Rawia : Of course, no problem. What time should I come ?

Warda : About 7 pm ?

Rawia : Great ! See you then.

(1) يتسائل | (2) يحضر | (3) مشروبات | (4) وجبات خفيفة | (5) عصير فواكه

on Lesson 7 SB page 31

Sami : Hi Omar, I was wondering if you were busy tonight.

Omar : No, I'm not busy. Why ?

Sami : Would you like to come to my house to listen to some music ?

Omar : Yes, that sounds cool! Shall I bring anything ?

Sami : Yes, could you bring your guitar and we can play some songs, too ?

Omar : Good idea! What time should I come ?

Sami : About 8 pm. See you then !

Reading

- on Lesson 6 SB page 30

A review[1] of Jurassic World

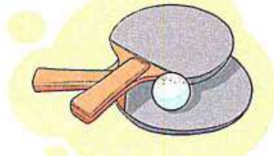


Jurassic World[2] is an **adventure**[3] film. The **stars**[4] of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It is about a **theme park**[5] where **scientists**[6] have helped dinosaurs to live again! Then some of the dinosaurs **escape**[7]. What will happen ?

I thought the **action**[8] was exciting and my favourite thing was the **scary**[9] dinosaurs; they look very **real**[10]. But, in my opinion the story isn't very interesting or new. I recommend this film if you like exciting and scary films, but not if you want a good story.

(1) مقال نقدى	(2) عالم الديناصورات	(3) مغامرة	(4) نجوم (الفيلم)	(5) مدينة ملاهى
(6) علماء	(7) يهرب	(8) حدث	(9) مخيف	(10) حقيقى

- on Lesson 5 WB page 88



Salem : Hi Nader. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow.

Nader : Yes, I would love to. It's a big house, isn't it ?

Salem : Yes, he's got table tennis in the garden. Would you like to play ?

Nader : Yes, please! Shall I bring some table tennis balls ?

Salem : No, he's got those. Could you bring some food ? We'll have a picnic.

Nader : Of course, I'll bring some sandwiches. What time should I come ?

Salem : We're leaving my house at 10 am.

Nader : Great! See you then.

• on Lesson 6 WB page 89

A review of Lord of the Flies

Lord of the Flies is an adventure story. **It** is by the **British**[1] **writer**[2] William Golding.

It is about some **schoolboys**[3] who have to live on an island after their plane **lands**[4] in the sea and the **pilot**[5] dies. How will the boys live on the **island**[6], and will they **escape**[7] ?

I thought the action was exciting and many amazing things happen to the boys. My favourite part was early in the story, when the children enjoy their time on the island. But, in my opinion, some of the children are **horrible**[8] and I did not like **them**.

I **recommend**[9] the book because it makes you think about what it is like to live only with other children, but it is not a very happy story.

(1) بريطاني
(2) كاتب
(3) تلاميذ
(4) تهبط
(5) طيار
(6) جزيرة
(7) يهرب
(8) رهيب / فظيع
(9) يزكى / يوصى

Answer the following questions :

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

Learn 1. What does the underlined pronoun "**It**" in the first paragraph refer to ?
- It refers to Lord of the Flies story.

Practise 2. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to ?
....

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▶ **Key vocabulary**

1. I went diving in Dahab last year. It was a great ....
   a. subject b. adventure c. writing d. film
2. Yesterday, I heard that a kangaroo .... from the zoo.
   a. gave b. hid c. escaped d. sold
3. Ahmed Helmy is a film .... I love him so much.
   a. singer b. writer c. player d. star
4. I'll .... my friends to my birthday party.
   a. meet b. invent c. interview d. invite

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. WB The things that happen in a film are called ....
   a. pottery b. athletics c. actions d. energy
   (Burg El Arab - Alex 2023)

6. SB There's a great .... from the top of the tower.
   a. review b. watch c. view d. few
7. WB We should .... all our plastic to use again. *(Deir Mawas - Minya 2022)*
   a. burn b. recycle c. throw d. damage
8. We use "please" to make polite .... *(Helwan - Cairo 2022)*
   a. request b. offer c. invitation d. pollution

El-Moasser Exercises

9. The dinosaurs look .... , they are very big and dangerous.
   a. kind b. boring c. scary d. afraid
10. I feel worried when the plane ....
   a. stays b. gives c. finishes d. lands
11. His new sculpture looks .... It looks like his son.
   a. funny b. real c. weak d. small

▸ Definitions

12. A .... is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc.
   a. theme park b. safari park c. garden d. beach
13. To .... is to present a summary, an opinion and recommendation of a film, book or play.
   a. view b. preview c. review d. revise
14. To "...................." means to think about something and want to know why it is true.
   a. wander b. wonder c. review d. escape

▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. Our teacher asked us to .... a presentation about dinosaurs for the next lesson.
   a. make b. leave c. offer d. review
16. Science books .... us more information about nature.
   a. give b. make c. have d. find

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▸ 1. Inviting people

١. دعوة أشخاص

نستخدم إحدى هذه الصيغ عندما نقوم بدعوة شخص ما.

↘ Would you like to .... ?

هل تحب أن / ترغب في ... ؟

ex. Would you like to come to my sister's wedding ?

↘ I'd like to invite you to ....

أود أن أدعوك إلى ...

ex. I'd like to invite you to a family party.

↘ I was wondering if you would like to ...

كنت أتسائل إذا تحب أن (ترغب في) ...

ex. I was wondering if you would like to come to my house tomorrow.

Accepting and refusing invitations • «قبول ورفض الدعوة»

Accepting القبول	Refusing الرفض
I'd love to ! أود ذلك !	I'm sorry. آسف.
That / It sounds great ! يبدو عظيمًا !	I'm afraid I can't. آسف لا استطيع.
	I'd love to, but I can't because .... أود ذلك ولكن لا أستطيع بسبب ....

2. Offering help ٢. تقديم المساعدة

ex. Shall I bring some drinks or snacks ? هل أحضر بعض المشروبات أو الوجبات الخفيفة ؟

Accepting the offer قبول عرض المساعدة

- Yes, could you bring some juice ? نعم، هل يمكنك إحضار بعض العصير ؟

Refusing the offer رفض عرض المساعدة

- Thanks. I have lots of snacks. شكرًا. أنا لدي الكثير من الوجبات الخفيفة.

3. Making a request ٣. طلب شيء ما

ex. - Could you bring some foods, please ? هل يمكنك إحضار بعض الأطعمة من فضلك ؟

- Yes, of course. I'll bring some sandwiches. نعم بالطبع، سوف أحضر بعض السندوتشات.

4. Asking for information ٤. الاستعلام عن معلومات

ex. - What time should I come ? في أي وقت ينبغي علي الحضور ؟

3. Writing مهارة الكتابة

"A review of an adventure film" مقال نقدى عن فيلم مغامرات

1. Jurassic world is an adventure film. ١. عالم الديناصورات فيلم مغامرات.
2. It is about a theme park where scientists have helped dinosaurs to live again ! ٢. الفيلم عن مدينة ملاهي يقوم فيها العلماء بمساعدة الديناصورات أن تعيش مرة ثانية !
3. Some of the dinosaurs escaped. ٣. هربت بعض الديناصورات.
4. The film was exciting and scary. ٤. الفيلم كان مثير ومخيف.

III Language

1. Making invitations دعوة الأشخاص

نستخدم إحدى هذه الصيغ عندما نقوم بدعوة شخص ما.

- Would you like to + inf. ... ? هل تحب أن / ترغب في ... ؟

ex. Would you like to come to my sister's wedding ?

- I'd like to invite you to + inf. / n. ... أود أن أدعوك إلى ...

ex. - I'd like to invite you to come with me to the cinema.

- I'd like to invite you to my birthday party.

- I was wondering if you would like to + inf. ... كنت أتسائل لو تحب / ترغب في ...

ex. I was wondering if you would like to come to my cousin's house tomorrow.

2. Making offers تقديم عروض

- Shall I + inf. ... ? هل يمكنني أن ..... ؟

ex. Shall I bring some cakes or fruit ?

- I'll + inf. ... if you like. سوف ... لو تحب.

ex. I'll bring you some coffee if you like.

- Would you like me to + inf. ... ? هل تريدني أن ..... ؟

ex. - Would you like me to open the window ?

- Can I + inf. ... ? هل يمكنني أن ..... ؟

ex. - Can I help you ?

3. Making requests تقديم طلبات

- Could you + inf. .... , please ? أيمكنك أن .... من فضلك ؟

ex. Could you open the door for me, please ?

- Do / Would you mind if you + inf. ... ? هل تمانع لو .... ؟

ex. Do you mind if you open the door for me ?

- Do / Would you mind (inf. + ing) ... ? هل تمانع أن .... ؟

ex. Would you mind opening the door for me ?

- I wonder if you could + inf. ... أنا أتسائل لو تستطيع أن ...

ex. I wonder if you could help me with my homework.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB, WB and Previous Exams

1. .... you like sugar in your coffee ? – No, thanks. *(Ismailia 2023)*
   a. Does b. Would c. Are d. Were
2. Shall I .... you some cake ? *(Sinouress – Fayoum 2023)*
   a. brought b. bring c. bringing d. brings
3. Do you mind if you .... the window for me ? *(Zaytoun – Cairo 2023)*
   a. opening b. opens c. open d. open to
4. SB Would you like .... a film of Little Women ? - Of course.
   a. to seeing b. to see c. seeing d. see
5. WB I was wondering if you would like .... to my house tomorrow.
   a. to come b. came c. comes d. come
6. I'd .... invite you to the dolphin show. *(Al Warraq - Giza 2022)*
   a. like b. likes c. liked d. like to

El-Moasser Exercises

7. I'll .... Aswan if you like to come with me.
   a. visit b. visited c. visits d. visiting
8. Do you mind if I .... you some questions ?
   a. asked b. ask c. asks d. asking
9. She wonders if you could .... your homework.
   a. do b. does c. did d. doing
10. I .... like to invite you to my birthday party.
   a. 'm b. 've c. 'd d. 're

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB, WB and Previous Exams

1. Would you .... (to like) to listen to music ? *(East Fayoum 2023)*
2. Would you mind .... (help) me ? *(Matai – Menia 2023)*
3. Do you mind .... (open) the window ? *(Abdeen - Cairo 2022)*
4. WB Shall I .... (bringing) you a cup of coffee ? *(El Masara - Cairo 2022)*
5. SB What time should I .... (comes) to your house ?

El-Moasser Exercises

6. Which play would you like .... (watch) ?
7. I .... (get) you some tea if you like.
8. Could you .... (opening) the door for me, please ?

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Jurassic World is a/an .... film.
   a. adventure b. historical c. scientific d. action
2. Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard are the .... of the film.
   a. workers b. stars c. writers d. readers
3. In the film, scientists have helped .... to live again.
   a. lions b. dinosaurs c. giraffes d. deers
4. Some dinosaurs .... after scientists helped them.
   a. found b. cried c. killed d. escaped

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Amany is inviting Sally for watching a film at her house tonight.

Amany : Hi, Sally! How is it going ?

Sally : (1) ....

Amany : Would you like to watch a film at my house tonight ?

Sally : (2) .... When does it start ?

Amany : (3) ....

Sally : (4) .... ?

Amany : It is called "Little Women".

Sally : That's a great film. (5) .... ?

Amany : No. Don't bring any snacks. Mom 'll make us cakes and juice.

Sally : Great! I will come before 7. See you then.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... park is a large park with machines to ride on, restaurants, etc. *(Tahta – Souhag 2023)*
   a. Thin b. Same c. Scene d. Theme
2. I'd like to .... you to my birthday party. *(El Santa - Gharbia 2022)*
   a. invite b. intend c. introduce d. interrupt

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

3. Many famous .... act in that new film. I recommend it. *(Ismailia 2023)*
   a. moons b. writers c. reviewers d. stars
4. Shall I .... you something to drink ?
   a. ring b. bring c. sing d. sting
5. I am .... if you are busy tonight.
   a. wondering b. wandering c. walking d. working
6. When the thief saw the police, he ....
   a. smiled b. laughed c. waved d. escaped
7. A film star knows how to .... in films.
   a. invite b. act c. escape d. complete
8. SB Let's go to the park and .... our kites.
   a. flies b. fly c. to fly d. flying
9. Adel is able to .... his new bike.
   a. ride b. rode c. ridden d. rides
10. .... you get me some biscuits, please ?
   a. Shall b. Would c. Could d. Should

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Would you like .... (coming) to my birthday party ? *(El Maragha – Sohag 2023)*
2. Let's .... (listens) to some music. *(El Maragha – Sohag 2022)*
3. Could you .... (helping) me with my homework. *(Atfeh - Giza 2022)*
4. I will .... (taught) you the piano if you like.

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"A review of your favourite film"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Review on unit 9

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

Word	Meaning
blind	كفيف
disabled	عاجز - لديه إعاقة
deaf	أصم
orchestra	فرقة موسيقية
concert	حفلة موسيقية
cartoons	رسوم متحركة
pottery	صناعة الأواني الفخارية / قطع فخارية
sculpture	فن النحت / قطعة فنية منحوتة
artist	فنان / رسام
actions	أحداث
review	مقال نقدي - ينتقد
theme park	مدينة ملاهي
hug	يحضن
cry	يبكى
wonder	يتسائل
sew	يخيط
art	الفن
scenery	خلفية المشهد
escape	يهرب
musical instruments	آلات موسيقية

Language

Use (can), (know how to) or (be able to) to talk about ability

تستخدم (can/know how to/be able to) للحديث عن القدرة

- I can paint scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up.
- Mariam and I know how to sew costumes.
- Are you able to help with music ?

Speaking

1. Talking about preferences and giving recommendations :

الحديث عن الأشياء المفضلة والتوصيات :

A : Did you like the film of "Spiderman" ?

B : I thought it was great! I recommend watching it.

2. Inviting people :

دعوة الأشخاص :

- I was wondering if you would like to come to my house tomorrow.

3. Offers :

تقديم عروض :

- **Shall I + inf. .... ?**
  - Shall I bring you some fruit juice ?

4. Requests :

تقديم طلبات :

- **Could you + inf. .... ?**
  - Could you bring me some water, please ?

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Understanding reference

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [Understanding reference] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا [لتحديد ما تشير إليه الكلمة التى تحتها خط].

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

Two years ago, my friend Hany went to Cairo to work. When he reached **there**, he was amazed because there were a lot of people and cars he didn't see before. He started looking for work but it was difficult for him to find work as he was young. Finally, he found work in a restaurant. He worked hard every day to get some money to help his younger brothers and sisters. Hany washed the dishes in the restaurant for eight hours a day and sometimes the restaurant owner asked him to collect rubbish.

When the owner noticed that he was an active boy, he gave him extra money to help him and encouraged him to do well at school.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

The underlined word "**there**" refers to ....

a. Minia b. Ghariba c. Cairo d. Aswan

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى ما تشير إليه الكلمة التى تحتها خط.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع [أن تحدد ما تشير إليه الكلمة التى تحتها خط].

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

A : Hi, I'm planning to have a birthday party next week. (1) .... ?

B : Sure, I'd love to come. (2) .... ?

A : It's on Saturday at 7 p.m. Do you have any plans ?

B : No, I don't have any plans. I'll be there !

A : OK. I'll serve pizza, burgers and some snacks !

B : (3) .... !

A : (4) .... ?

B : You can bring some drinks. That's all.

A : I'm looking forward to seeing you on Saturday.

B : (5) .... ! See you on Saturday at 7 p.m.

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [التفضيل ودعوة الأشخاص] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية [paragraph] معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع. "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلى."

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع [زيارة لمتحف الفن الحديث بالقاهرة] و [زيارة لمدرسة خاصة] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية وكيفية استخدامها فى تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic: A review of your visit to the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning :

- مشهور ....
- الفن ....
- فنانين / رسامين ....
- لوحات شخصية ....
- يوضح / يبين ....

Step 2 Sentences

Fill in using vocabulary :

1. I visited the Museum of Modern Egyptian .... in Cairo.
2. Egypt is .... for its ancient art.
3. The .... were really good.
4. They .... what life was like in Egypt in the past and now.
5. There were .... of both important and normal Egyptian people.

Step 3 Paragraph

Write a paragraph on :

"A review of your visit to the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art."

....
....
....
....
....
....

Topic: A visit to a special school

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

- الآلات الموسيقية ....
- مدرسة خاصة ....
- بنات ....
- فرقة عزف موسيقية ....
- كفيف البصر ....

Step 2 Sentences

1. Today, I'm visiting a very .... in Cairo.
2. This is a music school for ....
3. Girls practise their .... in the afternoon.
4. Many students in this school join an .... called Al Nour Wal Amal.
5. What is special about this school is that all students are ....

Step 3 Paragraph

Write an email about :

"A visit to a special school"

....
....
....
....
....
....

تدريب تلقائى على مهارة الكتابة

Questions collected from previous exams
تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Hamza is able to .... his bike. *(Bani Mazar – Menia 2023)*
   a. rides b. rode c. ride d. riding
2. He likes .... He made this vase. *(Aswan 2023)*
   a. pottery b. sewing c. weaving d. acting
3. Is she .... to cook well ? *(Haram – Giza 2023)*
   a. can b. know c. knows d. able
4. A .... is a period of 100 years.
   a. day b. year c. decade d. century *(Wasat – Alexandria 2023)*
5. I like walking along the Nile to see the beautiful .... *(Edfu - Aswan 2023)*
   a. rubbish b. scenery c. pollution d. traffic
6. .... people can't see. *(Sahel Sleem – Asuit 2023)*
   a. Deaf b. Strange c. Blind d. Disabled
7. A .... is a painting or photograph of a person's face. *(Qena 2023)*
   a. statue b. portrait c. scenery d. play
8. A .... person is the one who isn't able to hear.
   a. blind b. strong c. dumb d. deaf *(El Maragha – Souhag 2023)*
9. There is a great .... from the top of the tower. *(Tur Sinai - South Sinai 2023)*
   a. revision b. interview c. view d. review
10. Fady .... able to speak two languages well. He likes languages a lot. *(Deir Mawas - Menia 2023)*
   a. is b. was c. are d. were

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Hala can .... (did) karate. *(El Sahel – Cairo 2023)*
2. My sister doesn't know how .... (cooking). She is too young. *(Abu Korkas – Minia 2023)*
3. ....(Is) you able to remember names of your friends easily ? *(Tema – Souhag 2023)*
4. He .... (not know) how to make falafel. *(El Kousia – Assuit 2023)*
5. I was .... (wonder) if you would like to have tea with me. *(El Kousia – Assuit 2023)*
6. I recommended .... (visit) the Egyptian Museum in Cairo. *(Aswan 2023)*
7. They .... (able to) sew clothes. *(Luxor 2023)*
8. My sister can't .... (feeding) herself. *(Menia 2023)*

Test on unit 9

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. How was the film ?
   a. Comic b. Funny c. Scary d. Enjoyable
2. What was the film about ?
   a. Dinosaurs b. Camels c. Monkeys d. Tigers
3. When did Ramy see the film ?
   a. Today b. Tonight c. Tomorrow d. Last night
4. What couldn't Ramy do after the film ?
   a. Eat b. Sleep c. Sing d. Drink

(El Edwa - Menia 2023)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer is telling Ahmed about his visit to a museum.

Ahmed: Hello Tamer, How are you ?

Tamer : (1) ....

Ahmed: (2) .... ?

Tamer : Last month, I visited the Egyptian Museum of Modern Art in Cairo.

Ahmed: (3) .... ?

Tamer : I saw lots of statues.

Ahmed: Is it free to visit ?

Tamer : (4) ....

Ahmed: Did you enjoy your time there ?

Tamer : (5) ....

(El Shohada - Menofia 2023)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Egypt has many ancient and wonderful buildings. The Citadel in Cairo is one of the most important monuments in Egypt. You can see its high towers far away. Some people call it Salah al-Din's Castle. This is because the King Salah al-Din built it to protect Cairo. It took eight years

to complete. Work began in 1176 and ended in 1183. There are also four museums in the Citadel. You can visit **several** mosques, there.

Also, the Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo. It took five years to build. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile on Gezira Island. There is a restaurant at the top. **It** moves, so you can see all of the city below you. There are 24 windows on each floor of the building. If you want to walk to the top, there are 2.500 stairs. At night, the colours on the tower change. It is a wonderful building !

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Salah al-Din built the Citadel to .... Cairo.
   a. visit b. see c. protect d. call
2. The underlined word "**several**" means ....
   a. many b. few c. little d. much
3. There are .... museums in the Citadel.
   a. 14 b. 4 c. 40 d. 44

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea in the passage ?

....

5. What does the underlined word "**It**" refer to ?

....

6. What do you think about the Cairo Tower ?

....

(North Port Said - Port Said 2022)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He is able .... the match. *(El Edwa - Menia 2023)*
   a. win b. won c. to win d. winning
2. A/An .... is someone who does paintings and drawings.
   a. pilot b. teacher c. artist d. nurse
   (El Ghanyem - Assuit 2023)
3. Do you know how .... this machine ? *(Bulaq El Dakrour - Giza 2022)*
   a. repairs b. to repair c. repairing d. repair
4. The kids spend their Saturdays watching ....
   a. cartons b. cartoons c. costumes d. views

5. Could you .... me first juice ?
   a. brought   b. brings   c. bringing   d. bring
6. The .... on the stage خشبة المسرح was fantastic.
   a. bridge   b. view   c. scenery   d. theme
7. He can't see because he is .... *(Souhag 2023)*
   a. blind   b. weak   c. brave   d. deaf
8. In my ...., our national team is the best football team in Africa.
   a. book   b. view   c. script   d. cartoon
   (El Zaitoun - Cairo 2022)
9. A flute is a musical ....
   a. tool   b. instrument   c. machine   d. band
   (Multidisciplinary exam - El Hawamdia - Giza 2021)
10. Sara is good at .... make-up.
   a. giving   b. taking   c. doing   d. having

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. He would like to .... (knowing) how to solve problems. *(Aswan 2023)*
2. .... (Are) he able to drive a car ? *(Qena 2023)*
3. Let's .... (going) to the club. *(Bab El Sharia - Cairo 2022)*
4. .... (Do) I make you a sandwich ? *(Siwa - Marsa Matrouh 2022)*

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 9 for Al-Azhar students

اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Nour : Have you ever visited the Pyramids ?
Mohamed : (1) ....
Nour : What have you seen there ?
Mohamed : (2) ....
Nour : (3) .... ?
Mohamed : Last winter.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. blind – clever – active – **Most** – people – very – are – and.

....

2. is – for – art – its – ancient – **Egypt** – famous.

....

3. like to – wedding – brother's – **Would** – you – come to – my ?

....

4. area – kinds of – **The Islamic** – includes – different – calligraphy.

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My friend is good at writing .... for plays.
   a. scripts b. scenery c. costumes d. instruments
2. SB I can .... scenery if you want, but I can't do make-up.
   a. explore b. paint c. sew d. have
3. I need to learn .... for the school play.
   a. reading b. running c. sculpture d. acting
4. SB I .... play music.
   a. able to b. am able to c. able d. am able
5. Do you .... how to use the computer ?
   a. knew b. know c. knows d. knowing

4 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :

"A visit to a museum in Cairo"

....

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Amal are talking about going to the theatre.

Mona : What are you going to do this evening ?

Amal : (1) ....

a. I am going to sleep
b. I am going to read a book
c. I am going to go to the theatre
d. I am going to play tennis

Mona : (2) .... ?

a. Why are you going there
b. When are you going there
c. Who are you going with
d. How are you going there

Amal : To watch a play, called "Little Women".

Mona : Can I come with you ?

Amal : (3) ....

a. No, I can't
b. Yes, with pleasure
c. Sorry I'm busy
d. You can't go tomorrow

Mona : Thank you. (4) .... ?

a. What time will the play start
b. What time will the film end
c. What time will the play end
d. What time will the film start

Amal : The play will start at 10 p.m.

Mona : Could you bring some food ?

Amal : (5) ....

a. Yes, I like music
b. Yes, I like acting
c. Yes, I like doing make-up
d. Yes, of course

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. Shall I .... (**bringing**) some cakes or fruits ?
a. bringing to b. bring
c. to bring d. brought

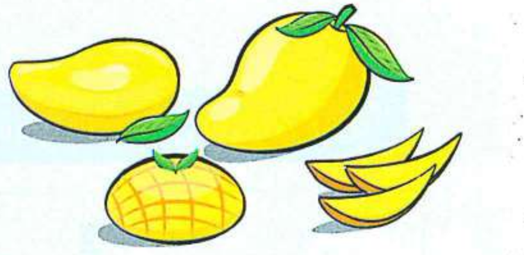
7. Are you .... (**able**) help with music ?
a. able to b. to able
c. can able d. can't able

8. .... (**Will**) you like to have some tea ?
a. Can b. Would c. Should d. Might

9. Do you know .... (**who**) to cook the food ?
a. where b. what c. how d. when

10. Do you mind .... (**use**) your phone ?
a. to use b. using c. used d. use to

Review C



SB pages 32 & 33 WB pages 91 & 92

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 32

Medical advice for people at the 2021 Handball World Championship[1].



- Stand 1.5 metres from other people.
- Enter and leave the **stadium**[2] through the correct doors.
- **Take a test for COVID-19**[3] every 72 hours.
- Only **players**[4] do not need to wear a **mask**[5].
- Only **online interviews**[6] after games.

(1) بطولة كأس العالم لكرة اليد | (2) ستاد | (3) يخضع للاختبار فيروس كورونا | (4) لاعبين | (5) قناع | (6) مقابلات عبر الانترنت

on lesson 1 SB page 32

Review of Julius Caesar



Last night, I went to see Julius Caesar. It's a play by the English writer William Shakespeare, but it's about a **Roman ruler**[1].

Caesar's costume made him look very important! The scenery was amazing and it really looked like **Ancient Rome**[2].

In my opinion, the story is very sad and I cried at the end. From my point of view, the actor who played Caesar was the best but all the acting was very good. I will never forget this play, but there wasn't much action; it was **mostly**[3] talking. And it was three hours long! If you watch a Shakespeare play, you should know that the language of the script is different to modern English so it can be difficult to understand, but I liked it.

(1) حاكم رومانى | (2) روما القديمة | (3) فى المجمل

on lesson 2 WB page 92

Review for a play

1. The people look like they are from Ancient Egypt because the **costumes**(1) are very good, but the person who painted the **scenery**(2) did not know how to paint! It was very long, and I didn't like the music. I wouldn't **recommend**(3) this.

Review for a magazine

2. The articles are always really interesting to read and they have fantastic **photographs**(4), too. I really like the **cartoons**(5) because they make me laugh! If you want to learn about the world today, you should buy this!

Review for a museum

3. From my **point of view**(6),this is the best place to find out about life in the last century. There are interesting **sculptures**(7) of people and some other amazing old technology. I loved the big, old **phones**(8)!

Review for a book

4. The story was very slow and there was very little **action**(9) . I didn't really enjoy it because it **made me** (10) feel sad. The **best**(11) thing about it was learning what it is like to be blind. That must be very difficult.

(1) أزياء مناسبات خاصة	(2) خلفية المسرح	(3) يزكى - يوصى	(4) صور فوتوغرافية	(5) رسوم متحركة	(6) وجهة نظر / رأى
(7) قطع فنية منحوتة	(8) الهواتف	(9) حدث	(10) جعلنى	(11) أفضل	

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 33

Heba : What's your favourite food, Sara ? I like fruit, such as a nice juicy mango! I like fruit more than anything else ... and the fruit I like best of all ... It's difficult to **decide**(1).

Sara : I like fruit, too Heba, but my favourite food is a nice, **fresh falafel**(2). There is a **food stall**(3) near my house where they are very good, and my mum sometimes cooks them, too.

(1) يقرر	(2) طعمية طازجة	(3) كشك لبيع طعام

Heba : What things do you know how to cook, Sara ? I can make omelettes and salads, but I don't know how to make many things.

Sara : I know how to make cakes. My grandmother taught me. I love making cakes, but I eat too many of them. I should eat more fruit.

Heba : Yes, I eat too many cakes, too! I don't do enough exercise. I have a sports lesson at school once a week, and I go for a walk a few times a month with my cousins but that's all. What about you ?

Sara : I play tennis twice a week and I run with my father at the weekend, so I do enough exercise, but I often spend too much time playing computer games in the evenings, so I go to bed late.

Heba : Yes, I spend too much time online in the evenings, too. Let's try to do more exercise next week, Sara!

Sara : Good idea, Heba!

on lesson 2 SB page 91

Amal : It's Mum's birthday. Let's make her some breakfast.

Dalida : That's a good idea, Amal. We could make her a fruit salad.

Amal : I think she prefers salty food to sweet food, Dalida. What about a cheese omelette ?

Dalida : Omelette is a good idea. Would you like to get the butter from the fridge, Amal ?

Amal : OK.

Dalida : Shall I beat the eggs ? I like doing that. How many eggs should I use ?

Amal : Thanks, Dalida. If there are four of us, you should use eight eggs.

Dalida : Do you know how to chop the cheese, Amal ?

Amal : Of course.

Dalida : It's a good idea to chop the cheese really small. I'll heat some butter in the pan and pour in the eggs.

Amal : How long should it cook for ?

Dalida : We'll leave it for a few minutes.

Amal : It looks really nice. I'd like a lot, please !

Dalida : We can all have a little. Mum will be very pleased !

▶ If you got ●, you need to revise the unit again at the end of each unit.
قم بتقييم نفسك بالعلامات الموضحة وإذا حصلت على ● غير جيد ، قم بمراجعة الوحدة مرة أخرى

● ممتاز ● جيد جداً ● جيد ● غير جيد

السؤال الأول فى الورقة الامتحانية :

1. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Fahmy is on the school .... team.
   a. athletics b. football c. tennis d. chess
2. Fahmy goes .... every day.
   a. diving b. running
   c. swimming d. shopping
3. Fahmy needs food that gives him ....
   a. sweets b. fats c. energy d. luck
4. He eats .... healthy snacks like nuts.
   a. many b. much c. a lot of d. a few

السؤال الثانى فى الورقة الامتحانية :

2. Complete the following dialogue :

Hany and Huda are talking about modern technology.

Hany : Hello Huda. Can I ask you some questions ?
Huda : Hello Hany. (1).................... .
Hany : Are you interested in modern technology ?
Huda : (2).................... .
Hany : What do you think the most useful technology is ?
Huda : (3).................... .
Hany : (4).................... ?
Huda : Because I can do many things on my mobile phone.
Hany : (5).................... ?
Huda : I can communicate with my friends and I can do the shopping online.

السؤال الثالث فى الورقة الامتحانية :

3. Read the following, then answer the questions :

Healthy food is really important for everyone. It helps us grow well and gives us energy. If you want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. We need to drink much water every day.

Dairy products like milk and cheese are healthy. **They** give us calcium. It helps us to have strong bones. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them. We need protein to have a strong body. Fruits and nuts are healthy snacks. People need to eat fresh fruit and vegetables every day.

Sports people are so interested in what they eat. The healthier food they eat, the fitter they will be. Bad habits of having food are the main **reasons** for health problems nowadays.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**reasons**" has the same meaning as ....
   a. causes b. proteins
   c. actions d. meetings

2. We can avoid some health problems by having .... food.
   a. expensive   b. cheap
   c. healthy   d. fatty
3. Dairy products give us ....
   a. books   b. calcium   c. habits   d. money

B. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

   ....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**<u>They</u>**" refer to ?

   ....

6. Why do you think we need protein ?

   ....

السؤال الرابع فى الورقة الامتحانية :

4. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Can you .... this passage into Arabic ?
   a. translate   b. transform
   c. transmit   d. transport
2. He doesn't eat any cakes because he is .... to nuts.
   a. allergic   b. usual   c. delicious   d. enough
3. Try to have a/an .... diet to keep you healthy.
   a. balanced   b. long   c. fresh   d. old
4. If a person is ...., he isn't able to hear.
   a. blind   b. deaf   c. free   d. strong
5. A .... is a musical instrument.
   a. cello   b. wheelchair
   c. portrait   d. racket
6. We love to watch the beautiful .... from the train windows.
   a. scenery   b. picture   c. portrait   d. photograph
7. What do you .... about the weather tomorrow ?
   a. respect   b. predict   c. suspect   d. object
8. If you .... to go online, you should ask your parents first.
   a. wants   b. wanted   c. to want   d. want
9. I .... to draw and paint.
   a. can   b. am able   c. knows how   d. can't
10. Eating .... fish makes you strong.
   a. a lot of   b. a lot   c. any   d. little

السؤال الخامس فى الورقة الامتحانية :

5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

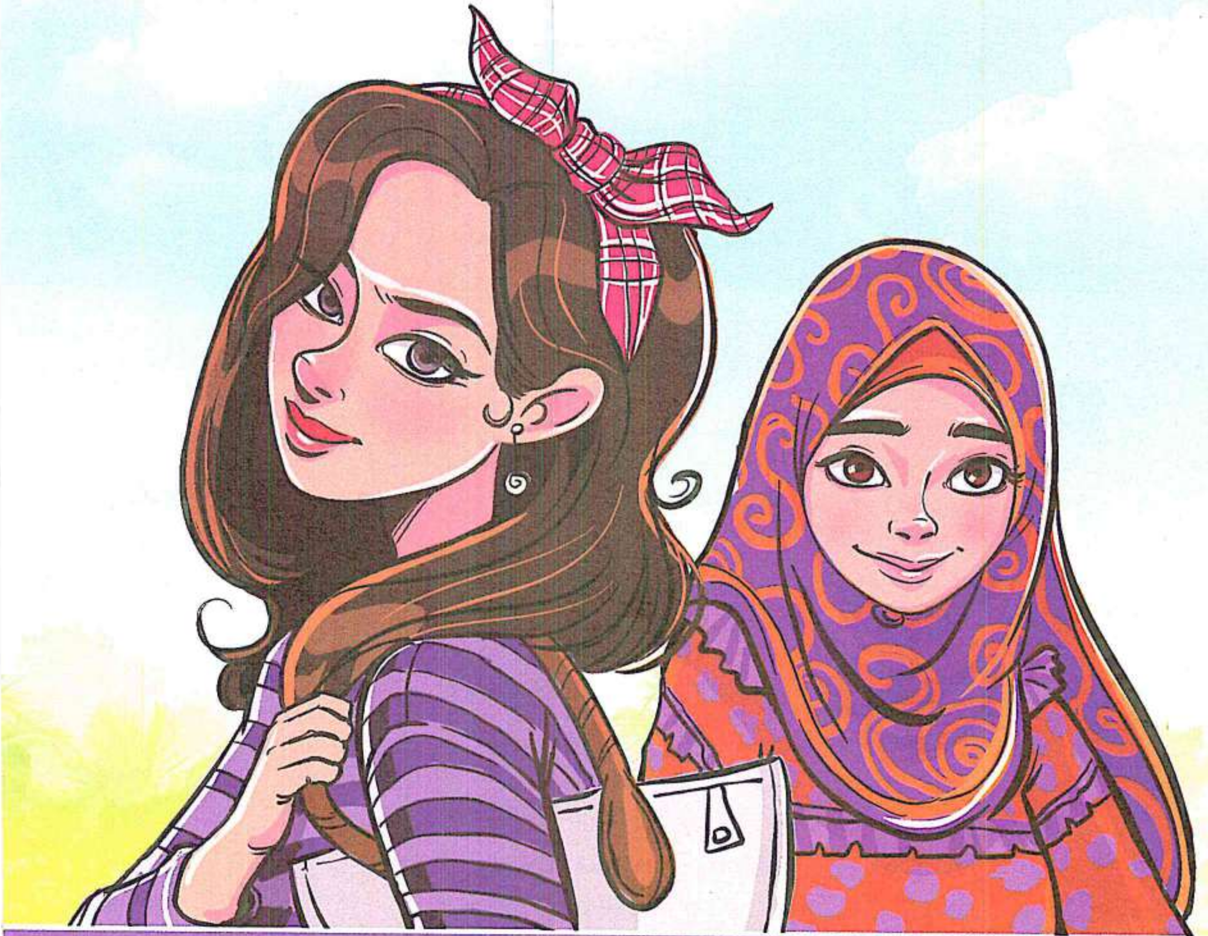
1. If I go to the shops, I .... (spends) a lot of money.
2. There is .... (a few) milk in the glass.
3. I recommend .... (reads) this book.
4. Mr Ali .... (buy) a car in the future.

السؤال السادس فى الورقة الامتحانية :

6. Write a paragraph of about NINETY(90)words on :

"Healthy and unhealthy food"

....
....
....
....



Unit 10 We are what we wear

SB pages 34:43 WB pages 93:99

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  An article about Egyptian clothes now and in the past; a blog about what teenagers wear; a text about linen and cotton; an advert
- **Writing :**
  An advert to sell something
- **Listening :**
  People talking about their clothes; a conversation in a clothes shop
- **Speaking :**
  Discussing and describing clothes; shopping for clothes
- **Language :**
  Adjective order; one, ones
- **Life Skills :**
  Respect for diversity

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 34 : 37
WB pages 93 & 94



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

loose (adj)	واسع - فضفاض	climate (n)	مناخ
size (n)	حجم - مقاس	traditional (adj)	تقليدي
style (n)	طراز - أسلوب	casual (adj)	غير رسمي [ملابس]
smart (adj)	أنيق / مهندم - ذكى	colourful (adj)	ملون
striped (adj)	مخطط		

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

size - casual - Smart - climate - striped

1. "................." means looking clean and tidy.
2. Please, I need .... 42 of these pink trainers.
3. Some countries have a hot .... most of the year.
4. The zebra has .... skin.

Items of clothes and accessories

أنماط الملابس وملحقاتها

trainers	حذاء رياضي	galabeya	جلابية [ثوب فضفاض]
robe	عباءة	belt	حزام
headscarf	حجاب الرأس	scarf	وشاح / طرحة
earrings	حلق	jumper	بلوفر
handbag	شنطة يد	necklace	عقد
trousers	بنطلون	jewellery	مجوهرات

Materials

مواد خام

leather	جلد [مدبوغ]	plastic	بلاستيك
gold	ذهب	wool	صوف
cotton	قطن	metal	معدن
linen	كتان	glass	زجاج

Lesson 1

SB pages 34 & 35 WB page 93

relaxed (adj)	مستريح - مسترخي	outside (adv)	في الخارج
special (adj)	خاص - مميز	protect (ed) (v)	يحمى
a bit (adv)	قليلًا	warm (adj)	دافئ

Lesson 2

SB pages 36 & 37 WB page 94

Ancient Egyptians	قدماء المصريين	electric (adj)	كهربي
sheet (n)	ملاية	wooden (adj)	خشبى
clothing (n)	الملبس	strange (adj)	غريب

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

belt	a strip of leather or material that you wear to support clothes or for decoration	حزام
casual	casual clothes are not formal or not suitable for special occasions	غير رسمي [ملابس]
cotton	material made from the cotton plant, used to make shirts, trousers, etc	قطن
earring	a piece of jewellery, usually one of a pair, worn in or on an ear	حلق
gold	made of a very valuable yellow metal used to make coins and jewellery	ذهب
handbag	a small bag, usually carried by women, used for money, keys, make - up, etc	حقيبة يد
headscarf	material that women wear to cover their hair	حجاب الرأس
jewellery	objects that you wear on your clothes or body that are usually made from valuable stones or metals, such as gold and silver	مجوهرات
leather	a material made from an animal, used to make shoes, bags, clothes, etc	جلد [مدبوغ]
linen	a strong material made from part of the flax plant	كتان
metal	a hard, strong material often used to make bridges, the inside of buildings, etc	معدن
necklace	a piece of jewellery worn around the neck	عقد
galabeya	a long, loose piece of clothing	جلابية [ثوب فضفاض]
sandals	open shoes that you usually wear in warm weather	صندل [حذاء مفتوح]

scarf	a long piece of material that you wear around the neck or shoulders	وشاح / طرحة
size	how big or small something is	حجم / مقاس
smart	looking clean and tidy	أنيق / مهندم - ذكى
sunglasses	dark glasses that you wear to protect your eyes from the sun	نظارة شمس
trainers	light, comfortable shoes that people usually wear for sport	حذاء رياضي
wool	the soft, thick material that comes from the hair of sheep and some other animals	صوف

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
traditional	تقليدى	classical	untraditional	غير تقليدى
comfortable	مريح	easy / enjoyable	uncomfortable	غير مريح
important	مهم	necessary	unimportant	غير مهم
similar	متشابه	alike / identical	different	مختلف
loose	فضفاض	relaxed / baggy	tight	ضيق
casual	غير رسمى (ملابس)	informal	formal	رسمى (ملابس)
smart	أنيق	fashionable	old-fashioned	قديم الطراز

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
-ed	تكون الصفة من الفعل	striped مخطط - مقلم relaxed مستريح - مسترخى
-en	تكون الصفة من الاسم	wooden خشبى woolen مصنوع من الصوف

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Your clothes are loose. This means that they are not ....
   a. baggy b. common c. necessary d. tight

2. You look smart in this suit. It is ....
   a. fashionable b. dirty c. old-fashoined d. uncomfortable
3. To turn the word "wood" into an adjective, we add the suffix " .... " .
   a. -al b. -en c. -ation d. -able
4. "Comfortable" and "easy" are ....
   a. antonyms b. opposites c. different d. synonyms
5. In meetings, you have to wear .... clothes.
   a. casual b. informal c. tight d. formal

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 الكلمات التالية تأخذ بعدها (فعل جمع) :

sandals - sunglasses - trainers - shoes .... etc.

- My **sunglasses** are black.
- Adel's **trainers** are made of leather.

وتستخدم كلمة (**a pair of**) لتشير إلى (زوج من) وتعامل معاملة المفرد.

- My mum bought me **a pair of** sandals .
- **A pair of** shoes is not enough for me for training. *(SB page 37)*

2 clothes - clothe - cloth

* clothes (n) ملابس — دائمًا تستخدم جمع وليس لها مفرد
  - My **clothes** are fashionable.
* clothe (d) (v) يُلبس — تستخدم كفعل
  - She **clothes** her baby in different colours.
* cloth (n) قماش
  - His shirt is made of good **cloth**. *(SB page 36)*

3 jewellery - jewels

* jewellery (n) الحلى — تعامل معاملة الاسم المفرد
  - Sara's **jewellery** is so valuable.
* jewels (n) مجوهرات — تعامل معاملة الاسم الجمع
  - Sara's **jewels** are made of diamond. *(SB page 36)*

4 loose - lose - loss

* loose واسع - فضفاض - غير مربوط — تستخدم كصفة
  - **loose** clothes ملابس واسعة - loose hair شعر غير مربوط
* lose / lost /lost يخسر - يفقد - يضيع — تستخدم كفعل
  - I usually **lose** a lot of money.
* loss خسارة — تستخدم كاسم
  - If Mr Ayman leaves, it will be a big **loss** to our school. *(SB page 36)*

5 as

لها معاني واستخدامات مختلفة

* as = because لأن
  - He was absent **as** he was ill.
* as = while بينما
  - ***As** Basem was checking his email, he received a message from Jack.*
* as + وظيفة
  - He works **as a doctor**.
* as + صفة + as

لتوضيح تساوى الصفة بين اثنين

  - Ashraf is **as clever as** Rashwan.

(SB page 36)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

Expressions			
look through	يتصفح	wear special clothes	يرتدى ملابس خاصة
keep warm	يحتفظ بالدفء	feel relaxed	يشعر بالاسترخاء
cost a lot of money	يتكلف الكثير من المال	the same as	مثل
Prepositions			
a type of	نوع من	(be) made of	مصنوع من
the best for	الأفضل لـ ...	different from	مختلف عن
good for	مفيد لـ	protect ... from	يحمى ... من
go for a special meal	يذهب لتناول وجبة خاصة	dress in	يرتدى

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

on Lesson 1 SB page 35

1. Narrator : Huda

I'm Huda. These are the **types**(1) of clothes I usually wear. I like to be **comfortable**(2) and feel **relaxed**(3) in my clothes. These sunglasses were a present from my mum and I love them. I think I wear them outside most days !



(1) أنواع / أنماط | (2) مريح | (3) مستريح / مسترخى



2. Narrator : Tarek

I'm Tarek and I wear these clothes when I'm helping my father. It's really hot outside today and these **traditional clothes**[4] keep me cool and **protect**[5] me from the sun when I'm working.



3. Narrator : Sara

I'm Sara and I'm wearing my favourite colour today! I think I dress in a **traditional style**[6] but I like to be colourful. My **headscarf**[7] is from the market. It's a cool colour, isn't it ?



4. Narrator : Adam

My name's Adam and I'm going for a **special meal**[8] with my grandparents, which is why I'm wearing these clothes. I usually wear jeans.
I quite like **looking smart**[9], but I think I look a bit like my father when he is going to work!

(4) ملابس تقليدية | (5) يحمى | (6) أسلوب نمطى | (7) حجاب الرأس | (8) وجبة خاصة | (9) يبدو أنيق

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 36

Clothes in Ancient Egypt

In **Ancient Egypt**[1], men and women wore **similar clothes**[2]. They both wore **loose**[3], white, **linen**[4] clothes with a **belt**[5]. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive **leather**[6] sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear **heavy**[7], metal **jewellery**[8]. Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.



(1) مصر القديمة
(2) ملابس متشابهة
(3) فضفاض - واسع
(4) كتان
(5) حزام
(6) جلد
(7) ثقيل
(8) مجوهرات

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات.

Learn 1. What were the Ancient Egyptians' sandals made of ?
- They were made of leather.

Practise 2. What else did they love to wear ?
....

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▸ Key vocabulary

1. Mr Ahmed always looks .... in school meetings and classes. His clothes are fashionable.
   a. smart b. untidy c. ugly d. old
2. The shop assistant asked me about my shoes ....
   a. size b. address c. height d. weight
3. Some animals have .... skin like zebras.
   a. checked b. striped c. colourful d. gold
4. Young people like wearing .... clothes like colourful T-shirts and trainers.
   a. casual b. formal c. old d. traditional
5. Most European countries have cold .... most of the year.
   a. sky b. climate c. private d. limit

SB , WB and Previous Exams

6. Shoes, bags and belts are often made of .... *(Esna - Luxor 2023)*
   a. wool b. metal c. leather d. wood
7. You have to choose good .... to practise running well.
   a. trains b. turns c. trainers d. slippers
   (Helwan - Cairo 2023)
8. Excuse me, what's the .... of this belt ? - Leather. *(Toud - Luxor 2023)*
   a. size b. colour c. age d. material
9. SB I like to be .... and feel relaxed in my clothes.
   a. loose b. hot c. comfortable d. cold
10. There is a beautiful .... sheet on my bed. I prefer it.
    a. metal b. plastic c. linen d. leather
    (Qaha - Qalyubia 2022)

El-Moasser Exercises

11. Most of ancient Egyptian women liked to wear .... around their necks.
    a. boots b. necklaces c. skirts d. jeans
12. Girls prefer wearing fashionable .... in their ears.
    a. necklaces b. rings c. sunglasses d. earrings

▸ Definitions

13. .... is a material that women wear to cover their hair.
    a. Skirt b. Headscarf c. Blouse d. Shirt

14. A/An .... is a strip of leather or material that you wear to support clothes or for decoration.
    a. belt b. ring c. earring d. necklace

▶ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. The teacher asked us to .... turns to answer all questions in order.
    a. make b. give c. take d. put
16. I like to .... in a traditional style.
    a. put b. hear c. carry d. dress

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▶ **Discussing and describing clothes**

مناقشة و وصف الملابس

Questions	Answers
1. How do you decide what to wear ? - كيف تقرر ما ترتديه ؟	- I like to wear casual clothes because they are comfortable and make me feel relaxed. - أفضل أن أرتدى ملابس غير رسمية لأنها مريحة وتجعلني أشعر بالاسترخاء. - I like to wear formal clothes because I like to look smart. - أفضل ارتداء الملابس الرسمية لأنني أحب أن أبدو أنيق.
2. Do you listen to the opinions of your friends and family about clothes ? - هل تستمع إلى آراء أصدقائك وأفراد عائلتك بشأن ملابسك ؟	- Yes, I usually ask for their opinions as I like to be smart. - نعم، عادة ما أستشيرهم لأنني أحب أن أبدو أنيق. - No, I usually choose my clothes by myself as I like to be comfortable. - لا، عادة ما أختار ملابسي بمفردي لأنني أفضل أن أشعر بالراحة في ملابسي.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

"Clothes in Ancient Egypt"

الملابس فى مصر القديمة

1. In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes.
   ١. ارتدى الرجال والنساء ملابس متشابهة في مصر القديمة.
2. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt.
   ٢. كلاهما كانا يرتديان ملابس فضفاضة (واسعة) بيضاء اللون من الكتان بحزام.
3. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but rich people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals.
   ٣. معظم الوقت، القدماء المصريين لم يرتدوا أحذية لكن الأغنياء كانوا يرتدون أحيانًا صنادل من الجلد غالية الثمن.
4. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old.
   ٤. الأطفال لم يرتدوا عادة الكثير من الملابس حتى سن السادسة.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues
80 Paragraphs & E-mails

The type of clothes you'd like to wear

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. What type of clothes would you like to wear ?
   - I would like to wear .... clothes. رسمى

2. Why do you like to wear formal clothes?
   - Because I like to look .... أنيق

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Mohamed is buying a jacket at a clothes shop.

Salesman : Hi, how can I help you ?
Mohamed : Hi, I'm looking for a jacket.
Salesman : How do you like your jacket, long or short ?
Mohamed : (1) ....
Salesman : What colour would you like ?
Mohamed : (2) ....
Salesman : (3) .... ?
Mohamed : Yes, it fits me. (4) .... ?
Salesman : It's 200 pounds.
Mohamed : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"The type of clothes you'd like to wear"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Clothes in Ancient Egypt

Step 1

1. Did men and women wear .... clothes in Ancient Egypt ? متشابهه
   - Yes, they did.

2. Do you know what people wore in .... ? مصر القديمة
   - They wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt.

Step 2

They're talking about clothes in Ancient Egypt.

A : Can I ask you some questions ?
B : (1) ....
A : Did men and women wear similar clothes in Ancient Egypt ?
B : (2) ....
A : (3) .... ?
B : They both wore loose, white linen clothes with a belt.
A : Did Ancient Egyptians wear shoes ?
B : (4) .... They wore sandals.
A : (5) .... ?
B : Children didn't usually wear many clothes until they were about 6 years old.

Step 3

"Clothes in Ancient Egypt"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

III Language

Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

Usage الاستخدام

• We often use more than one adjective in this order. We don't use more than three or four adjectives.

◄ نستخدم غالبًا أكثر من صفة فى هذا الترتيب. ولا نستخدم أكثر من ثلاث أو أربع صفات.

◄ كيفية ترتيب الصفات :

Size/Description الوصف / الحجم	Shape الشكل	Age العمر	Colour اللون	Material المادة الخام	Noun الاسم
big / pretty	long	old	green	cotton	dress

ex. - Rich Egyptians wore beautiful, gold necklaces.

Description	material	noun
وصف	المادة	الاسم

◄ تستخدم (commas) الفواصل السفلية (,) بين أكثر من صفة عند ترتيب الصفات.

- She likes wearing loose, white, linen clothes.

shape	colour	material	noun
الشكل	اللون	المادة	الاسم

- They bought a little, modern, brick house.

size	age	material	noun
الحجم	العمر	المادة	الاسم

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. I bought a .... shirt. *(Esna - Luxor 2023)*
 a. red, cotton, new
 b. new, cotton, red
 c. new, red, cotton
 d. cotton, new, red

2. We went to the island in a/an .... boat. *(Kafr Sakr - Sharkia 2023)*
 a. wooden, long, old
 b. long, old, wooden
 c. old, wooden, long
 d. wooden, old, long

3. Soha always wears that .... blouse in the summer. *(Farskour - Damietta 2022)*
   a. cotton, white b. white, cotton c. cotton, loose d. white, loose
4. In winter, it is good to wear .... *(Hadayek El Koba - Cairo 2022)*
   a. long, socks, wool b. wool, long socks
   c. long, wool socks d. socks long, wool
5. SB She is wearing a .... scarf.
   a. green, long, nice b. pretty, green, new
   c. nice, long, blue d. cotton, red, new
6. WB Hoda's father has bought a/an .... car.
   a. red, new, electric b. new, red, electric
   c. electric, new, red d. red, electric, new
7. WB It's a long .... snake.
   a. striped, plastic b. new, small c. plastic, red d. plastic, striped
8. SB People sometimes wore .... sandals in Ancient Egypt.
   a. expensive, leather b. linen, pretty
   c. leather, big d. leather, red

El-Moasser Exercises

9. My grandmother doesn't like wearing ....
   a. colourful, modern clothes b. modern, colourful clothes
   c. clothes, colourful modern d. colourful, clothes modern
10. Why does Ali like wearing this .... T-shirt ?
   a. ugly, old, wool b. old, wool, ugly c. wool, ugly, old d. ugly, wool, old
11. My friend lost his .... sunglasses.
   a. expensive, plastic, black b. expensive, black, plastic
   c. black, plastic, expensive d. plastic, expensive, black
12. Hoda has a/an .... jacket.
   a. old, strange, brown b. brown, strange, old
   c. old, brown, strange d. strange, old, brown

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. They both wore .... (white, linen, loose) clothes with a belt. *(Armant - Luxor 2023)*
2. It's a .... (green, pretty) dress. *(Burg El Arab - Alexandria 2023)*
3. They are .... (comfortable / wool / blue) jeans. *(South Port Said - Port Said 2022)*
4. Women like to wear .... (gold / beautiful) necklaces. *(October - Giza 2022)*
5. SB It's a .... (beautiful/wool/blue) skirt.
6. SB It's a .... (purple / wool / nice) jumper.
7. WB Mr and Mrs Osama live in a .... (old / brick / big) flat.
8. SB They are .... (black / expensive / plastic) glasses.

El-Moasser Exercises

9. Sama has a .... (cotton / pink) skirt.
10. He is a .... (tall / old / strong) man.
11. It's a .... (red / leather / round) bag.
12. The girl is wearing a .... (cotton / striped) dress.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. In Ancient Egypt, ... wore similar clothes.
   a. men and girls
   b. boys and girls
   c. women and boys
   d. men and women
2. They both wore loose, white, ... clothes.
   a. wool b. wood c. linen d. leather
3. The Ancient Egyptians didn't wear ....
   a. belts b. shoes c. scarves d. trousers
4. Some people wore expensive, leather ....
   a. sandals b. skirts c. shirts d. shorts

(Al Ibrahiemia - Sharkia 2023)

2 Complete the following dialogue :

At a clothes shop.

Shopkeeper : Can I help you ?
Customer : (1) ....
Shopkeeper : We have some nice dresses here. What colour would you like ?
Customer : (2) ....
Shopkeeper : What about this one ?
Customer : It's cute, but I must try it first. (3) .... ?
Shopkeeper : The changing room is over there.
Customer : (4) .... ?
Shopkeeper : Yes, we have a smaller size. Here you are.
Customer : (5) ....

(East Tanta - Gharbia 2022)

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... is animal skin which is treated and used to make shoes, bags, etc. *(Fakous - Sharkia 2023)*
   a. Wool b. Gold c. Cotton d. Leather
2. To build a house, you think of the design and the .... you will use. *(Edfu - Aswan 2023)*
   a. rooms b. roofs c. materials d. parts

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

3. .... means looking clean and tidy. *(El Gomrok - Alexandria 2022)*
   a. Smart b. Dirty c. Ugly d. Famous
4. She is wearing a .... dress. *(Ras Sedr - South Sinai 2022)*
   a. pink, striped, cotton b. striped, cotton, pink
   c. striped, pink, cotton d. cotton, striped, pink
5. Rich Egyptians wore beautiful, gold .... around their necks.
   a. rings b. earrings c. scarfs d. necklaces
6. Huda likes to dress in a traditional ....
   a. style b. stay c. step d. steal
7. It's a .... scarf.
   a. green, long, beautiful b. beautiful, green, long
   c. long, green, beautiful d. beautiful, long, green
8. We went to the island in a/an .... boat. *(West Cairo - Cairo 2022)*
   a. wooden, long, old b. long, old, wooden
   c. old, wooden, long d. wooden, old, long
9. I tried my trousers on in the .... room at the shop.
   a. dinning b. living c. changing d. guests'
10. Cleopatra wore .... , white, linen clothes with a belt.
   a. loose b. lose c. loss d. lost

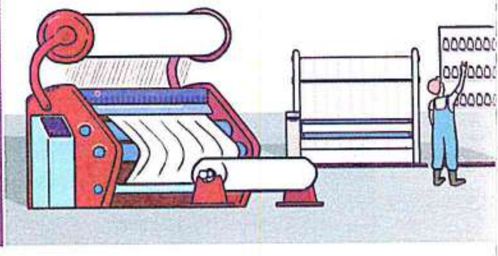
4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Ahmed wanted his mother to iron his .... (white, cotton, new) shirt. *(Fakous - Sharkia 2023)*
2. It's a .... (linen, beautiful, blue) dress. *(Luxor 2023)*
3. It is a .... (blue / cotton / new) scarf. *(El Weili - Cairo 2022)*
4. WB It's a .... (long / plastic / striped) snake.



Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 38 : 40
WB pages 95 & 96



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

borrow (ed) (v)	يستعير	industry (n)	صناعة
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	perfect (adj)	مثالي - كامل
environment (n)	البيئة	pick (ed) (v)	يقطف
crops (n)	محاصيل [زراعية]	soft (adj)	ناعم
luxury (n), (adj)	رفاهية - فاخر / فخم	chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية
wedding (n)	حفل زفاف		

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

luxury - wedding - borrow - chemicals - crops

1. Can I .... this book, please ? - Of course.
2. Heba always buys .... clothes.
3. There are many .... that can damage the environment.
4. Wheat, rice and cotton are important ....

Lesson 3 SB pages 38 & 39 WB page 95

school uniform (n)	زي مدرسي	clothes factory (n)	مصنع ملابس
school day (n)	يوم دراسي	own (ed) (v)	يملك
care (d) (v) , (n)	يعتني - عناية	toy (n)	لعبة
clothes shop (n)	محل ملابس	sports clothes	ملابس رياضية

Lesson 4 SB page 40 WB page 96

plants (n)	نباتات	amount (n)	مقدار - قدر
soil (n)	تربة زراعية	bamboo (n)	نبات الخيزران [البامبو]
businesses (n)	مشاريع تجارية	greener future	مستقبل أكثر مراعاة للبيئة
government (n)	حكومة	scientific (adj)	علمي
produce (d) (v)	ينتج	process (n)	عملية [سلسلة من التغيرات]
quality (n)	جودة	however (adv)	ومع ذلك

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
break off	ينقطع	broke off	broken off
give	يعطى	gave	given

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

borrow	get something from someone that you plan to give back after a period of time	يستعير / يستلف
crop	a plant such as a fruit, rice or wheat grown in large amounts to be sold or eaten	محصول
industry	the companies and activities that produce things you can sell, especially in a factory or special area	صناعة
pick	break flowers or fruit off a plant	يقطف
soft	not hard to touch	ناعم
luxury	expensive and good quality	فاخر/فخم
chemicals	something produced by a scientific process	مواد كيميائية
perfect	as good as it is possible to be	مثالي
environment	the people and things around you in your life	البيئة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
near	قريب	close / nearby	distant	بعيد
soft	ناعم / رقيق	smooth / delicate	hard - tough	خشن
borrow	يشعر - يستلف	take	give - lend	يسلف - يقرض
perfect	مثالي - كامل	ideal	imperfect	غير كامل - غير مثالي
expensive	غالي الثمن	costly / high	cheap / inexpensive	رخيص الثمن

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–able	تكون الصفة من الاسم أو الفعل	comfortable	مريح
–ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	quickly	بسرعة

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The words expensive and costly are opposites of "..............".
   a. high b. cheap c. low d. happy
2. My school isn't distant. It is .... my home.
   a. near b. speedy c. perfect d. soft
3. To give the adjective of the word "comfort", we add the suffix "..............".
   a. –al b. –able c. –ation d. –le
4. The words "borrow" and "lend" are ....
   a. synonyms b. adjectives c. nouns d. opposites
5. The word "soft" can have the same meaning as "..............".
   a. smooth b. tough c. hard d. easy

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 material

* material = cloth — قماش (اسم لا يُعد)
  - There is enough **material** to make a dress.
* materials = substances — مواد خام (اسم يُعد)
  - Paper, wood and metal are **materials**.

(SB page 40)

2

لاحظ الصيغ التالية :

* be + used to + (inf.) يستخدم لكى ...
  - The Egyptian cotton **is used to make** luxury clothes.
* be + used for + (inf. + ing) يستخدم من أجل
  - The Egyptian cotton **is used for making** luxury clothes.
* used to + (inf.) اعتاد أن (تدل على عادة في الماضي لم تعد تحدث الآن)
  - Basem **used to do** sports.

(SB page 38 / WB page 96)

3 chemical

* chemical (adj) (صفة) — كيماوي / كيميائي
  - Farmers use **chemical** fertilizers. أسمدة كيماوية
* chemicals (n) (اسم يعد) — مواد كيميائية
  - It's bad to use **chemicals** to make vegetables grow quickly.

(SB page 40)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

much better than	أفضل بكثير من	make luxury clothes	يصنع ملابس فاخرة
wear the same clothes	يرتدى نفس الملابس	as a result	نتيجة لذلك
as good as it is possible	جيد قدر الإمكان	make money	يجمع أموال / يكون ثروة
use less water	يستخدم كمية أقل من المياه		

Prepositions

care more about	يهتم أكثر بـ	for homes	للمنازل
borrow clothes from	يستعير ملابس من	give another example of	يعطى مثال آخر لـ
wear ... on / for special occasions	يرتدى ... للمناسبات الخاصة	pick from	يلتقط من / يجنى من
perfect for	مناسب لـ	picked by hand	يتم اقتطافه باليد
a pair of	زوج من	most of time	معظم الوقت

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Reading

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

• on Lesson 3 SB page 38

What do you wear ?

This week, we asked three Egyptian teenagers what they wear and why.

Noha :

I bought this shirt from a shop in Cairo, but **I'm trying to**[(1)] buy fewer clothes. Clothes factories cause a lot of pollution, so they are **bad for**[(2)] the environment. So sometimes I **borrow**[(3)] my sister's clothes. She borrows mine, too, because we are the **same size**[(4)].



(1) أحاول أن | (2) ضار/سيء لـ | (3) يستعير | (4) نفس المقاس/ الحجم

Ayman :

These **trainers**(5) were my dad's. He never wore them, so I asked if I could have them. I like **doing sport**(6) and these trainers are much **better**(7) than the ones I used to wear. I usually wear **sports clothes**(8) because they are **comfortable**(9).



Dalida :

This is my **school uniform**(10). I have to wear it every **school day**(11). That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me for my cousin's **wedding**(12). She's amazing at **sewing**(13). She always makes us clothes for **special occasions**(14).



(5) حذاء رياضى	(6) ممارسة الرياضة	(7) أفضل	(8) ملابس رياضية	(9) مريح
(10) زى مدرسى	(11) يوم دراسى	(12) حفل زفاف	(13) الخياطة	(14) مناسبات خاصة

on Lesson 4 SB page 40

Egyptian linen and cotton

Egypt is **famous for**(1) growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make **linen**(2). Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and **they** also used the plants to make **baskets**(3).



Today, **Egyptian cotton**(4) is famous all over the world. Because cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make **luxury clothes**(5) and things for homes. Many people work in the **cotton industry**(6), from farmers to people making or selling clothes and material.

The **climate and soil**(7) in Egypt are **perfect**(8) for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for the crops. All of the cotton is picked by hand to keep it **soft**(9).

When you grow cotton, **it** uses a lot of water and **chemicals**(10). Now, the government is trying to help farmers to **protect**(11) the environment and use less water.

(1) مشهور بـ
(2) كتان
(3) سلال
(4) القطن المصرى
(5) ملابس فاخرة
(6) صناعة القطن
(7) الطقس والتربة
(8) مناسب / ملائم
(9) ناعم
(10) مواد كيميائية
(11) يحمى

Answer the following questions :

Understanding reference فهم ما يشير إليه الضمير

Learn 1. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" in the last paragraph refer to ?

- It refers to cotton.

Practise 2. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" in the first paragraph refer to ?

....

on Lesson 4 WB page 96

Is bamboo the new cotton ?

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo **instead of**[1] cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important crop in China where the bamboo industry makes a lot of money. However, although bamboo grows very quickly, it is not a perfect plant. After the bamboo is picked, people often use chemicals before they can use it to make clothes. These are **bad for**[2] nature. Also, the material made from bamboo is not very soft. **As a result**[3], it is not used for expensive, luxury clothes which are usually **made from**[4] cotton.

(1) بدلًا من | (2) ضار بـ | (3) نتيجة لذلك | (4) مصنوع من

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▸ Key vocabulary

1. We're building more factories to improve ....
   a. farming b. sports c. environment d. industry
2. This soil is .... for growing cotton.
   a. far b. perfect c. sweet d. soft
3. .... mean something scientists can make.
   a. Crops b. Fruits c. Vegetables d. Chemicals
4. She .... some flowers and gave them to her mum.
   a. picked b. backed c. broke d. booked

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. It's a perfect crop because we planted it in a good ....
   a. sail b. soil c. floor d. sea
   (Belbies - Sharkia 2023)
6. SB Egypt is famous for growing .... to make materials.
   a. crops b. groups c. goals d. topics
   (Qurna - Luxor 2021)
7. He .... a novel from the library to read at home.
   a. sewed b. gave c. borrowed d. wore
   (East Alexandria - Alexandria 2022)
8. Sara's jacket is made of a good .... *(Helwan - Cairo 2022)*
   a. material b. silver c. gold d. wood

9. If something is .... , it is expensive and good quality.
   a. poor b. old c. ancient d. luxury

(Helwan - Cairo 2023)

10. We wear new clothes for special ....
   a. occasions b. charts c. hurts d. ports

(El Sahel - Cairo 2023)

El-Moasser Exercises

11. We need good .... to grow plants.
   a. sun b. soil c. reason d. industry
12. Farmers .... a lot of crops in our country.
   a. reduce b. produce c. damages d. borrows

Definitions

13. .... means not hard to touch.
   a. Quiet b. Nervous c. Curly d. Soft
14. The people and things around you in your life is ....
   a. space b. environment c. chemical d. school

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. I was ill. .... a result, I didn't go to school yesterday.
   a. So b. As c. On d. At
16. Paper is used .... make books.
   a. to b. for c. as d. from

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

1. Asking and answering questions about clothes

١. السؤال والرد على اسئلة عن الملابس

Questions	Answers
1. How many pairs of shoes do you have ? Which ones are your favourite ? - كم زوج من الأحذية تمتلك ؟ أيهم تفضل ؟	- I have four pairs of shoes, but my trainers are my favourite ones. - أمتلك أربع أزواج من الأحذية، لكن حذائي الرياضي هو المفضل بالنسبة لي.
2. How many bags do you own ? Which one is your favourite ? - كم حقيبة تمتلك ؟ أيهم المفضلة بالنسبة لك ؟	- I have three bags, but my black backpack is my favourite one. - أمتلك ثلاث حقائب لكن حقيبة الظهر السوداء هي المفضلة بالنسبة لي .

2. Discussion the role of industry in Egypt
٢. مناقشة دور الصناعة في مصر

Questions	Answers
1. What other industries are important to Egypt ? - ما هي الصناعات الأخرى الهامة لمصر ؟	- I think leather industry is important in Egypt. - أعتقد أن صناعة الجلود هامة في مصر.
2. Do you think it is important for businesses to help the environment ? - هل تعتقد أنه من المهم أن تساعد الأعمال التجارية البيئة ؟	- Yes, I think that is important. - نعم، أعتقد أن هذا مهم.

3. Writing
مهارة الكتابة

"An industry in Egypt"
صناعة فى مصر

1. Egypt is famous for growing crops to make materials.
١. مصر مشهورة بزراعة المحاصيل لكى تصنع منها المواد الخام.
2. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen.
٢. زرع قدماء المصريين النباتات بجوار النيل لكى يصنعوا الكتان.
3. Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world.
٣. القطن المصري الآن مشهور في جميع أنحاء العالم.
4. Many people work in the cotton industry.
٤. يعمل الكثير من الناس في صناعة القطن.

"A special item of clothing"
إحدى قطع الملابس الخاصة

1. My dress is my favourite clothing.
١. الفستان هو الزى المفضل بالنسبة لى.
2. My grandmother made me for my cousin's wedding.
٢. قامت جدتى بصناعته لى فى حفل زفاف ابن عمى.
3. She is amazing at sewing.
٣. إنها رائعة فى الخياطة.
4. She always makes us clothes for special occasions.
٤. هى دائمًا تقوم بصناعة الملابس لنا فى المناسبات الخاصة.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة الـ
قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues
80 Paragraphs & E-mails

What Egyptian teenagers like to wear

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. Which shoes do you prefer to .... ? ترتدى
   - I prefer trainers.
2. Are trainers .... ? مريح
   - Yes, they are.
3. Which clothes do you like ?
   - I like .... and striped clothes. ملوّن

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Nahid and Hana are talking about clothes.

Nahid : How many pairs of shoes do you have ?
Hana : (1) ....
Nahid : (2) .... ?
Hana : I like the black pair. It's comfortable.
Nahid : Well! (3) .... ?
Hana : I like colourful and striped clothes.
Nahid : Which shops do you prefer, big or small ?
Hana : (4) .... They're cheaper than big ones.
Nahid : How many bags do you own ?
Hana : (5) .... It is made of leather.

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"What Egyptian teenagers like to wear"

....

Cotton industry in Egypt

Step 1 Vocabulary

1. Do you think .... is important for Egypt ? صناعة القطن
   - Yes, it is very important.
2. What is the Egyptian cotton used to make ?
   - It is used to make .... الملابس الفاخرة

Step 2 Speaking

Sami and Rami are talking bout the Egyptian cotton.

Sami : Hi, Rami. What is the most important crop in Egypt ?
Rami : Hi, Sami. (1) ....
Sami : (2) .... ?
Rami : Because Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world.
Sami : (3) .... ?
Rami : It is grown in many Egyptian fields.
Sami : What is cotton used to make ?
Rami : (4) ....
Sami : Do you have any cotton clothes ?
Rami : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing

"Cotton industry in Egypt"

....

III Language

One, ones

Usage الاستخدام

- **We use "one" instead of repeating a singular countable noun.**

تستخدم (one) بدلًا من تكرار الاسم المفرد الذي يعد في الجملة.

ex. That beautiful dress is the one my grandmother made me.

- **We use "ones" instead of repeating a plural noun.**

تستخدم (ones) بدلًا من تكرار الاسم الجمع في الجملة.

ex. These trainers are much better than the ones I had before.

Remember تذكر

Demonstrative Pronouns : "this", "that", "these" and "those". ضمائر الإشارة

This / These

- **We use "This" (singular) or "These" (plural) to talk about things near us.**

تستخدم (This) (للمفرد) و (These) (للجمع) عند الحديث عن الأشياء القريبة منا.

ex. - This ball is from a little shop in Cairo.
- These shoes were my dad's.

That / Those

- **We use "That" (singular) or "Those" (plural) to talk about things not near us.**

تستخدم (That) (للمفرد) و (Those) (للجمع) عند الحديث عن الأشياء البعيدة عنا.

ex. - That nice jacket is mine.
- Those jeans are my sister's.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. I lost my mobile and bought a new .... *(Tema - Souhag 2023)*
 a. one b. ones c. one's d. ones'
2. These cakes are the best .... at the bakery. *(Nozha - Cairo 2022)*
 a. ones b. one c. the one d. of one
3. .... trainers are nice and comfortable. *(Samnoud - Gharbia 2022)*
 a. That b. This c. These d. There

4. WB What's .... small thing by my chair ?
   a. this b. these c. those d. ones
5. SB Which dress are you going to wear ? This one or that ....
   a. one b. ones c. dresses d. a dress
6. WB .... motorbike is from China. *(Helwan - Cairo 2022)*
   a. Those b. These c. That d. Ones
7. WB I have a smaller .... , you can try it on. *(Ain Shams - Cairo 2022)*
   a. ones b. these c. those d. one

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Which .... do you prefer ? - The black ones.
   a. ones b. one c. of one d. for ones
9. The blue bag is not mine. .... one is mine.
   a. That b. Those c. They d. These
10. I don't like that scarf. Let's buy another ....
   a. ones b. scarfs c. a scarf d. one

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Why don't you wear .... (these) brown scarf ? *(El Agamy - Alex. 2023)*
2. I lost my cap. I need to buy a new .... (ones). *(Aswan 2023)*
3. Look at .... (this) man over there. *(New Cairo - Cairo 2023)*
4. That pink jumper is the .... (ones) I bought last week. *(Baltim - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*
5. .... (This) earrings are very nice. *(Agouza - Giza 2022)*
6. SB .... (That) skirts are my sister's.

El-Moasser Exercises

7. That car is the fastest .... (ones).
8. This dress is the .... (ones) I like.
9. .... (This) socks are my brother's.
10. This book is better than that .... (ones).

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Sami is buying a shirt at a clothes shop .

Salesman: Hello, how can I help you ?
Sami : (1) ....
Salesman: (2) .... ?
Sami : I'd like something loose.
Salesman: (3) .... ?
Sami : I'd like it blue.
Salesman: What do you think of this one ?
Sami : (4) .... How much is it ?
Salesman: It is L.E 250.
Sami : (5) ....

(The 10th of Ramadan - Sharkia 2023)

2 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. SB All the cotton is .... by hand to keep it soft.
   a. protected b. picked c. made d. helped
2. SB Cotton from Egypt is very good, it is often used to make .... clothes. *(Bir el Abd - North Sinai 2022)*
   a. golden b. luxury c. cheap d. heavy
3. I wear smart and casual clothes on special .... like wedding parties.
   a. lives b. customers c. occasions d. buildings
4. A ".................." means something produced by a scientific process.
   a. crop b. fruit c. vegetable d. chemical
5. "Soft" is the opposite of "..................".
   a. big b. small c. hard d. strong
6. You can't wear my shirt. We are not the same ....
   a. colour b. size c. site d. high
7. This shirt is modern, but that .... is traditional.
   a. ones b. them c. it d. one

8. .... looks the smallest.
   a. Those shirts b. These shirts c. That shirt d. The shirts
9. These jeans are better than the .... on the shelf over there.
   a. ones b. one c. them d. they
10. We should .... our environment.
   a. protect b. damage c. break d. lose

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Will you take .... (this) brown shoes or not ? *(Helwan - Cairo 2023)*
2. These are my mother's earrings, but mine .... (is) small.
3. SB Do you prefer .... (these) dress or that one over there ? *(Malawi - Minya 2022)*
4. This dress is the .... (ones) I like very much. *(Hurghada - South Sinai 2022)*

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Your favourite clothes"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 41 & 42
WB pages 97 & 98



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

chest of drawers (n)	خزانة ذات أدراج	customer (n)	زبون
price (n)	سعر	shopkeeper (n)	بائع في محل
changing room (n)	حجرة تغيير الملابس	pretty (adj)	جميل
fit (ted) (v)	يلائم - يناسب	useful (adj)	مفيد
advert (n)	إعلان	handbag (n)	حقيبة يد

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

changing room - price - useful - fit - shopkeeper

1. What is the .... of this blue jacket ? - L.E 500.
2. You can try on this shirt in the ....
3. This suit doesn't .... me. It's old - fashioned.
4. The computer is the most .... invention.

Lesson 5 SB page 41 WB page 97

perfectly (adv)	بشكل كامل - تام	check (ed) (v)	يتأكد - يفحص
here (adv)	هنا	shop (ped) (v), (n)	يتسوق/ محل

Lesson 6 SB page 42 WB page 98

statue (n)	تمثال	tool (adj)	أداة
object (n)	شئ	extra (adj)	إضافي
include (d) (v)	يشمل - يتضمن	shop window (n)	واجهة المحل [فاترينة]

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
take	يأخذ	took	taken
write	يكتب	wrote	written

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

changing room	a room where people can change their clothes, for example, in a shop حجرة تغيير ملابس
try on	put on a piece of clothing to check if it fits you or if you like it يقيس (الملابس)
fit	be the correct size or shape for someone or something يلائم/يناسب

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
new جديد	modern / recent	old قديم
small صغير (المقاس)	tiny / little	large كبير (المقاس)
pretty جميل	beautiful	ugly قبيح
useful مفيد	helpful / valuable	useless غير مفيد

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
–ly	تكون الظرف من الصفة	perfectly بطريقة مثالية
–ation	تكون الاسم من الفعل	information معلومات

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. This bag is new. It is not ....
   a. old b. modern c. recent d. available
2. The opposite of the word "useful" is ".............." .
   a. helpful b. valuable c. easy d. useless
3. To get the adverb from the word "perfect", we add the suffix ".............." .
   a. –ly b. –able c. –al d. –ic
4. To turn the verb "inform" into a/an .... , we add the suffix "ation".
   a. verb b. adverb c. noun d. adjective

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
it's a bit big	إنه كبير نوعًا ما	look very nice	يبدو لطيف جدًا
let me look	دعني انظر	find the right size	يجد المقاس المناسب
it fits perfectly	إنها تناسب تمامًا	get married	يتزوج
have a smaller size	لديه حجم أصغر	move house	ينتقل لمنزل جديد (يعزل)
Prepositions			
for sale	للبيع	for more information	للمزيد من المعلومات
try on	يقيس	at the top	على القمة
buy something for	يشترى شيء ما لـ	it's perfect for	إنه مناسب لـ

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 41



Shopkeeper : Hello, can I help you ?

Eman : Hi, yes, **I'm looking for**(1) a dress for **a special occasion**(2). It's my brother's **birthday party**(3) next week.

Shopkeeper : Oh, nice. What type of dress would you like ?

Eman : I'd like something like this one ... but do you have a **different**(4) colour ? I don't like yellow.

Shopkeeper : We have this one in blue.

Eman : That's beautiful ! Could I try it on ?

(1) يبحث عن | (2) مناسبة خاصة | (3) حفلة عيد ميلاد | (4) مختلف

Shopkeeper : Of course. **The changing room**[5] is here. What do you think? Does it **fit**[6]?

Eman : It's a bit big. Do you have a smaller **size**[7]?

Shopkeeper : Let me look. Yes, here's a smaller one. Try this on.

Eman : Thank you. It fits perfectly, I'll take it!

Shopkeeper : Great!

(5) غرفة تغيير الملابس | (6) يناسب / يلائم | (7) مقاس

Reading

on Lesson 6 SB page 42

BAG FOR SALE

I'm selling a beautiful, new, black leather **handbag**[1]. It was a **present**[2] for my birthday but I already have one that is the same! It is very large and **perfect**[3] for work or school. The **price**[4] is LE 500. **Email**[5] me for more information.



(1) حقيبة يد | (2) هدية | (3) مناسبة / مثالية | (4) سعر | (5) أرسل رسالة بريد إلكترونى

on Lesson 6 WB page 98

I'm **selling**[1] a cool, old **wooden**[2] chest of drawers. It was made in 1910 for my great-grandfather! It's **large**[3] and perfect for **keeping things**[4] in, but we have moved house and our new home is **too small**[5] for it. If you are **interested**[6], email me and we can **discuss**[7] the price.



(1) يبيع | (2) خشبى | (3) كبير | (4) يحتفظ بالأشياء | (5) صغير جدًا | (6) مهتم | (7) يناقش

on Lesson 6 WB page 98

Would you like to buy a really **useful**[1] **tool**[2]?
I'm selling a nice strong one that you can use in the garden. It is made of metal with wood at the top. It's perfect for people who want to grow vegetables - and the price is not luxury, it's very cheap! Email me if you are interested.

(1) مفيد | (2) أداة

on Lesson 7 SB page 43

Shopkeeper[1] : Can I help you ?
Customer[2] : Yes, I'd like to buy these jeans, but could I try them on first ?
Shopkeeper : Of course, the **changing room**[3] is over there.
Customer : Thank you.
Shopkeeper : Do they fit you ?
Customer : No, they're too small. Do you have a bigger size ?
Shopkeeper : Yes, here you are.
Customer : They're great. I'll take them.

(1) صاحب متجر | (2) زبون | (3) حجرة تغيير ملابس

on Lesson 7 WB page 99

Usually, Hamdi and his sister Lama like wearing **casual**[1] clothes such as T-shirts and trainers. Today, they are wearing clothes for a special occasion. It is their grandfather's 70th birthday ! Hamdi is wearing a smart, blue jacket. Lama is wearing a loose, cotton dress with a **pretty**[2] pair of earrings. Hamdi also has a new pair of trousers. He bought them online, so he did not try them on first. They are a bit big, so he is wearing a leather belt, too.

(1) غير رسمي
(2) جميل

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information استخراج معلومات

Learn 1. Why is Hamdi wearing a leather belt ?
- Because the trousers are a bit big.

Practise 2. What do Hamdi and his sister Lama like wearing ?
....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. They bought a big .... to keep many things in.
   a. machine b. chest of drawers
   c. board d. chairs
2. This jacket .... me, I'll take it.
   a. checks b. fits c. buys d. finds
3. Can you tell me the .... of this dress, please ? - It's L.E. 700
   a. price b. size c. colour d. number

4. The person who wants to buy something at a shop is called a ....
   a. waiter b. manager c. customer d. shopkeeper

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. Could I try this jacket on ? - The .... room is over there.
   a. changing b. trying c. living d. smart

(Ain Shams - Cairo 2023)

6. WB We saw a big, old .... in the museum.
   a. window b. statue c. computer d. robot

(El Tell El Kebir - Ismailia 2022)

7. WB We have this black jacket, or that one in the shop ....
   a. window b. door c. bag d. box
8. WB When you want to buy something, ... it on to check the size.
   a. cry b. try c. fry d. dry

El-Moasser Exercises

9. I'll buy .... sandwiches. I'm still very hungry.
   a. small b. extra c. old d. little
10. I found a / an .... for a job in the newspaper yesterday.
   a. style b. advert c. occasion d. climate
11. She looks so .... in the new dress. That's amazing !
   a. silly b. normal c. pretty d. strange
12. Look! There is a strange .... in the garden.
   a. shop b. object c. subject d. customer

Definitions

13. To .... is to be the correct size or shape for someone or something.
   a. fit b. fill c. fail d. fight

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. My cousin is going to .... married tomorrow.
   a. give b. take c. do d. get
15. This shirt isn't .... for you. You can buy another one.
   a. bad b. boring c. perfect d. protect
16. We .... house to live in a bigger one.
   a. moved b. bought c. found d. made

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

Shopping at a clothes shop

التسوق في محل ملابس

Shopkeeper البائع	Customer الزبون
عند عرض المساعدة • Can I help you ? هل يمكنني مساعدتك ؟ • What can I do for you ? ماذا يمكنني أن أفعل لأجلك ؟	- Yes, I'd like to buy ... نعم أود أن أشترى - I'm looking for ... أنا أبحث عن ...
للسؤال عن المقاس • What size would you like ? ما المقاس الذي تفضله ؟	- I'd like small / medium / large, please. أنا أريد مقاس صغير / متوسط / كبير
للسؤال عن اللون • What colour would you like ? ما اللون الذي تفضله ؟	- I'd like + لون + , please. أنا أريد (لون)، من فضلك.
عند طلب تجربة الملابس - Can I try (it / them) on, please? أيمكن أن أقيس (الملابس) من فضلك ؟	عند الموافقة والسماح لتجربة الملابس - Of course, the changing room is over there. نعم بالطبع، غرفة تغيير الملابس هناك.
للاستفسار عما إذا كانت الملابس ملائمة - (Do / Does) (they / it) fit you ? هل تناسبك ؟	- Yes, (they/it) fit(s) me. نعم، تناسبني.
• Here you are. تفضل.	- I'll take it. عند الموافقة على الشراء.
للسؤال عن السعر - How much (do they/does it) cost ? كم يتكلف هذا / هؤلاء ؟	- They cost + السعر. سعرهم ... - It costs + السعر. سعره/سعرها ...

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

"An advert for something you want to sell" إعلان لشئ تريد أن تقوم ببيعه

1. I'm selling a beautiful, new, black leather handbag.
١. أعرض للبيع حقيبة يد جميلة وجديدة من الجلد الأسود.
2. I'm selling it because I have a similar one. ٢. اقوم ببيعها لأنى أملك واحدة مشابهة لها.
3. It is very large and perfect for work or school. ٣. إنها كبيرة جدًا ومناسبة للعمل أو المدرسة.
4. The price is L.E.500. ٤. السعر يبلغ ٥٠٠ جنيه.
5. If you are interested, email me. ٥. إذا كنت مهتم يمكنك مراسلتي.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. I'm selling a beautiful ....
   a. dress b. ring c. necklace d. handbag
2. It is made of ....
   a. linen b. wool c. leather d. skin
3. It was a present for my ....
   a. birthday b. mom c. sister d. wedding
4. The price is L.E. ....
   a. 5000 b. 50,000 c. 500 d. 50

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hoda is talking with Leila about clothes.

Hoda : What a lovely scarf you are wearing, Leila !

Leila : Really ! (1) .... ?

Hoda : Yes, I like the green colour. (2) .... ?

Leila : It is made from Egyptian cotton.

Hoda : Great ! Where did you buy it ?

Leila : (3) ....

Hoda : Are there any more green scarfs there ?

Leila : (4) .... .This was the last one.

Hoda : Oh dear ! What about going to the market tomorrow ?

Leila : (5) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Ahmed is standing. We need a/an .... chair, please. *(East Alexandria - Alexandria 2023)*
   a. one b. two c. extra d. three
2. This suit doesn't .... me. I need a light colour.
   a. fit b. fall c. feel d. fight
3. Sama wants to .... to a new house. She wants a warm place.
   a. destroy b. move c. meet d. play

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

4. These books are funny, but those .... are very boring. *(Shubra Kheit - Beheira 2022)*

a. ones b. once c. one d. only

5. .... sandals are very expensive. *(Sohag - Sohag 2022)*

a. That b. These c. The ones d. This

6. Look at these shorts. Which .... do you like better ?

a. one b. ones c. one's d. ones' *(West Cairo - Cairo 2022)*

7. The shop is crowded. It is full of ....

a. customs b. customers c. costumes d. costs

8. I saw a handbag for .... online.

a. sell b. sail c. sale d. steal

9. Leen's dress fits .... She looks pretty.

a. perfectly b. happily c. badly d. cruelly

10. This jacket is loose. I need a smaller ....

a. weight b. height c. length d. size

4 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Samia telling her about the handbag you want to sell. Your friend's email address is samia@yahoo.com. Your name is Sherifa and your email address is sherifa@gmail.com.

New message ×

Secure | https:

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

Review on unit 10

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

belt	حزام
earrings	حلق
sandals	صندل
scarf	طرحة / وشاح
trainers	حذاء رياضي
smart	أنيق
casual	غير رسمي
cotton	قطن
leather	جلد
linen	كتان
metal	معدن
wool	صوف
loose	واسع / فضفاضة
necklace	عقد
gold	ذهب
striped	مخطط / مُقلم
material	ماده خام
shape	شكل / هيئة
size	مقاس

Language

1- Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

- Use more than one adjective in this order. Do not use more than three or four adjectives.

• استخدم اكثر من صفة في هذا الترتيب ولكن لا تستخدم اكثر من ثلاث أو اربع صفات.

Size/ Description الوصف/المقاس	Shape الشكل	Age العمر	Colour اللون	Material المادة الخام	Noun الاسم الموصوف
big/pretty	long	old	green	cotton	dress

- Rich Egyptians wore beautiful, gold necklaces. She likes loose, white, linen clothes. He wore a long, green, cotton robe.

2- Remember! تذكر أن

- Use this (singular) or these (plural) to talk about things near us .

• استخدم (this) للإشارة للمفرد القريب و (these) للإشارة للجمع القريب.

- This shirt is from a little shop in Cairo. These trainers were my dad's.
- Use that (singular) or those (plural) to talk about things not near us.

• استخدم (that) للإشارة للمفرد البعيد و (these) للإشارة للجمع البعيد.

- That beautiful dress is mine. Those skirts are my sister's.

Speaking

Discussing & describing clothes :

• مناقشة و وصف الملابس.

* What type of material is best for a hot climate ?

- Cotton.

* My favourite item of clothing is the scarf. It's colourful and it is made of cotton.

* It's a beautiful brown and orange necklace.

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Giving the main idea

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة (تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية) وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا لتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

Greed is one of the worst qualities. It leads to losing everything. Once there was a dog who wandered in the streets night and day. He was looking for food. One day, he found a big juicy bone. He was very happy. He grabbed it between his mouth and decided to go home. On his way home, he crossed a river. When he looked at the water, he saw himself. He thought it was another dog with a bone. He wanted that bone for himself, too. When he opened his mouth, the bone fell into the river and sank. That night, he went home hungry. This story teaches us that if you are greedy, you will lose what you have.

- What is the general idea of the text ?
  or What is the main idea of the passage ?
  or Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة تستطيع تحديد الفكرة الرئيسية أو تحديد عنوان مناسب للنص.

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة (dialogue) معرفتك لقدر كاف من (Language Functions) والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman wants to buy a jacket.

Shopkeeper : Can I help you ?
Ayman : (1) ....
Shopkeeper : What type of jacket would you like ?
Ayman : I'd like something loose but smart.
(2) .... ?
Shopkeeper : We have got red, black and brown jackets.
Ayman : (3) .... ?
Shopkeeper : Of course. The changing room is over there.
Ayman : How much is it ?
Shopkeeper : (4) ....
Ayman : (5) ....

التحدى تريد التحدث عن (وصف الملابس والتسوق فى محل الملابس) وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين البائع.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph) معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع. "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي".

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (الملابس فى مصر القديمة) و (التسوق فى محل ملابس) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها فى تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic: Clothes in Ancient Egypt

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning :

عُقد	....
مجوهرات	....
مصر القديمة	....
جلد	....
فضفاض	....

Step 2 Sentences

Fill in using vocabulary :

1. In .... men and women wore similar clothes.
2. They both wore .... , white, linen clothes with a belt.
3. Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive .... sandals.
4. Ancient Egyptians loved to wear heavy metal ....
5. They like to wear beautiful gold ....

Step 3 Paragraph

Write a paragraph on :

"Clothes in Ancient Egypt"

....
....
....
....
....
....

Topic: Shopping in a clothes shop

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

قطن	....
مريح	....
محل ملابس	....
مقاس	....
قمصان	....

Step 2 Sentences

1. Yesterday, I went to a .... in my city.
2. I liked the .... there.
3. I bought two shirts of small ....
4. The best thing about them is that they are ....
5. They are made of ....

Step 3 Paragraph

Write an email about :

"Shopping in a clothes shop"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....

تدريب تلقائى على مهارة الكتابة

Questions collected from previous exams
تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Before going to the club, I often wear my .... *(Damietta 2023)*
   a. trainers b. sandals
   c. bike d. motorbike
2. Women and girls often wear .... on their heads. *(East Mansoura - Dakahlia 2023*
   a. scarfs b. rings c. earrings d. watches
3. There is a big chest of .... in my room. *(Kafr El Sheikh 2023)*
   a. adverts b. drawers c. drums d. dresses
4. "..........." is a happy occasion for many people. *(El Obour - Qalyoubia 2023)*
   a. Weeding b. Sewing
   c. Stealing d. Wedding
5. I love wearing my .... galabeya. *(Luxor 2023)*
   a. cotton, long, grey b. long, cotton, gray
   c. long, grey, cotton d. grey, long, cotton
6. She is wearing a pair of beautiful gold .... in her ears. *(El Zarka - Damietta 2023)*
   a. earrings b. gloves c. scissors d. tools
7. Shoes, bags and belts are often made of .... *(El Sahel - Cairo 2023)*
   a. wool b. leather c. metal d. cotton
8. My mother likes .... clothes. *(El Aiat - Giza 2023)*
   a. white, linen, loose b. white, loose, linen
   c. linen, loose, white d. loose, white, linen
9. Most of ancient Egyptian women liked to wear .... around their necks. *(Rod el Farag - Cairo 2023)*
   a. boots b. necklaces c. shirts d. hats
10. Where did you get .... sunglasses ? *(Tema - Sohag 2023)*
    a. that b. this c. they d. these

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. It's a .... (beautiful, wool, blue) skirt. *(Damietta 2023)*
2. My cousin has a .... (red, new, electric) car. *(West Mahala - Gharbia 2023)*
3. I bought .... (this) shoes last week at the market. *(Kafr Saad - Damietta 2023)*
4. .... (This) earrings are very nice. *(Aswan 2023)*
5. These trainers are better than the .... (one) I had before. *(El Wasta - Beni Suef 2023)*
6. I don't want the green apples, I want the red ....(one). *(Assiut 2023)*
7. It's a .... (long, plastic, striped) snake. *(Aswan - Aswan 2023)*
8. We are answering .... (this) questions quietly. *(Naqada - Qena 2023)*
9. I lost my socks. I need to buy new .... (one). *(Malawy - Menia 2023)*

Test on unit 10

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. The text is about a plant called ....
   a. cotton b. wheat c. bamboo d. silk
2. People use bamboo to make ....
   a. clothes b. sweets c. wood d. metal
3. Bamboo is an important crop in ....
   a. Egypt b. China c. Japan d. India
4. The bamboo industry makes a lot of ....
   a. leather b. silver c. gold d. money

(Maassara - Cairo 2023)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nader wants to buy a shirt.

Shopkeeper : Can I help you ?
Nader : (1) ....
Shopkeeper : What style would you like ?
Nader : I'd like something loose, but smart. (2) .... ?
Shopkeeper : We have linen and cotton shirts.
Nader : (3) .... ?
Shopkeeper : Of course, the changing room is over there.
Nader : Does it fit ?
Shopkeeper : (4) ....
Nader : How much is it ?
Shopkeeper : (5) ....
Nader : I'll take it.

(Helwan - Cairo 2022)

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Egypt is famous for growing crops to make material. The Ancient Egyptians grew plants by the Nile to make linen. Almost everyone wore clothes made of linen and they also used the plants to make baskets. Today, Egyptian cotton is famous all over the world because cotton from

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

Egypt is very good, it is often used to make **luxury** clothes and things for homes. Many people work in the cotton industry, from farmers to people making or selling clothes and materials.

The climate and soil in Egypt are perfect for growing cotton. Water from the Nile is still used for crops. All of the cotton is picked by hands to keep it soft. When you grow cotton, **it** uses a lot of water. Now, the government is trying to help farmers to protect the environment and use less water.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**luxury**" means ....
   a. cheap b. expensive c. ugly d. bad
2. When you grow cotton, it uses a lot of ....
   a. water b. sugar
   c. chemicals d. linen
3. The Ancient Egyptians used the .... to make baskets.
   a. bread b. bricks c. sand d. plants

b. Give the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

   ....

5. Why does the government help the farmers ?

   ....

6. What does the underlined pronoun "**it**" refer to ?

   ....

(Helwan - Cairo 2023)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Women usually wear .... to protect their hair.
   a. skirts b. scarves c. sandals d. trainers
   (Mansoura - Dakhlia 2022)
2. I like to wear this .... T-shirt. *(West Alexandria 2022)*
   a. cotton, old b. cotton, new
   c. cotton, red d. red, cotton
3. He borrowed my trainers because we are the same ....
   a. colour b. character c. material d. size

4. That bag is black, but this .... is brown.
   a. ones b. there c. it d. one
5. Farmers use .... to protect their crops from insects.
   a. soil b. chemicals c. climate d. industry
6. SB Egypt is .... for growing crops to make materials.
   a. poor b. strong c. rich d. famous
7. SB These sandals .... a lot of money.
   a. last b. dress c. cost d. pay
8. Women like to wear .... around their necks. *(Rashed - Beheira 2022)*
   a. boots b. necklaces c. skirts d. jeans
9. .... sandals are very expensive. *(El Tor - South Sinai 2022)*
   a. That b. These c. The ones d. This
10. SB This is my school .... I've to wear it every school day.
   a. team b. gate c. uniform d. laboratory
   (West Mahala - Gharbia 2022)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Why don't you wear .... (these) dress ? *(Maassra - Cairo 2023)*
2. I have (a/an) .... (old/short/gold) necklace.
3. These rings are silver, but those .... (one) are gold.
4. Why don't you wear .... (those) nice jacket over there ?

(Tamia - Fayoum 2022)

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Clothes in Ancient Egypt"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 10 for Al-Azhar students
اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Mona and Ahmed are talking about their hobbies.

Mona : Good morning. Can I ask you some questions ?
Ahmed : Good morning. (1) ....
Mona : (2) .... ?
Ahmed : My favourite hobby is reading books.
Mona : (3) .... ?
Ahmed : Science books. What about you ?
Mona : I like diving.
Ahmed : Wonderful! I know it. It's a sport you can do under water .

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. similar – and women – clothes – Ancient Egypt – wore – **Men** – in.

....

2. factories – a lot – cause – **Clothes** – pollution – of.

....

3. is – all over – **Egyptian** – the world – famous – cotton.

....

4. you - smaller – **Do** – have – size – a ?

....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It's a beautiful suit. You look very ....
   a. strange b. smart c. short d. intelligent
2. She's looking for a loose jacket for a special ....
   a. market b. occasion c. supermarket d. shop
3. My sister loves .... accessories.
   a. comfortable, colourful b. colourful, comfortable
   c. not comfortable or colourful d. very colourful, comfortable
4. .... tool is made of iron.
   a. This b. Those c. These d. They
5. How .... are those necklaces in the window ?
   a. size b. little c. lots d. much

4 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :

"Your favourite clothes"

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Sarah is buying a new skirt.

Shopkeeper: Hello, can I help you ?

Sarah : (1) ....

a. Yes, please. I want a jacket
b. Yes, I want to buy a skirt
c. No, thank you
d. Don't worry

Shopkeeper: A skirt! Is it for a special occasion ?

Sarah : (2) ....

a. Yes, it is my wedding
b. Yes, it is my graduation
c. Yes, it is my birthday
d. Yes, it is for my trip abroad

Shopkeeper: Congratulations! I wish you a happy graduation party.

Sarah : (3) ....

a. Don't worry b. You are welcome
c. Thank you d. I am in a hurry

Shopkeeper: (4) .... ?

a. What kind of trousers do you like
b. What kind of trainers do you like
c. What kind of shoes do you like
d. What kind of skirts do you like

Sarah : I'd like something loose, but smart.

Shopkeeper: We have this green skirt, and that yellow one. (5) .... ?

a. How much is it
b. Which one do you like
c. How do you do
d. How much does it cost

Sarah : I will take the yellow one.

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. Can you give me .... (**those**) book ? I cannot get it.
   a. there b. that c. these d. then
7. .... (**That**) cups on the shelf there is yours.
   a. These b. Then c. Than d. Those
8. I lost my socks. I need to buy new .... (**one**).
   a. the one b. ones c. the ones d. of one
9. Look at .... (**these**) newspaper here.
   a. that b. those c. this d. then
10. I like this .... (**new, cotton, long**) T-shirt.
    a. cotton , new , long b. cotton , long , new
    c. long , new , cotton d. long , cotton , new

March Test
اختبار شهر مارس

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Tamer went to .... in Cairo last month.
   a. the cinema   b. the Textile Museum
   c. the market   d. the zoo
2. Tamer went to the museum with ....
   a. his family   b. his teachers   c. his friends   d. alone
3. The museum have has lots of .... from different times in history.
   a. clothes   b. books   c. food   d. vegetables
4. They thought the clothes were .... in Ancient Egypt.
   a. ugly   b. dirty   c. fantastic   d. tight

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Toka is buying a skirt at a clothes shop.

Salesman : Hi, how can I help you ?
Toka : Hi, I'm looking for a skirt.
Salesman : How do you like your skirt ?
Toka : (1) ....
Salesman : (2) .... ?
Toka : I'd like black.
Salesman : What do you think of this one ?
Toka : (3) .... I'll take it. (4) .... ?
Salesman : It's 175 pounds.
Toka : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals.

Children did not usually wear many clothes until **they** were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents. Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear **heavy**, metal jewellery. Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Men and women wore .... clothes in Ancient Egypt.
   a. gold b. light c. similar d. different
2. .... cost a lot of money.
   a. Loose clothes b. Cotton clothes
   c. Linen clothes d. Leather sandals
3. The opposite of the word "**heavy**" is ....
   a. light b. terrible c. bad d. amazing

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the best title for the passage ?

   ....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to ?

   ....

6. Do you think Ancient Egyptian clothes look nice ? Why / Why not ?

   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... means expensive and good quality.
   a. Silly b. Weak c. Luxury d. Poisonous
2. I .... visiting the Pyramids if you are in Giza.
   a. prevent b. recommend c. show d. protect
3. Women prefer wearing fashionable .... in their ears.
   a. necklaces b. rings c. sunglasses d. earrings
4. ".................." has the same meaning as "ask".
   a. Wander b. Wonder c. Sell d. Sail
5. Mum always gives me a big .... when she sees me.
   a. hang b. blog c. hug d. bug

6. We need good .... to grow many crops.
   a. soil b. topic c. planet d. industry
7. When you want to buy something, ... it on to check the size.
   a. fry b. try c. dry d. cry
8. I would like to .... you to my brother's wedding party.
   a. invite b. invited c. inviting d. invites
9. Some people wore .... necklaces in Ancient Egypt.
   a. gold, beautiful b. beautiful, gold
   c. wooden, beautiful d. glass, beautiful
10. Salma is able to .... English and French well.
   a. speaking b. speaks c. spoke d. speak

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Does Ali .... (knows) how to spell words ?
2. WB The American tourists were wearing .... (red/big/plastic) sunglasses.
3. Would you like .... (coming) to my birthday party ?
4. This book is the only .... (ones) that I prefer.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"A visit to the Egyptian Museum"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....



Unit 11 The future of our planet

SB pages 44:53 WB pages 100:106

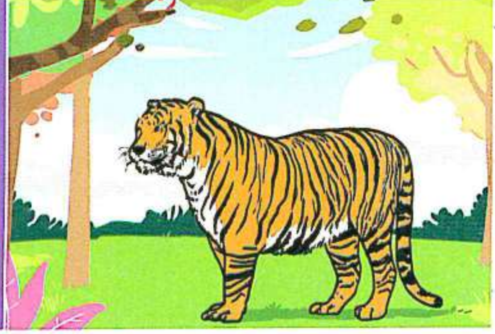
Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  Online posts about helping the environment; texts about a school trip; an article about teenage inventors; a postcard
- **Writing :**
  A paragraph about an environmental problem ; a holiday postcard
- **Listening :**
  Identifying what is going to happen; a radio programme about environmental problems; a teacher talking about drones; a discussion about making arrangements
- **Speaking :**
  Making predictions and future plans; suggesting solutions; giving opinions
- **Language :**
  be going to and the present continuous for the future
- **Life Skills :**
  Problem solving; Negotiation ; Collaboration

Lessons

1 & 2

SB pages 44 : 47
WB pages 100 & 101



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

intentions (n)	نوايا	drought (n)	جفاف
storm (n)	عاصفة	save (d) (v)	يحافظ على - ينقذ
solution (n)	حل	pollution (n)	التلوث
hunter (n)	صياد	flood (n)	فيضان
wind turbines (n)	توربينات الرياح	wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية
reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام	solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
equipment (n)	معدات	install (ed) (v)	يثبت
melt (ed) (v)	يذوب - ينصهر	reduce (d) (v)	يقلل - ينقص

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

Install - Solar panels - drought - reuse - solution

1. Can you help me find a .... to this problem ?
2. .... change the sunlight into electricity.
3. "................" means to put something somewhere so it's ready to use.
4. The High Dam saved Egypt from the danger of ....

Lesson 1

SB pages 44 & 45 WB page 100

post (n)	منشور	traffic (n)	حركة المرور
climate change (n)	تغيير المناخ	roof (n)	سطح
sunlight (n)	ضوء الشمس	danger (n)	خطر
turn (ed) (v)	يدور - يلف	wind (n)	رياح
air pollution (n)	تلوث الهواء	washing machine (n)	غسالة

Lesson 2

SB pages 46 & 47 WB page 101

extra (adj)	إضافي	local people	السكان المحليين
alarm clock (n)	منبه	desert animals	حيوانات صحراوية
vote (d) (n), (v)	تصويت / يصوت	desert plants	نباتات صحراوية
evidence (n)	دليل - برهان	unfortunately (adv)	لسوء الحظ
Wadi Rum	وادي روم [بالأردن]	environmental problem (n)	مشكلة بيئية
vehicle (n)	عربة / مركبة	kill (ed) (v)	يقتل
radio programme	برنامج إذاعي	finishing line (n)	خط النهاية
nearly (adv)	تقريبًا - حوالى	approach (ed) (v)	يقترب
		commentator (n)	معلق

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
get off	ينزل من	got off	got off
throw away	يرمى - يتخلص من	threw away	thrown away
fall down	يسقط	fell down	fallen down
come on	يتقدم	came on	come on
ring	يرن	rang	rung

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

install	put a piece of equipment somewhere and make it ready to use	يثبت
reduce	make something become less smaller in amount or size	يقلل
repair	fix something that is broken	يصلح
save	make something safe from danger	يحفظ - ينقذ
solar panels	equipment that changes the sun's light into electricity	ألواح شمسية
wind turbines	equipment that uses the wind to make electricity	توربينات الرياح

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

go	trekking يذهب في رحلة طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام	**get**	worse	يسوء (الأمر)
		catch	the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس
	swimming يذهب للسباحة	**make**	predictions	يتنبأ - يقوم بعمل تنبؤات
	to bed يذهب للنوم		money	يكسب أموال
damage	the environment يتلف البيئة	**cause**	pollution	يسبب التلوث

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
save يحفظ - يحافظ على	preserve / keep	destroy / damage يدمر / يحطم
drought جفاف	lack of water	flood فيضان
problem مشكلة	matter / trouble	solution حل
safe آمن	secure	dangerous خطير
unfortunately لسوء الحظ	unluckily	fortunately / luckily لحسن الحظ
reduce يقلل - ينقص	decrease	increase يزيد - يزداد

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
re–	تعنى مرة أخرى (again)	reuse يعيد استخدام rewrite يعيد كتابة recycle يعيد تدوير
–al	تحول الاسم إلى صفة	environmental بيئى natural طبيعى traditional تقليدى
–er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	hunter صياد

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The opposite of the word "save" is "..............".
   a. keep b. preserve c. damage d. reduce
2. The synonym of the word "reduce" is "..............".
   a. secure b. decrease c. increase d. solve

3. To turn "environment" into an adjective, we add the suffix "..............".
   a. –ation b. –al c. –er d. –or
4. The name of the person from the verb "hunt" is "..............".
   a. hunts b. hunted c. hunter d. hunting
5. Unfortunately the man died after the accident. The word " Unfortunately" means ".............. " .
   a. unluckily b. Fortunately c. Luckily d. Likely
6. The prefix "re-" in the verb "recycle" means ".............." .
   a. never b. again c. cycle d. one

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 save – savings

*save — يدخر / يوفر (وقت - مال)

- - My little brother **saves** L.E 100 a month.
  - Travelling by plane **saves** a lot of time.

*save ..... from ...... — ينقذ .... من ....

- - SB I'm going to help my father to **save** wildlife **from** the flood.

*savings — مدخرات (اسم جمع)

- - All my **savings** are in the bank.

(SB page 45)

2 (to + inf.) أو (how to + inf.) — لاحظ أن الأفعال الآتية يتبعها

know / learn / teach → (how) to + inf.

- - SB My father works in the park and he **knows (how) to keep** me safe.

(SB page 45)

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
The weather is going to be like ...	الطقس سيصبح ...	start a project	يبدأ مشروع
You are right.	أنت محق.	getting worse	يسوء (الأمر)
Prepositions			
ready to use	جاهز للاستخدام	in front of	أمام
change .... into	يتحول .... إلى	solution for / to	حل لـ
across the desert	عبر الصحراء	have a vote on ...	يقوم بتصويت على
go off	يقرع (يرن)	at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
get on	يركب (وسيلة مواصلات)	based on	قائم على

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

• on Lesson 1 SB page 45

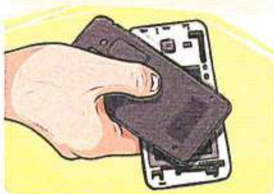
The rivers in **Kaziranga National Park**[1] in India often **flood**[2] and the problem is **getting worse**[3] because of climate change. Later this year, I'm going to help my father to save wildlife from the flood water. This can be dangerous, but my father works in the park and he knows how to **keep me safe**[4]!



There's a lot of air pollution from the **traffic**[5] in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help **reduce**[6] air pollution - so next week, we're going to plant trees on the roof of our school and make a school roof garden.



I love phones, but I know that **throwing away**[7] old phones can be bad for the environment. I started a project in school to recycle mobile phones. From tomorrow, people are going to bring us their old phones and we're going to **reuse**[8] parts from them to **repair**[9] other phones.



Answer the following questions :

Critical thinking skill مهارة التفكير النقدى

Learn 1. What do you think we should do to reduce pollution ?

- I think we should plant more trees.

Practise 2. What do you think we can do with old phones ?

....

(1) حديقة كازيرانجا الوطنية
(2) يفيض
(3) يسوء (الأمر)
(4) يحميني
(5) حركة المرور
(6) يقلل
(7) يرمى
(8) يعيد استخدام
(9) يصلح

Listening

on Lesson 2 SB page 46

(1) **Boy :** Oh no! Look at the time! It's 9 o'clock! **Come on quick**[1] !

(2) **Girl 1 :** The water's **a bit cold**[2] at first but it's lovely. Come on, Huda! Come and join me !

Girl 2 : OK, I'm coming!

(3) [Sound of snoring then alarm clock ringing. Snoring stops and person wakes up.]

(4) **Electronic announcer's voice :** We are now approaching Station Square.

Boy 1 : Is this our stop ?

Boy 2 : Yes, it is. Come on.

(5) **Commentator :** And they're near the finishing line now and suddenly Farida seems to be running faster. Nothing can stop her now. Just look at her go!

(6) **Boy :** Oh, I'm tired. But it's only nine o'clock !

Woman : Yes, but you've got school in the morning, Omar.

Boy : **You're right**[3]. **Good night**[4], mum. Good night, Ola.

(1) تعال بسرعة (2) بارد قليلًا (3) أنت محق (4) تصبح على خير

on Lesson 2 SB page 47

Speaker : Wadi Rum[1] is a large area of desert in the south of Jordan. It's a very beautiful place with mountains, **desert plants**[2] and **wildlife**[3]. Unfortunately, Wadi Rum has some **environmental problems**[4].

Tourists help the **local people**[5] make money, but when tourists **go trekking**[6] in the desert, they often leave rubbish, too.



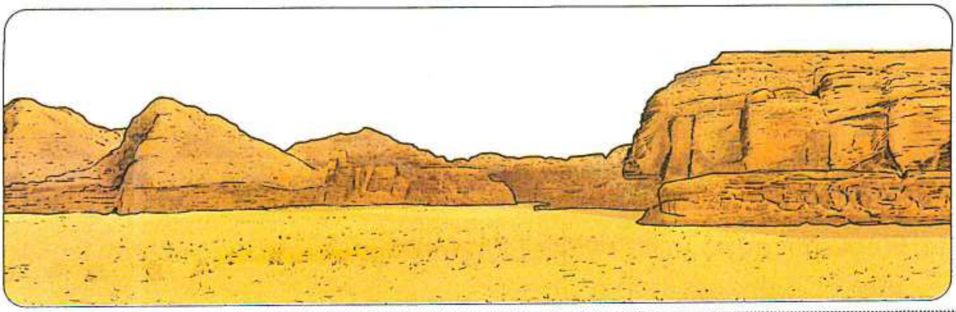
Some tourists drive **across**[7] the desert in cars; they don't use roads or paths, but drive wherever they want to and this can **damage**[8] plants and wildlife.

The hotels use lots of water which can be a problem in the desert. But they are building new hotels so even more tourists will go there.

(1) محمية وادي رم
(2) نباتات صحراوية
(3) حياة برية
(4) مشكلات بيئية
(5) السكان المحليون
(6) يذهب في رحلة طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام
(7) عبر
(8) يتلف / يفسد

Another big problem is **hunters**[9] who kill the desert animals. They shouldn't do this, but there aren't enough people to stop them. There is much less wildlife now than in the past and **soon**[10] there won't be any.

(9) صيادون حيوانات
(10) قريبًا



Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▸ Key vocabulary

1. We have many .... for the summer holiday but my dad decided to go to Hurghada.
   a. directions b. intentions c. decisions d. prediction
2. Climate change caused several.................... in many countries.
   a. droughts b. clouds c. machines d. panels
3. The .... caught a lot of animals from the forest.
   a. fisherman b. hunter c. writer d. vet
4. The High Dam saved us from many ....
   a. storms b. floods c. earthquakes d. pollution

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. .... are used to produce electricity. *(Maassara - Cairo 2023)*
   a. Coral reefs b. Mobiles c. Ports d. Solar panels
6. .... use the wind to make electricity. *(Keft - Qena 2023)*
   a. Solar panels b. Solar farms c. Fire fighters d. Wind turbines
7. People think that online shopping .... time and energy. *(El wakf - Qena 2023)*
   a. makes b. pays c. saves d. stays
8. Children should .... eating sweets because they are unhealthy. *(Belibis - Sharkia 2022)*
   a. encourage b. increase c. reduce d. suggest
9. SB When tourists go .... in the desert, they often leave rubbish, too.
   a. diving b. swimming c. trekking d. skiing

10. WB The desert is a difficult .... to live in.
   a. park   b. environment   c. village   d. city

El-Moasser Exercises

11. Climate change affects the environment badly and .... more animals and birds.
   a. melts   b. repairs   c. kills   d. saves
12. Cars, buses and trains are called ....
   a. planets   b. vehicles   c. materials   d. panels

▶ **Definitions**

13. To .... is to fix something that is broken.
   a. repair   b. reply   c. replay   d. reuse
14. To .... is to put a piece of equipment somewhere and make it ready to use.
   a. install   b. sell   c. pollute   d. save

▶ **Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions**

15. Scientists .... predictions about climate in the future.
   a. take   b. make   c. bake   d. give
16. A car alarm went .... in the middle of the night.
   a. off   b. of   c. on   d. up
17. I found a simple solution .... this problem.
   a. of   b. with   c. to   d. in

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▶ **1. Asking and answering questions about future plans :**

١. توجيه أسئلة والإجابة عليها عن الخطط المستقبلية

Questions	Answers
1. What are you going to do at the weekend ? - ماذا ستفعل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- I'm going to help my father. - سوف أساعد والدي.
2. Where are you going for your next holiday ? - أين ستذهب في عطلتك القادمة ؟	- I am going to Alexandria. - سوف أذهب إلى مدينة الإسكندرية.
3. Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old ? - هل سوف تعيد تصنيع هاتفك المحمول عندما يصبح قديمًا ؟	- Yes, I am going to recycle it to help the environment. - نعم سأعيد تصنيعه لمساعدة البيئة. - No, I am going to have a new one. - لا ، سوف أشترى هاتف محمول جديد.

2. Asking and answering questions on environmental problems :

٢. توجيه أسئلة عن المشاكل البيئية والإجابة عليها

Questions	Answers
1. What sort of environmental problems do you think is in Wadi Rum ? - ما نوع المشاكل البيئية التي تعتقد أنها في منطقة وادي روم ؟	- I think the tourists leave rubbish in the desert when they go trekking. Also the hunters kill the desert animals. As a result of that there is less wildlife now. - أعتقد أن السياح يتركوا القمامة في الصحراء عندما يذهبوا في رحلة طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام. أيضًا الصيادون يقتلون الحيوانات الصحراوية ونتيجة لذلك أصبح عدد حيوانات الحياة البرية أقل بكثير الآن.
2. How do you think we can solve these problems ? - كيف تعتقد أننا يمكننا حل هذه المشاكل ؟	1. I think we should stop people from hunting the desert animals. - أعتقد أنه يجب علينا منع الناس من صيد الحيوانات الصحراوية. 2. I think we should tell the tourists to take their rubbish with them to recycle it. - أعتقد أنه ينبغي علينا أن نخبر السياح أن يأخذوا القمامة معهم لإعادة تدويرها.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

"Wadi Rum" وادي رم

1. Wadi Rum is a large area of desert in the south of Jordan.

١. وادي رم منطقة واسعة من الصحراء في جنوب الأردن.

2. It is a very beautiful place with mountains, desert plants and wildlife.

٢. إنه مكان جميل جدًا به جبال، نباتات صحراوية وحياة برية.

3. Wadi Rum has some environmental problems.

٣. وادي رم به بعض المشكلات البيئية.

4. Tourists often leave rubbish when they go trekking.

٤. غالبًا ما يترك السياح المخلفات عندما يذهبون في رحلة طويلة سيرًا على الأقدام.

5. Tourists can damage plants and wildlife when they drive across the desert.

٥. يقوم السياح بتدمير النباتات والحياة البرية عندما يقودون السيارات عبر الصحراء.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة الـ
قم بإستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة

80 Dialogues
80 Paragraphs & E-mails

Your future plans

Step 1 Vocabulary اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. What are you going to wear for the .... ? حفلة
   - I'm going to wear the white dress.

2. When will we .... ? نتقابل
   - We'll meet at 5 p.m.

Step 2 Speaking اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Sama and Rana are preparing themselves to go to the party.

Sama : Will you go to the party tonight ?
Rana : (1) ....
Sama : What are you going to wear for the party ?
Rana : (2) ....
Sama : Oh! I really like that blue dress.
Rana : Thanks. (3) .... ?
Sama : I am going to wear my favourite red dress.
Rana : Wow! (4) .... ?
Sama : We'll meet at 6 p.m.
Rana : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Your future plans"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

How to solve the problem of pollution

Step 1 Vocabulary

1. Do you have any .... problems in your neighbourhood ? بيئية
   - Yes, I have.

2. What's the .... ? مشكلة
   - People throw a lot of rubbish and this causes a lot of pollution in the area.

Step 2 Speaking

A : Hi. Can I ask you some questions ?
B : Hi. (1) ....
A : Do you have any environmental problems in your area ?
B : (2) ....
A : (3) .... ?
B : There is a lot of rubbish and this causes a lot of pollution.
A : (4) .... ?
B : Pollution can do a lot of damage to people's health.
A : So, what should we do ?
B : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing

"How to solve the problem of pollution"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

III Language

Future with "be going to" :"be going to" المستقبل باستخدام

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

Subject		verb to be				
I	→	am				
He, She, It, أو اسم مفرد	→	is	+	going to	+	inf. مصدر الفعل
You, We, They, أو اسم جمع	→	are				

ex. I'm going to help my father.

2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل

ex. - They are not going to **visit** Alexandria.
- I am not going to **eat** fish.
- He isn't going to **throw** away his old phone.

3 Interrogative صيغـــة الاستفهام

A) Yes / No question : أ) السؤال بـ «هل» :

Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...?

ex. * Are they going to **win** the race ?
- Yes, they are. - No, they aren't.

B) Wh - question : ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة استفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل + ...?

ex. How is she going to **help** the environment ?

Usage الاستخدام

تستخدم هذه الصيغة فى الحالات الآتية :

1. We use (be going to + inf.) to talk about intentions that have been decided :

١. نستخدم (be going to + inf.) عند الحديث عن النوايا التى تم تحديدها.

ex. - I'm going to **build** a mosque. It's my intention.

- We're going to **travel** by plane to Aswan.

2. We use (be going to + inf.) to make predictions about the future based on what we can see or know (existing evidence) :

٢. تستخدم (be going to + inf.) عند التنبؤات عن المستقبل استنادًا إلى ما يمكننا رؤيته أو معرفته (مع وجود دليل على ذلك).

ex. - It is going to rain. (I can see some dark clouds).

هنا دليل قوى على أن السماء ستمطر. [أستطيع رؤية السحب السوداء].

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. I am .... to travel to Aswan. *(Ihnasia - Beni Suef 2023)*
   a. go b. going c. goes d. went
2. We are going to .... to the zoo next week. *(El Wakf - Qena 2023)*
   a. go b. goes c. going d. went
3. .... to travel to Zagazig next month ? *(Ain Shams - Cairo 2022)*
   a. Will you b. Are you going
   c. Are you d. You are going
4. SB They .... to do extra homework tonight.
   a. going b. are going c. is going d. be going
5. SB Farida is going .... the race.
   a. win b. to won c. winning d. to win
6. WB The boy and his father .... watch a football match.
   a. is going to b. are going to c. going to d. are going

El-Moasser Exercises

7. They are going to .... their flat next week.
   a. painted b. paints c. painting d. paint
8. Where .... to spend your next weekend ?
   a. are you going b. you are going
   c. you were going d. were you going
9. It is raining heavily. The river is going to ....
   a. flooding b. floods c. flooded d. flood
10. I can see some dark clouds. I think it ....
   a. rains b. is going to rain
   c. isn't going to rain d. doesn't rain

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. What .... (is) you going to do in the future ? *(Aswan 2023)*
2. I'm going to .... (helping) my brother with homework. *(Abou Homos - Beheira 2023)*
3. SB I .... (going to) help my father.
4. WB What are you going .... (do) at the weekend ? *(Somasta - Beni Suef 2023)*
5. SB He is .... (goes) to throw away his old phone.
6. Mr Sherif .... (be) going to go to England in May. *(Zefta - Gharbia 2022)*

El-Moasser Exercises

7. The boys are going to .... (visiting) Alexandria next year.
8. Are you going .... (sell) your bike ?
9. Farida is in the front. She is .... (going) win.
10. The snow is going .... (melt). *(El Hamoul - Assiut 2023)*

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. There is a lot of .... pollution in our city.
   a. air b. plant c. water d. tree
2. The pollution is caused by .... in our city.
   a. traffic b. rubbish c. factories d. drones
3. Pollution is very ....
   a. healthy b. good c. unhealthy d. fantastic
4. Trees help .... air pollution
   a. grow b. produce c. make d. reduce

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sameer and Kamal are talking about the Nile.

Sameer : What is the longest river in the world ?

Kamal : (1) ....

Sameer : I think it is polluted, isn't it ?

Kamal : (2) ....

Sameer : (3) .... ?

Kamal : Because some people throw rubbish in it.

Sameer : That's very bad. (4) .... ?

Kamal : We should keep the Nile clean.

Sameer : (5) ....

Kamal : I agree with you that it is important for our life.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Where .... to spend your next weekend ? *(El Fashn - Beni Suef 2023)*
   a. are you going b. you are going
   c. you were going d. were you going
2. I can see dark clouds. It .... rain. *(El Shohadaa - Menofia 2022)*
   a. will b. is going to c. is d. can't
3. Huda is going .... the race. She is in the first place. *(Qena - Qena 2022)*
   a. win b. to won c. winning d. to win

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

4. Many cars on the roads cause more .... *(Haram - Giza 2022)*
   a. floods b. inventions c. pollution d. earthquakes
5. SB There's a lot of air pollution from the .... in our city.
   a. farms b. fields c. traffic d. flood
   (Faid - Ismailia 2022)
6. SB I got up late because my alarm clock didn't .... this morning.
   a. throw away b. get off c. put away d. go off
7. Today, factories .... old paper and produce new paper.
   a. recycle b. solve c. check d. damage
8. SB Wadi Rum is a large .... of desert in the south of Jordan.
   a. time b. stone c. rock d. area
9. SB .... away old phones can be bad for the environment.
   a. Putting b. Throwing c. Reducing d. Making
10. To .... means to become liquid.
    a. freeze b. melt c. reduce d. save

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I am .... (go) to lend him the money. *(Basioun - Gharbia 2022)*
2. It's hot. The snow is .... (melt).
3. Are you going .... (visit) the museum ? *(Ashmoun - Menofia 2022)*
4. She .... (going) to get married next spring.

5 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

To your friend Tarek telling him what you are going to do in the summer holiday. Your friend's email address is tarek@yahoo.com. Your name is Nader and your email address is nader@gmail.com.

New message ×
Secure | https:

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,
....
....
....
....
....

Lessons

3 & 4

SB pages 48 : 50
WB pages 102 & 103



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

remote control (n)	جهاز التحكم عن بعد	STEM schools	مدارس العلوم والتكنولوجيا الحديثة
drone (n)	طائرة بلا طيار يمكن التحكم بها عن بعد		
conservation (n)	حفاظ - حماية	farmlands (n)	أراضي زراعية
suitable (adj)	ملائم - مناسب	location (n)	موقع
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية	green system	نظام ملائم للبيئة
environment-friendly	صديقة للبيئة	invent (ed) (v)	يخترع
forest (n)	غابة	volunteer (n)	متطوع
filter (ed) (v) (n)	يرشح - يصفى / مرشح - مصفاة	land (n)	اليابس
system (n)	نظام	suitcase (n)	حقيبة سفر
bacteria (n)	بكتيريا	invention (n)	اختراع
suitable (adj)	مناسب	decay (ed) (v)	يتحلل - يفسد

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

volunteer - green system - Drones - suitable - filters

1. .... can be controlled from the ground. They fly high.
2. The .... is good for the environment.
3. Some factories use .... to reduce pollution and keep the environment clean.
4. My brother is a .... He works for a charity.

Lesson 3

SB pages 48 & 49 WB page 102

tortoise (n)	سلحفاة	coral reef (n)	شعب مرجانية
text message (n)	رسالة نصية	gate (n)	بوابة
return (ed)(v)	يعود - يرجع	mangrove (n)	شجر استوائي [المانجروف]
sunhat (n)	قبعة للشمس	Ras Mohammad Nature Reserve	محمية رأس محمد الطبيعية
ground (n)	الأرض		

wind energy (n)	طاقة الرياح	control (led) (v)	يتحكم - يسيطر على
midday (n)	منتصف النهار	companies (n)	شركات
film (ed) (v) , (n)	يصور فيلم - فيلم	seed (n)	بذرة
diving (n)	رياضة الغطس	jungles (n)	ادغال

Lesson 4

SB page 50 WB page 103

liquid (n)	سائل	bits (n)	أجزاء صغيرة
chemistry (n)	الكيمياء	recycling bin	سلة المهملات
recycling (n)	إعادة التصنيع	Ocean Cleanup Array نظام تنظيف المحيط [اختراع طالب هولندى]	
ocean (n)	محيط		
canal (n)	قناة مائية	irrigate (d) (v)	يروى - يسقى

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
become	يصبح	became	become
lend	يقرض - يسلف	lent	lent
catch	يمسك - يلحق	caught	caught

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

conservation	the protection of natural things such as forests, birds and animals	محافظة - حماية
filters (n)	tools that take things out of liquids such as water	مرشح - مصفاة
filter (v)	pass a liquid or gas through a piece of equipment in order to remove solid pieces	يصفى / يرشح
bacteria	microorganisms that are everywhere but are too small to see and can make you ill	بكتيريا
system	an organised way of doing something	نظام
decay	slowly but naturally becomes weaker and then disappear	يتحلل - يفسد
chemical	something made by scientists in chemistry or produced by chemistry	مادة كيميائية
location	the place or position of a particular area of land	موقع

green	good for, it doesn't damage the environment	ملائم للبيئة
mangrove	a tropical tree, found near water, whose roots grow partly above ground	شجر المانجروف الاستوائي
seeds	small things produced by plants that new plants grow from	بذور
suitable	acceptable or right for someone or something	مناسب
control	make a person, organisation or object do what you want	يتحكم - يسيطر على

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	noise	يصدر ضوضاء	**catch**	a train	يلحق بالقطار
	sure	يتأكد	**have**	a rest	يرتاح / يأخذ راحة
take	part (in)	يشترك في			

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
dirty	قذر / متسخ	muddy / unclean	clean	نظيف
grow	ينمو	develop / get bigger	decay	يتحلل - يفسد
older	أكبر سنًا	senior	younger	أصغر سنًا
remote	بعيد - ناء	faraway / distant	near / nearby / close	قريب
pollute	يلوث	spoil / make dirty	clean	ينظف

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–ing	تكون الاسم من الفعل	recycling	إعادة تدوير
–ation	تكون الاسم من الفعل	conservation	محافظة - حماية
–tion	تكون الاسم من الفعل	pollution invention	تلوث اختراع

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Aswan is .... , but Cairo is near.
   a. nearby b. close c. remote d. high
2. A lot of rubbish pollutes the environment. "Pollute" is the antonym of "..............".
   a. spoil b. delete c. give d. clean
3. ".............." is the noun from the verb "invent".
   a. Invention b. Invents c. Invites d. Invitation
4. The words "muddy" and "dirty" are ....
   a. antonyms b. synonyms c. opposites d. nouns
5. To form the noun of the verb "recycle", we add the suffix ".............." .
   a. -ing b. -tion c. -ion d. -ness

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 wildlife
الحياة البرية (اسم لا يُعد)

- **Wildlife** means wild birds, plants, animals, etc.... *(SB page 48)*

2 without + (noun / inf. + ing)
بدون

- I like my tea **without** sugar.
- SB Filters take the plastic out of the sea water **without** hurting sea life. *(SB page 50)*

3 green

تستخدم كلمة **green** في بعض التعبيرات لتدل على أن الاسم الموصوف (ملائم للبيئة - طبيعى) أو يقصد به حماية للبيئة.

- SB She invented a **green** system for cleaning water. *(SB page 50)*

4 bacteria
البكتريا

اسم جمع يتبعها فعل جمع ومفردها **bacterium** .

- **Bacteria** are dangerous for our health. *(SB page 50)*

5 instead - instead of
بدلًا من

- He didn't use his bike; he used his brother's **instead.**
- SB Companies are going to use drones **instead of** lorries. *(SB page 48)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
life forms	أشكال للحياة	such as	مثل / على سبيل المثال
(be) called	يدعى - يسمى	make deliveries	يقوم بتوصيل الطلبات
complete a simple form	يكمل استمارة بسيطة	present solutions	يقدم حلولًا
Prepositions			
in five days' time	في خلال ٥ أيام	fly over	يطير فوق
work on a project	يعمل في مشروع	go on a trip	يخرج في رحلة قصيرة
leave for	يغادر لـ	drop into	يسقط فى
full of	ممتلئ بـ	according to	طبقاً لـ / وفقًا لـ

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 3 SB page 48



Scientist: **Drones**(1) can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them : we can use **remote control**(2). This **means**(3) we can control drones from **the ground**(4). In the future, drones are going to help **solve**(5) some environmental problems.

Boy : Really? How can we do that?

Scientist: Well, **companies**(6) are going to use drones a lot instead of lorries to make **deliveries**(7) . This is going to help the environment because drones don't make much noise and they don't **cause**(8) as much **air pollution**(9) as lorries.

Boy : That's interesting.

(1) طائرات بدون طيار
(2) جهاز التحكم عن بعد
(3) تعنى
(4) الأرض
(5) يحل
(6) الشركات
(7) خدمات توصيل
(8) يسبب
(9) تلوث الهواء

Scientist: Yes, and we are also going to use drones to help wildlife. Drones can fly over places where people can't go. We can see them if there are any problems. **For example**(10), we can use drones to help save wildlife after **floods**(11) or **fires**(12).

Boy: Can they help people, too ?

Scientist: Of course ! We can send drones to **dangerous places**(13). For example, we are starting to use drones to **check wind turbines**(14). This is not an easy job. Wind **energy**(15) is much better for the environment and makes less pollution. We can even use drones to plant trees. Drones can drop **seeds**(16) onto the ground in places that people can't go to. And they don't need to stop and have a rest!

(10) على سبيل المثال | (11) الفيضانات | (12) الحرائق | (13) أماكن خطيرة
(14) يفحص طواحين الهواء | (15) طاقة | (16) بذور

Reading

- on Lesson 3 SB page 49



Dear parents

The bus will be **leaving for**(1) Ras Mohammad from the school tomorrow at 6.30 am and returning **in five days' time**(2) at 12.30 pm on Thursday 11th June. Please **make sure**(3) that your daughter has suitable clothes for the swimming and diving trips to the coral reefs on Monday and Tuesday. They will also need good trainers and a sunhat for the visit to the mangrove forest on Wednesday. We will be **taking part in**(4) the conservation project in the mangrove forest and helping to plant new trees.

(1) يغادر متجهًا إلى | (2) فى خلال خمسة أيام | (3) يتأكد | (4) يشارك فى

- on Lesson 3 SB page 49

Hi Laila

We aren't **sharing**(1) a room ☹. Mrs Nagwa says that the older students have to help **look after**(2) the younger girls. Can we meet at the **school gates**(3) tomorrow morning at 6 am? I need to give you the trainers. I'm **lending**(4) you so that you can put them in your **suitcase**(5).

Habiba

(1) يتشارك في | (2) يعتني بـ | (3) بوابات المدرسة | (4) يقرض - يسلف | (5) حقيبة

on Lesson 4 SB page 50

Fantastic green inventions[1] by teenagers





Green inventions are **environmentally- friendly**[2]. These inventions present **solutions**[3] to **environmental problems**[4] without damaging the environment. Boyan Slat was a student in Holland when he **invented**[5] a **system**[6] to take plastic rubbish from the sea. There is a lot of plastic in our seas, which kills lots of wildlife.

Boyan's system is called **Ocean Cleanup Array**[7]. It uses machines whose arms have lots of **filters**[8] on them. These filters **take** the plastic **out of** [9] the sea water, without **hurting**[10] sea life.

Deepika Kurup was 14 when she invented a green system for cleaning water and making it safe for people to drink. When she visited her grandparents in India. Deepika saw children drinking water from a dirty canal. Before this, systems for cleaning water were expensive and used dangerous **chemicals**[11] which pollute the environment. Deepika's system is cheap and uses light from the sun to kill **bacteria**[12] in water. Five Egyptian students from Kafr El-Sheikh **STEM School**[13] were able to **develop**[14] an app to help small farmers save water and energy. In this app, farmers **complete a simple form**[15] with information about their **farmlands**[16]. This form is **connected to**[17] a **smart app**[18] which tells farmers the right amount of water that they need to **irrigate**[19] their lands. The app also **determines**[20] the **amount**[21] of energy and the number of **workers**[22] the lands need, according to their **location**[23] and the **season**[24].

(1) اختراعات ملائمة للبيئة
(2) صديقة البيئة
(3) حلول
(4) مشكلات بيئية
(5) يخترع
(6) نظام
(7) جهاز تنظيف المحيطات
(8) مصفاه
(9) يخرج
(10) يؤذى
(11) مواد كيميائية
(12) بكتريا
(13) مدارس العلوم و التكنولوجيا الحديثة
(14) ينمى / يطور
(15) يكمل استمارة بسيطة
(16) أرضي زراعية
(17) متصل بـ
(18) برنامج / تطبيق ذكى
(19) يسقى / يروى
(20) يحدد / يصمم
(21) كمية
(22) عمال
(23) موقع
(24) موسم / فصل

Extracting information استخراج المعلومات

Answer the following questions :

Learn 1. How old was Deepika Kurup when she invented a green system ?

- *She was 14 years old.*

Practise 2. Why are green inventions environment-friendly ?

....

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. It's easy now to change the TV channels using a .... control.
   a. fast b. low c. remote d. far
2. They use a .... to take out large bits from their juice.
   a. fork b. filter c. pan d. bowl
3. People sometimes use a .... to film animals from the sky.
   a. plant b. drought c. drone d. racket

SB , WB and Previous Exams

4. Planes, mobile phones and helicopters are great ....
   (Fowa - Kafr El Sheikh 2023)
   a. inventions b. invitations c. chemicals d. views
5. Don't drink water from a canal because it can be full of dangerous ....
   (West Kafr El Sheikh - Kafr El Sheikh 2023)
   a. filter b. system c. bacteria d. location
6. These bad .... make the plants die. *(El Waraq - Giza 2023)*
   a. businesses b. chemicals c. crops d. gloves
7. I would like to .... a machine to tidy my room. *(El Wasta - Beni Suef 2022)*
   a. pull b. discover c. invent d. invite
8. SB She invented a/an .... system for cleaning water and making it safe.
   a. green b. dangerous c. weak d. old
9. WB Volunteers are working on a .... project to save Egyptian tortoises.
   a. damaged b. recycling c. conservation d. polluting

El-Moasser Exercises

10. There are many buses outside the school ....
    a. laboratory b. library c. gate d. suitcase
11. Which of these is a .... water, oxygen or wood ? – Water.
    a. liquid b. gas c. solid d. chemical
12. Plastic .... in the ocean for a long time.
    a. disappears b. stays c. decays d. makes

Definitions

13. "………………" is the place or position or a particular area of land.
   a. Chemical b. Location c. Mangrove d. Filter
14. "………………" means to make a person, organization or object do what you want.
   a. Catch b. Control c. Steal d. Decay

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. They work ……………… a project to save the forest.
   a. on b. from c. of d. at
16. You can use filters to ……………… things out of liquids.
   a. make b. take c. put d. give

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions on future plans

توجيه أسئلة عن الخطط المستقبلية باستخدام التعبيرات الزمنية والإجابة عليها.

Questions	Answers
1. What are you doing this afternoon ? - ماذا ستفعل اليوم في وقت الظهيرة ؟	- I am visiting my friend. - سوف أزور صديقى.
2. What are you doing at the weekend ? - ماذا ستفعل في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- I am meeting my cousin. - سأقابل ابن عمى.
3. What is Judy doing this evening ? - ماذا ستفعل جودي هذا المساء ؟	- Judy is playing tennis this evening. - ستلعب جودى تنس هذا المساء.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

"Drones" طائرات بدون طيار

1. Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them.

١. تستطيع الطائرات بدون طيار الطيران ولكنهم لا يحتاجون شخص لكى يطير بهم.

2. Companies are going to use drones to make deliveries.

٢. الشركات سوف تستخدم الطائرات بدون طيار لكى تقوم بتوصيل الطلبات.

3. We use drones to help save wildlife after floods or fires.

٣. نستخدم طائرات بدون طيار لكى تساعد في إنقاذ الحياة البرية بعد الفيضانات أو الحرائق.

4. Drones can fly over places where people can't go.

٤. الطائرات بدون طيار تستطيع الطيران فوق أماكن حيث لا يستطيع البشر الذهاب إليها.

5. They don't make much noise.

٥. لا تسبب كثير من الضوضاء.

Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, Emails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات في أسئلة الـ

قم باستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues
80 Paragraphs & E-mails

Your plans for the weekend

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. What are your .... for weekend ? Why ? خطط
   - I am going to the airport to meet my friend, Tamer.
2. Which .... is he coming from ? دولة
   - Italy.
3. Can I come with you ?
   - .... نعم بالطبع.

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed is asking Omar about what he is doing.

Ahmed : Hi Omar. Where are you going at the weekend ?
Omar : Hi Ahmed. (1) ....
Ahmed : Why are you going to Alexandria Airport?
Omar : (2) ....
Ahmed : (3) .... ?
Omar : He is coming from France.
Ahmed : (4) .... ?
Omar : He was studying medicine. He became a doctor there.
Ahmed : Can I come with you to Alexandria Airport ?
Omar : (5) .... There is no place in the car.

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"Your plans for the weekend"

....

The importance of drones

Step 1 Vocabulary

1. Can you tell me about an important invention ?
   - Yes, of course. .... are important inventions. طائرات بدون طيار
2. What can we use them for ?
   - We can use them for saving .... after floods or fires. الحياة البرية

Step 2 Speaking

They are talking about drones.

A : Hi. Can you tell me some information about the drone ?
B : Hi. (1) ....
(2) .... ?
A : I want to know if it is a useful invention.
B : (3) ....
A : (4) .... ?
B : We can use it to help save wildlife after floods or fires.
A : Fantastic! What else can we use it for ?
B : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing

"The importance of drones"

....

III Language

Remember تذكر

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

I / He / She / It / فاعل مفرد غائب / We / You / They / فاعل جمع + am / is / are + inf. + ing مصدر الفعل ......

ex. - Manal and Mona are studying calligraphy.

2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

I / He / She / It فاعل مفرد غائب / We / You / They فاعل جمع + am / is / are + not + inf. + ing مصدر الفعل ......

ex. - He isn't doing his homework now.

3 Interrogative صيغـة الاستفهـام

A) Yes / No question : أ) السؤال بـ «هل» :

Am / Is / Are + I / he / she / it فاعل مفرد غائب / we / you / they فاعل جمع + inf. + ing مصدر الفعل ...... ?

ex. * Are they watering the trees now ?

B) Wh - question : ب) السؤال باستخدام كلمة استفهام :

Question word كلمة استفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + inf. + ing مصدر الفعل ......?

ex. When are you travelling to Luxor ?

Usage الاستخدام

1. We use the present continuous to express actions happening now.
يستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث تقع الآن.
ex. - She is going to Aswan at the moment.

2. We use the present continuous for future plans and arrangements, often with a time and date.
نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية وغالبًا مع الوقت والتاريخ.
ex. - I'm travelling to Luxor next month.

Future Time Expressions تعبيرات زمن المستقبل

Common Future Time Expressions تعبيرات زمن المستقبل الشائعة	Examples
tomorrow غدًا [بعد يوم واحد]	I think I will go shopping tomorrow.
the day after tomorrow يوم بعد غد [بعد يومين من اليوم]	Sam is travelling the day after tomorrow.
next week [الأسبوع القادم] [الأسبوع الذي يلي هذا الأسبوع]	Omar will visit his uncle next week.
in (a specific period of time in the future) في [فترة زمنية محددة في المستقبل]	Adam will finish his exams in three weeks.
this (morning - afternoon - ......) هذا [الصباح - بعد الظهيرة - ......]	Tarek is playing football this evening.
On (Monday - Sunday ....) في [يوم الاثنين - يوم الأحد ...] [يوم محدد]	Mona is travelling to France on Monday.

Now → ① in five minutes → ② this afternoon / evening → ③ tomorrow → ④ the day after tomorrow → ⑤ next week → ⑥ in 10 days' time → ⑦ in three weeks → future

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. We .... to Alexandria tomorrow. We have booked the tickets.
   a. will travel b. travelled c. would travel d. are travelling
   (Etay El Baroud - Beheira 2023)

2. What .... now ? *(Samalut - Minya 2022)*
   a. are you doing b. you are doing
   c. are you doing to do d. you are going to do
3. WB She is visiting her grandma .... *(West Mahala - Gharbia 2022)*
   a. yesterday b. last week
   c. the day after tomorrow d. in the past
4. SB They are returning in five .... at 12.30 p.m.
   a. days' time b. day's time c. days time d. day time
5. WB Judy .... a museum in nine days' time.
   a. going to visit b. visiting c. is visiting d. visited
6. SB The students .... the school at 6.30 on 6th June.
   a. is leaving b. going to leave c. leaving d. are leaving

El-Moasser Exercises

7. Nahid .... a party next Sunday. She's invited her friends.
   a. is having b. having c. has had d. have
8. We aren't taking a bus. We .... a train at 7 p.m.
   a. caught b. are catching c. catching d. going to catch
9. **Marwa :** What are you doing this evening ?
   Salwa : I .... for my English exam.
   a. am revising b. going to revise c. revise d. am revised
10. Hamza .... a new mobile tomorrow. It's arranged.
   a. is going to buy b. bought c. buys d. is buying

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Ahmed .... (study) for his maths exam at the moment. *(Hihya - Sharkia 2022)*
2. The students .... (do) an exam next Sunday. It's arranged. *(Sadat - Menofia 2022)*
3. WB Judy is .... (plays) tennis this evening. *(Montaza - Alexandria 2022)*
4. SB What are you .... (do) this afternoon ?
5. SB I .... (visit) the dentist at 4 : 30 next Thursday.

El-Moasser Exercises

6. Here is Ali's suitcase. He .... (travel) to London tomorrow.
7. Sorry, I can't visit you tomorrow. I am .... (study) for the exam.
8. Next year, Hoda .... (move) to a new flat. She has arranged this.
9. We've booked two tickets. We .... (watch) a play in the theatre this evening.
10. We .... (having) dinner outside. We have prepared everything.

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Drones can ....
   a. swim b. sink c. float d. fly
2. We can use a .... control to fly drones.
   a. remote b. nearby c. near d. far away
3. We can control drones from the ....
   a. sky b. sea c. ground d. river
4. In the future, drones are going to help solve some .... problems.
   a. healthy b. environmental
   c. mechanical d. historical

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Shady is asking Ryan about his plans this afternoon.

Shady : What are you going to do this afternoon ?

Ryan : (1) ....

Shady : What time is your swimming training ?

Ryan : At half past three. (2) .... ?

Shady : Because I want you to go shopping with me.

Ryan : (3) ....

Shady : (4) .... ?

Ryan : I will finish my training lesson at 6.

Shady : OK. What about going shopping at 6:30 ?

Ryan : (5) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Mona's mother is a/an .... at the hospital; they don't pay for her work. *(Edfu - Aswan 2023)*
   a. coach b. patient c. architect d. volunteer
2. .... don't need pilots to fly them. *(Kafr El Ziat - Gharbia 2023)*
   a. Planes b. Drones c. Helicopters d. Jets
3. SB Boyan Slat invented a .... to take plastic rubbish from the sea.
   a. bacterium b. problem c. system d. forest

4. I .... to Luxor tomorrow. It's arranged. *(Koum Hamada - Beheira 2023)*
   a. travel b. am travelling c. will travel d. going to travel
5. Heavy clothes are .... for cold climate.
   a. dangerous b. suitable c. useless d. bad
6. SB Plastic .... environmental problems.
   a. reduces b. causes c. kills d. decays
7. The world changed rapidly after the .... of the computer.
   a. invention b. invitation c. discovery d. description
   (El Marg - Cairo 2023)
8. SB Wind .... is much better for the environment and makes less pollution. *(El Marg - Cairo 2023) (Maghagha - Minya 2022)*
   a. drones b. equipment c. chemicals d. energy
9. SB I'm .... the dentist at 6:30 next Thursday. *(Heliopolis - Cairo 2022)*
   a. visits b. visiting c. to visit d. visited
10. At 11 a.m. next Sunday, we .... the great show in the school hall.
   a. are watching b. watch c. watched d. watches
   (El Marg - Cairo 2022)

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. We .... (travel) to Sharm El Sheikh tomorrow. We have made our arrangements. *(Etay El Baroud - Beheira 2023)*
2. Ali .... (take) the bus at 5 a.m. tomorrow. *(Helwan - Cairo 2022)*
3. SB The bus .... (leave) in ten minutes' time.
4. I've arranged it. I .... (visit) my aunt tomorrow.

5 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Water pollution"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Lessons 5 & 6

SB pages 51 & 52
WB pages 104 & 105



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

scary (adj)	مخيف	minutes (n)	دقائق
rock climbing (n)	تسلق الصخور	hot-air ballooning (n)	
star gazing (n)	مراقبة النجوم		ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن
coral reef (n)	الشعب المرجانية	bungee jumping (n)	القفز بالحبال
snorkel (led) (v)	يغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس (v)	sandboarding (n)	التزحلق على الرمال
fishing (n)	صيد السمك	ruins (n)	بقايا - اطلال

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

snorkel - Temple - ruins - scary - Bungee jumping

1. .... is a very dangerous sport. Brave people like it.
2. I like to .... It is an under water activity.
3. We can't live in this house. The house was just ....
4. Watching .... films is not suitable for children before sleeping.

Lesson 5

SB page 51 WB page 104

bored (adj)	يشعر بالملل	horse riding (n)	ركوب الخيل
beginners (n)	مبتدئين	bird watching (n)	مشاهدة/مراقبة الطيور
actually (adv)	في الواقع	fun (n)	مرح / متعة
invite (d) (v)	يدعو	afraid (adj)	خائف

Lesson 6

SB page 52 WB page 105

sunset (n)	غروب الشمس	salt lake (n)	بحيرة مالحة
book club (n)	نادى الكتاب	reply (ied)(v), (n)	يرد - رد
miss (ed)(v)	يفقد - يفوت	electricity (n)	كهرباء

Japanese (n), (adj)	اللغة اليابانية - ياباني	area (n)	منطقة
temperature (n)	درجة الحرارة	towel (n)	منشفة
history (n)	تاريخ	cause (d) (v)	يسبب

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

scary	frightening	مخيف
star gazing	to look at the stars in the sky as a hobby	مراقبة النجوم
sunset	the time in the evening when you last see the sun in the sky	غروب الشمس

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

go	rock climbing	يذهب لتسلق الصخور	**have**	a picnic	يذهب في نزهة
get	cold	يصاب بالبرد	**make**	electricity	يولد طاقة كهربائية
	bored	يشعر بالملل			

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
fresh	طازج	new	stale	غير طازج
free	غير مشغول - فاضى	available / empty	busy	مشغول
exciting	مثير - رائع	interesting	boring	ممل

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	beginner	مبتدئ
–ly	تحول الصفة إلى ظرف	actually	فى الحقيقة
–y	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	scary	مخيف

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The synonym of the word "fresh" is "............ ".
   a. stale b. new c. busy d. early
2. At 7 o'clock, tomorrow morning, I am doing my work, so I'm not ....
   a. busy b. free c. helpful d. late
3. To change the verb "begin" into a noun, we add the suffix "............" .
   a. –al b. –tion c. –ed d. –er

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
It sounds really exciting!	تبدو شيقة حقًا!	see you then	أراك لاحقًا
It might be fun.	ربما تكون ممتعة.	pass the exam	يجتاز الامتحان
the day before yesterday	قبل أمس	one last thing	شيء أخير
it looks a bit scary	يبدو مخيفًا قليلًا	call me later	اتصل بي لاحقًا
best wishes	أطيب التمنيات	have a fantastic time	يقضي وقتًا رائعًا
Prepositions			
I'd love to + (inf.)	أود أن ...	go under water	يذهب للغطس تحت الماء
look forward to (inf. + ing)	يتطلع إلى	sit by	يجلس بالقرب من / بجانب
have to + (inf.)	لابد / يجب أن	on the boat	على متن قارب

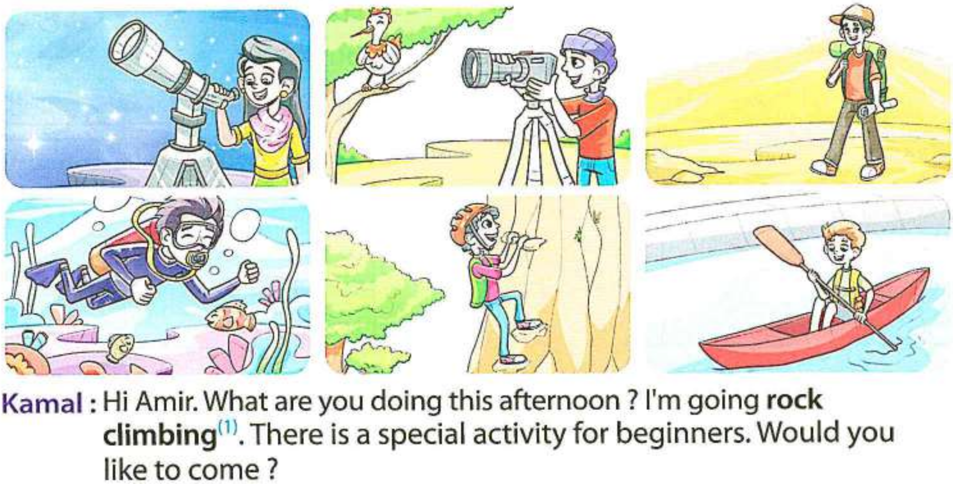
II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

on Lesson 5 SB page 51



Kamal : Hi Amir. What are you doing this afternoon ? I'm going **rock climbing**[1]. There is a special activity for beginners. Would you like to come ?

Amir : I don't know. Rock climbing **looks**[2] **a bit scary**[3] to me! Are you going, Nasser ?

Nasser: Yes! I've always wanted to learn rock climbing! Oh, come on, don't be afraid, Amir!

(1) تسلق الصخور | (2) يبدو | (3) مخيف قليلًا

Amir : Actually, I can't come this afternoon; I'm helping my father with something.

Kamal : **How about**[4] tomorrow afternoon instead ? There's another rock climbing activity then at the same time.

Amir : OK! I'll come. You're right. It might be fun. Also, I wanted to ask you something : are you and Nasser **free**[5] this evening ?

Nasser: I think so. Why ?

Amir : Dad is going to take me **star gazing**[6] into the desert with my brother Ramy and Uncle Sami and he said I could invite you, too.

Kamal : Thank you. We'd love to come, wouldn't we, Nasser ? I'd love to go to the desert at night. Is your brother Ramy going ?

Amir : No, he doesn't want to. He thinks he'd get cold and bored!

Nasser: Well, I think it sounds really exciting!

Amir : Great! We're meeting outside my house at half past ten. **See you then**[7].

(4) ماذا عن | (5) متفرغ | (6) مراقبة النجوم | (7) أراك لاحقًا

Reading

- on Lesson 6 SB page 52



Dear Nahla

I'm **having a fantastic time**[1] with my family in Siwa. Today, we **had a picnic**[2] on Fatanas Island. At the moment, I'm sitting by the water and watching the sunset. **It**'s very beautiful.

We're **staying with**[3] my parents' friends and they are very kind. When we arrived **the day before yesterday**[4], it was very late. **They** still wanted to get up and make us dinner and they bring us fresh dates for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, we visited Shali Fortress and the Siwa museum. I've always wanted to go there. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning. Tomorrow, we're going to visit the Siwa salt lake. I'm **looking forward to**[5] visiting it. It sounds really interesting.

Lots of love

Heba

(1) يقضى وقتًا رائعًا | (2) ذهب فى نزهة | (3) يبقى مع | (4) أول أمس | (5) يتطلع إلى

on Lesson 5 WB page 104

Baher : Would you like to come diving next weekend, Imad ? We're going to go to a **coral reef** [1] !
Imad : I don't know. Diving under water looks a bit scary to me.
Baher : If you don't like going under water, you could stay on the boat.
Imad : I think I'd **get cold** [2] and **bored** [3] on the boat.
Baher : Why don't you **snorkel** [4] ? Then you don't go under water but you can see the fish.
Imad : Yes, that might be **fun** [5].
Baher : Great! Let's all snorkel. We don't need a boat, we can go from the beach!
Imad : Thanks, I'd love to.

(1) شعاب مرجانية | (2) يصاب بالبرد | (3) شاعر بالملل | (4) يغطس باستخدام أنبوب تنفس | (5) متعة / مرح

on Lesson 6 WB page 105



Hi
Guess where I am ? At the moment, I'm walking in the desert in the **Nabq Nature Reserve** [1]. It's really interesting. Yesterday, we visited the mountains. It was very hot! The day before yesterday, **we went diving** [2] in the coral reefs at **Shoura al Manquata** [3]. The fish were amazing. Tomorrow we're going to visit **Wadi Kid** [4]. I'm looking forward to seeing the beautiful birds that live there. We're coming home in three days' time.
What are you doing ? Write to me and tell me your news.
Best wishes, Hamdi

(1) محمية نبق الطبيعية | (2) يغطس | (3) شورى المنقطة (منطقة تخييم فى محمية نبق) | (4) وادى كيد

on Lesson 7 SB page 53

Hi
Are you **busy** [1]? What are you doing this afternoon ? Please could you call me **later** [2] because I need some help with the English homework ! 🙂
I had to go to the dentist, so I **missed** [3] the last English lesson. What did you study in English class last week ?
One last thing - are you free on Saturday morning ? I'm playing tennis in the park. Would you like to come ?

(1) مشغول | (2) لاحقًا | (3) يفوت

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. Brave people like practising .... jumping using plastic cables.
   a. rock b. bang c. bungee d. bike
2. He is going to try .... in the mountains.
   a. fishing b. rock climbing c. diving d. snorkelling
3. I like star .... at night.
   a. climbing b. gazing c. collecting d. riding
4. Tourists enjoy watching the coral .... in the Red Sea.
   a. briefs b. reefs c. beefs d. roofs

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. WB I think I'd .... cold on the boat.
   a. get b. make c. take d. bring
6. SB I had to go to the dentist, so I .... the last English lesson.
   a. visited b. missed c. invited d. had
7. SB Look at the .... ! It's going to rain. *(Tema - Sohag 2022)*
   a. white stars b. blue sky c. dark clouds d. sun

El-Moasser Exercises

8. Are you .... of the dark ?
   a. proud b. afraid c. excited d. interested
9. He has a fever حمى , his.................. is 40°.
   a. grade b. mark c. temperature d. view
10. He isn't .... , he is busy.
   a. free b. crowded c. happy d. rich

Definitions

11. " .... " means frightening.
   a. Free b. Scary c. Busy d. Actual
12. .... is the time in the evening when you last see the sun in the sky.
   a. Sunset b. Sunrise c. Sunlight d. Sun

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. Ahmed is .... forward to visiting Paris next summer.
   a. taking b. looking c. making d. giving
14. Heba .... a picnic on Fatanas Island.
   a. made b. had c. did d. gave
15. Scientists are using sunlight to .... electricity.
   a. make b. use c. do d. invent

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

Making and responding to suggestions

تقديم اقتراحات والرد عليها

1 Situation الموقف	2 Positive response الرد بالموافقة	3 Negative response الرد بالرفض
- Why don't you / we snorkel ? لما لا تقوم/نقوم بالغطس بأنبوب التنفس؟	- That's a good idea. إنها فكرة جيدة.	- I can't do this afternoon. لا أستطيع القيام بهذا وقت الظهيرة.
- How about tomorrow afternoon instead of today ? ما رأيك في غدًا بعد الظهر بدلًا من اليوم؟	- I'll come. سوف آتي.	- I don't know, it looks a bit scary to me. لا أعلم، يبدو الأمر مخيف إلى حد ما بالنسبة لي.
- You could stay on the boat. من الممكن أن تبقى على متن القارب.	- I'd love to. أحب ذلك.	
- Let's all snorkel ! - هيا بنا جميعًا نغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس.	- I always wanted to do that. دائمًا ما كنت أريد فعل هذا.	
	- Thank you. We'd love to come. شكرًا لك. نود المجيء.	

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

"Siwa واحة سيوة"

1. I'm having a fantastic time with my family in Siwa.

١. أنني أقضى وقت رائع مع عائلتي في واحة سيوة.

2. We had a picnic on Fatanas Island.

٢. لقد قمنا بنزهة في جزيرة فطناس.

3. I like sitting by the water and watching the sunset there.

٣. أحب الجلوس بجانب المياه ومشاهدة غروب الشمس هناك.

4. We visited Shali Fortress and the Siwa Museum.

٤. لقد قمنا بزيارة قلعة شالي ومتحف سيوة.

5. I learnt such a lot of history in one morning.

٥. لقد تعلمت الكثير عن التاريخ في صباح يوم واحد.

6. We're going to visit the Siwa salt lake. I'm looking forward to visiting it.

٦. سوف نقوم بزيارة بحيرة سيوة المالحة. إنني أتطلع إلى زيارتها.

General Exercises On LESSONS 5 & 6

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Complete the following dialogue :

Marwa is talking with Noha about her plans for the next holiday.

Marwa : Would you like to go diving or play basketball at the weekend ?

Noha : (1) ....

Marwa : Have you got a diving suit ?

Noha : (2) .... Who will come with us ?

Marwa : My cousin. (3) .... ?

Noha : Yes, I have. I went diving in the Red Sea last year.

Marwa : The Red Sea is fantastic. (4) .... ?

Noha : I saw colourful fish.

Marwa : Were you happy then ?

Noha : (5) ....

(Shubra - Cairo 2022)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'll .... my friends to my birthday party.
   a. invent b. invite c. feed d. climb
2. She is looking forward to .... this modern car.
   a. buys b. buying c. buy d. to buy
3. Have you tried horse .... before ?
   a. diving b. watching c. riding d. climbing
4. My family is .... fantastic time in Siwa.
   a. giving b. fixing c. having d. wasting
5. "Busy" is the opposite of ....
   a. free b. scary c. afraid d. boring
6. Students do a lot of .... during the school day.
   a. matches b. activities c. games d. lessons
7. My brother likes star .... in the sky.
   a. diving b. gazing c. riding d. climbing

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

8. Next week, we .... the ruins of an ancient mosque.
   a. visiting
   b. are going to visit
   c. visited
   d. visit

9. My cousins .... at lunchtime tomorrow at 11 am.
   a. are arriving
   b. going to arrive
   c. arrived
   d. arrive

   (El Sahel - Cairo 2022)

10. SB Diving under water looks a bit .... to me. *(Atfeh - Giza 2022)*
   a. scary
   b. interested
   c. bored
   d. amazed

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. What are you .... (go) to do next week ?

   (Khalifa & Mokattam - Cairo 2023)

2. WB Samia's family are going to .... (travelling) to Japan.
3. .... (Yesterday), I think it will be very hot.
4. At the moment, we .... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake.

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"The activity you like doing in your free time"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

Review on unit 11

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

- install يركب - يثبت
- wildlife الحياه البرية
- reduce يقلل - ينقص
- wind turbine توربينات الرياح
- reuse يعيد استخدام
- drought جفاف
- flood فيضان
- intentions نوايا
- remote control جهاز تحكم عن بعد
- drone طائره صغيرة يمكن التحكم فيها عن بعد
- conservation حفاظ - حماية
- filter مصفاة - مرشح
- decay يتعفن / يفسد / يتحلل
- green ملائم للبيئة
- volunteer متطوع
- suitcase حقيبة سفر
- hot-air ballooning ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن
- bungee jumping القفز بالحبال
- coral reefs الشعاب المرجانية
- star gazing مراقبة النجوم

Language

1. (be going to) for intentions.

- Use be going to + (inf) to talk about your intentions for the future.

• استخدم هذه الصيغة عند الحديث عن النية للقيام بشئ في المستقبل.

- I'm going to help my father.
- He isn't going to throw away his old phone.
- What are you going to do ?
- How is she going to help the environment ?

2. (be going to) for making predictions.

- Use (be going to) to make predictions about the future based on what we can see or know.

• استخدم هذه الصيغة لعمل تنبؤات في المستقبل ويوجد دليل على ذلك.

- It is going to rain. (I can see some dark clouds.)
- The students are going to do very well in their exams. (They always get good marks.)

3- Remember! تذكر أن

- Use the present continuous for future plans and arrangements, often with a time and date.

• استخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن خطط وترتيبات مستقبلية غالبًا [بوقت وتاريخ].

- I'm visiting the dentist at half past four next Thursday.
- We're catching our train at 12.30. We aren't taking the bus.

Speaking

1. Making predictions and future plans :

* What are you going to do at the weekend ?

- I am going to help my father.

* What is going to happen ?

- The snow is going to melt.

2. Suggesting solutions & giving opinion :

- I think they should stop people from driving across the desert.

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Extracting information

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [استخراج المعلومات Extracting information] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا لاستخراج معلومات عن النص.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the questions :

Ahmed Zewail was born in 1946 in Egypt where he grew up. He went to Alexandria University then he finished his studies in America in 1974. He worked at the university of California in 1976. He was a famous scientist in 1998 when he won a medal because he discovered the femto-second. One year later, he got the Nobel Prize in chemistry. All Egyptians were very pleased to have a clever scientist. He lived in California and had four children. His wife was a doctor. He died in 2016. We are all proud of him.

- Where did Dr Ahmed Zewail work in 1976 ?

....

- What did Dr Ahmed Zewail discover ?

....

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى استخرج معلومة من النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة ركز على التفاصيل الموجودة فى الفقرة.

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Heba wants Hala to go fishing with her.

Heba : Hi ! Hala. How are you today ?

Hala : Hi ! Heba. (1) ....

Heba : (2) .... ?

Hala : I am going to go fishing in Hurghada. Why don't you come with me ?

Heba : (3) ....

Hala : Why can't you come with me ?

Heba : Because I have to go to the market.

Hala : (4) .... ?

Heba : Some vegetables for my mom. What about the next week ?

Hala : (5) ....

التحدى تريد [التحدث عن الخطط المستقبلية وتقديم الاقتراحات] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية [paragraph] معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع. "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلي."

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن [إختراعك المفضل الحديث] و [إختراعات صديقة للبيئة] وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها فى تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic	Step 1 Review your vocabulary	Step 2 Sentences	Step 3 Paragraph
Modern inventions	Write the meaning : تطير .... نظام التحكم عن بعد .... ضوضاء .... طائرات بدون طيار .... الحياة البرية	Fill in using vocabulary : 1. .... are examples of modern technology. 2. Drones can ...., but they don't need a person to fly them. 3. We can use .... to control them. 4. They don't make much .... 5. We can use them to help the .... after floods or fires.	Write a paragraph on : "Your favourite modern invention" ....
Green inventions	اخترع .... حلول .... صديق للبيئة .... مرشحات .... الحياة البحرية	1. Green inventions are .... 2. They present .... to environmental problems. 3. A student in Holland .... a system to take plastic rubbish from the sea. 4. The system uses machines whose arms have lots of .... on them. 5. The filters take the plastic out of water without hurting	Write an email about : "Green inventions" .... تدريب تلقائى على مهارة الكتابة

Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Wind .... generate electricity for the local community. *(Etay El Baroud - Beheira 2023)*
   a. alarms b. turbines c. machines d. panels
2. Pollution isn't only one problem, but it .... many problems. *(Dokki - Giza 2023)*
   a. causes b. saves c. does d. helps
3. We should .... all our plastic to use it again. *(Ismailia 2023)*
   a. burn b. recycle c. throw d. damage
4. We should use .... on buildings in sunny countries like Egypt. *(Damanhour - Beheira 2023)*
   a. solar panels b. snowboards
   c. washing machines d. tablets
5. Scientists are trying to solve .... problems. *(Aswan 2023)*
   a. environmentally b. environmental
   c. tradition d. music
6. Sunglasses .... people's eyes from the sun. *(Qena 2023)*
   a. take b. protect c. buy d. give
7. I decided to join the .... project to help the environment. *(Wasat - Alexandria 2023)*
   a. conservation b. conversation
   c. ocean d. liquid
8. Sama .... tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow. *(South Giza - Giza 2023)*
   a. played b. is played c. is playing d. to play
9. The girls are going to .... Aswan next year. *(Dokki - Giza 2023)*
   a. visit b. visited
   c. visiting d. visits
10. The traffic is slow. We .... to be late *(Shibin El Kom - Menoufia 2023)*
   a. gone b. going c. are going d. gone

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. On Sunday at 8 o'clock, I .... (meet) my friend. *(6th october - Giza 2023)*
2. The sky is cloudy ! It is going .... (rain). *(Aswan 2023)*
3. The waiter is carrying a lot of dishes, They are going .... (fall) *(Qena 2023)*
4. At the moment, I .... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake. *(Berket El Sabaa - Menoufia 2023)*
5. Mum is going to .... (making) a cake. *(Sirs El Lyaan - Menoufia 2023)*

Test on unit 11

• Understand • Apply • Create

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. We have .... air pollution in our city.
   a. many b. much c. few d. little
2. .... can reduce pollution.
   a. Environment b. Homes c. Traffic d. Trees
3. Trees are good for the ....
   a. environment b. traffic c. houses d. pollution
4. People shoud .... trees.
   a. eat b. cut c. plant d. reduce

(Sidi Salem - Kafr El Sheikh 2023)

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Randa asks Rasha about her plan for this evening.

Randa : Good afternoon, Rasha. How are you ?
Rasha : Good afternoon, Randa. (1) ....
Randa : Where are you going this evening ?
Rasha : (2) ....
Randa : (3) .... ?
Rasha : To meet my brother. He's coming from Malaysia.
Randa : (4) .... ?
Rasha : His plane arrives at 8 o'clock.
Randa : I hope he arrives safely.
Rasha : (5) ....

(Dokki - Giza 2023)

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following passage then answer the questions :

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them : we can use remote control. We can control drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help find a solution to some environmental problems. Some companies are going to use drones instead of lorries to make deliveries. This helps the environment because drones don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as lorries. **They** also can help wildlife.

Drones help us see if there are any problems in faraway places. For example, we can use drones to save wildlife after floods or fires. In addition, they can help people by sending them to dangerous places like checking wind turbines. This is not an easy job. We can even use drones to plant trees. They can drop seeds onto the ground in places where people can't go. Drones don't need a rest. What a **smart** invention they are!

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" mean ?
   a. lorries b. companies c. drones d. deliveries
2. The opposite of the word "**smart**" is ....
   a. intelligent b. foolish c. wise d. clever
3. Checking wind turbines is not a/an .... job.
   a. difficult b. scary c. nice d. easy

b. Answer the following questions :

4. How can drones help the environment ?
   ....
5. Do you think drones are useless ? Why / Why not ?
   ....
6. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ....

(Etay El Baroud - Beheira 2023)

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... are used from the ground by a remote control.
   a. Helicopters b. Trains c. Drones d. Planes

(Helwan - Cairo 2022)

2. The teenagers have made a lot of .... to help clean drinking water.
   a. inventions b. conservation c. invitation d. environment

3. It is getting hotter these days because of the .... change.
   a. ocean b. sea c. climate d. river
4. SB Deepika Kurup invented a green .... for cleaning water and making it safe to drink.
   a. system b. room c. house d. colour
5. I felt afraid because the film was ....
   a. interesting b. fantastic c. exciting d. scary
6. When animals die, they .... *(Tahta - Sohag 2023)*
   a. recycle b. reuse c. decay d. stay
7. There is too much .... in the streets of Cairo.
   a. flood b. traffic c. holiday d. filter
8. There are dark clouds. It .... rain. *(Edfu - Aswan 2022)*
   a. will b. is going to c. goes d. is going
9. Next week, we .... trees on the roof of our school. *(Qena - Qena 2022)*
   a. have planted b. are planted
   c. be able to plant d. are going to plant
10. He can't answer the phone, he .... at the moment.
   a. studying b. studied c. studies d. is studying
   (New Cairo - Cairo 2022)

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I .... (visit) the dentist at 7.30 this evening. *(East Alexandria - Alexandria 2022)*
2. What .... (you go) to do next weekend ?
3. Sally is going .... (spend) a week in Alex.
4. We've booked two tickets. We .... (watch) a play in the theatre tomorrow. *(Naser - Beni Suef 2022)*

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Plans for your next holiday"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 11 for Al-Azhar students اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Ahmed : Whose bike is that ?
Sami : (1) ....
Ahmed : (2) .... ?
Sami : My father.
Ahmed : Why did your father buy you a bike ?
Sami : Because I passed my exams.
Ahmed : What a beautiful bike !
Sami : (3) ....

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. local – help – people – make – **Tourists** – the – money.
....
2. are – do – at – **What** – going to – you – the weekend ?
....
3. don't – much – **Drones** – make – noise.
....
4. about – rock – **How** – climbing – trying – tomorrow ?
....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... travel to Alexandria ?
a. Are they b. Are they going
c. Will they d. Are they going to
2. Scientists want to use a .... to take plastic rubbish from the sea.
a. drone b. panel c. system d. diary
3. They work .... a great project to help the environment.
a. on b. of c. to d. at
4. The man is driving too fast. He .... have an accident.
a. is going to b. is going c. will d. going to
5. When ice melts, it turns into the .... form.
a. sold b. liquid c. gas d. soft

4 Write a paragraph of five sentences about :

"Beautiful places in Egypt"

....
....

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Amal are talking about going to the library.

Mona : Where are you going this afternoon ?

Amal : (1) ....

a. I am going to sleep
b. I am going to read a book
c. I am going to the library
d. I am going to play tennis

Mona : (2) .... ?

a. Why are you going there
b. When are you going there
c. Who are you going with
d. How are you going there

Amal : To read my favourite book there.

Mona : Can I come with you ?

Amal : (3) ....

a. No, I can't
b. Yes, with pleasure
c. Sorry I'm busy
d. You can go tomorrow

Mona : Thank you. (4) .... ?

a. What time does the library open
b. What time does the film end
c. What time does the play end
d. What time does the film start

Amal : It opens at 10 a.m.

Mona : Could you bring some food ?

Amal : (5) ....

a. Yes, I like music
b. Yes, I like acting
c. Yes, I like doing make-up
d. No, food isn't allowed in the library

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. They are .... (**visit**) the Pyramids next week.
a. visited b. visiting
c. visit d. visit to

7. Look outside, it is raining .... (**yesterday**).
a. last week b. usually
c. at the moment d. next Monday

8. They .... (**was**) visiting Aswan next year.
a. is b. were
c. are d. have

9. We have booked two tickets. We .... (**watch**) a play in the theatre.
a. watching b. are watching
c. would watch d. 'll watch

10. My mother is going to .... (**making**) a cake.
a. makes b. make to c. make d. made

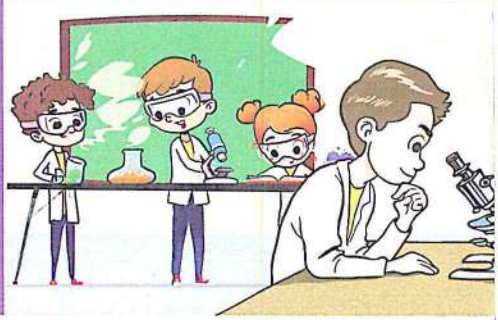


Unit 12 Languages and learning

SB pages 54:63 WB pages 107:113

Objectives :

- **Reading :**
  A quiz about learning styles; an article about languages in Africa; an advert for a language school
- **Writing :**
  An internet post giving advice; a study plan; an application form
- **Listening :**
  A conversation about future plans; a radio interview about animal communication
- **Speaking :**
  Talking about learning styles; a presentation about your studies; a discussion about study tips; giving advice, opinions and suggestions
- **Language :**
  A review of tenses
- **Life Skills :**
  Self-management; Communication skills; Critical thinking



Lessons 1 & 2

SB pages 54 : 57
WB pages 107 & 108

I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

learner (n)	متعلم - دارس	future plans	خطط مستقبلية
mostly (adv)	في الأغلب - عمومًا	disappointed (adj)	مُحبَط
repair = fix (ed) (v)	يصلح	proud (adj)	فخور
choose (v)	يختار	summarise (d) (v)	يلخص
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	pass (ed) (v)	يجتاز - ينجح
experiment (n)	تجربة علمية	achieve (d) (v)	يحقق - ينجز
laboratory (n)	معمل	dream (ed) (v) (n)	يحلم / حلم
university (n)	جامعة	language (n)	لغة

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائي يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

learner - explain - passed - proud - languages

1. Please, sir. Can you .... this lesson again ?
2. Hend .... her exam yesterday.
3. I'm .... to be Egyptian.
4. French, Arabic and English are ....

Lesson 1

SB pages 54 & 55 WB page 107

summary (n)	ملخص	dictionary (n)	قاموس
quiz (n)	اختبار قصير	sounds (n)	أصوات
free time (n)	وقت الفراغ	podcast (n)	نشرة / تسجيل صوتي
cloudy (adj)	ملبد بالغيوم	art class (n)	حصة الرسم
TV show	عرض تلفزيوني	follow (ed) (v)	يتتبع - يتبع
directions (n)	اتجاهات	results (n)	نتائج
instructions (n)	تعليمات	review (n)	مقال نقدي

Lesson 2

SB pages 56 & 57 WB page 108

driving test	اختبار القيادة	village (n)	قرية
laugh (ed)(v)	يضحك	rain (ed) (v), (n)	تمطر / مطر
factory (n)	مصنع	*castle (n)*	قلعة
menu (n)	قائمة [الطعام]	manager (n)	مدير

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع		Past الماضى	P.P. التصريف الثالث
tell	يخبر	told	told
drive	يقود	drove	driven
fly	يطير - يسافر جوًا	flew	flown
cut down	يقطع	cut down	cut down
get	يحصل على	got	got

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

pass	be successful in a test or exam	ينجح - يجتاز
disappointed	not happy because something you wanted did not happen or was not very good	محبط
explain	make something clear or easy to understand by giving reasons for it	يفسر / يشرح
proud	feeling happy because you or people you know have done something well	فخور
mostly	in most cases/most of the time	في الأغلب / عمومًا
fail	not be successful	يفشل

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	up a song	يؤلف أغنية	**do**	an experiment	يقوم بتجربة علمية
	a video	يقوم بتصوير فيديو		things	يقوم بعمل أشياء
take	photographs	يلتقط صور فوتوغرافية		an English exercise	يؤدى تدريب لغة انجليزية
	a quiz	يؤدي اختبار قصير		a project	يقوم بعمل مشروع
	an exam	يؤدى امتحان		a research	يقوم بعمل بحث
	notes	يدون ملاحظات	**get**	a job	يحصل على وظيفة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
pass	يجتاز - ينجح	succeed in	fail	يفشل - يخفق
continue	يستمر	go on	stop	يتوقف
repair	يصلح	fix / mend	damage / spoil	يفسد / يدمر
cloudy	ملىء بالغيوم	dark / unclear	clear / sunny / bright	مشمس / صافى / ساطع

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–er	تحول الفعل إلى اسم يدل على وظيفة	manager	مدير
–ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	directions instructions	اتجاهات تعليمات
–ed	تحول الفعل إلى صفة	disappointed	محبط

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The opposite of "pass" is "............" .
   a. fail b. feel c. fall d. feed
2. "Go on" has the same meaning as " .... ".
   a. stop b. give up c. continue d. pass
3. To turn "direct" into a noun, we add the suffix "............".
   a. –ion b. –able c. –al d. –ity
4. "Disappoint" is a verb, but "disappointed" is a/an "............".
   a. preposition b. adjective c. adverb d. noun
5. I want to repair my car. The word "repair" means "............".
   a. damage b. spoil c. pass d. mend

General Notes on Reading & Listening

1 most - mostly

* most + اسم — معظم

- **Most** children like playing.

* the most + صفة * — الأكثر (في صفة معينة) يأتي بعدها صفة طويلة
  - Rahma is **the most** beautiful girl in class.
* mostly + صفة — في الأغلب
  - It was **mostly** dark today.

(SB page 55)

2 about

* about (prep) — عن (حرف جر)
  - He is talking **about** his childhood.
* about = nearly — حوالى - تقريبًا
  - WB She writes a summary in **about** 15 - 20 words.

(SB page 56 / WB page 107)

3 find it difficult to + inf. — يجد من الصعب أن

- WB Marwan **finds it difficult to** understand science books.

(WB page 107)

4 busy + (inf. +ing) — مشغول بـ ويتبعها (inf. + ing)

- SB You are always **busy** making and repairing things. *(SB page 55)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions — تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions

achieve my dream	احقق حلمي	work hard	يعمل بجد
there wasn't much sun	لم يكن الجو مشمس	start French classes	يبدأ الدراسة في فصول تعلم اللغة الفرنسية
see the word in your head	ترى الكلمة التى تخطر ببالك	give a presentation	يقدم عرضًا تقديميًا

Prepositions

It is a great way to + (inf.)	إنها طريقة رائعة لـ...	work out	يستنتج - يستنبط
		disappointed about	محبط بشأن
come out	يخرج	a ticket for ...	تذكرة لـ...
continue to + (inf.)	يستمر في أن...	learn how to + (inf.)...	يتعلم كيف يقوم بـ...
come back to	يعود إلى	ask for advice	يطلب نصيحة
look in a dictionary	يبحث في قاموس	ask for direction	يسأل عن الاتجاهات (للوصول لمكان)
learn in different ways	يتعلم بطرق مختلفة		
at least	على الأقل	agree with	يتفق مع

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من
قطع الفهم
ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

on Lesson 1 SB page 54

Quiz

What type of **learner**[1] are you ? Take the **quiz**[2] to find out !

1- Which of these things do you **prefer**[3] to do in your **free time**[4] ?

a- Read a book.
b- Watch a film or **TV show**[5].
c- Play a video game.
d- Listen to music.



2- If you want to learn how to play a new sport, what do you do ?

a- Read online about how to play it.
b- Watch a video of people playing it.
c- Start playing and learn as you play.
d- Ask for advice[6] from someone who can play it.



3- You need to tell your class about a new English book. What would you prefer to do ?

a- Write a **review**[7] of it.
b- Make a short video about it.
c- Act[8] some of the book with friends.
d- Read some of the book to your class.



4- Someone asks you for **directions**[9]. What do you do ?

a- Write down[10] **instructions**[11].
b- Draw **a map**[12].
c- Use your hands and body to explain.
d- Tell them where to go.



(1) مُتعلم	(2) امتحان قصير	(3) يفضل	(4) وقت الفراغ	(5) عرض تليفزيوني	(6) يطلب النصيحة
(7) مقال نقدي	(8) يمثل	(9) اتجاهات	(10) يدون	(11) تعليمات	(12) خريطة

5- If you don't know how to **spell a word**(13), what do you do ?
a- Look in a **dictionary**(14).
b- Try to work out how to spell it.
c- Write it down to see if it looks right.
d- Say the word slowly to hear the **sounds**(15).

(13) يتهجى كلمة | (14) قاموس | (15) أصوات

• on Lesson 1 SB page 55

I chose(1) mostly(2) a :



You learn best by reading and writing. You like reading books or writing stories. You love words and learn best by reading about something and **taking notes**(3).

I chose mostly b :



You learn best by seeing things. You love to watch videos and look at **diagrams**(4). You love films and **art**(5). You learn things better if you can see them.

I chose mostly c :



You learn best by doing things. You are always busy making and **repairing**(6) things. You learn things best by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to **understand**(7) by listening or reading.

I chose mostly d :



You learn by listening. You love music and are often talking ! You find it easier to learn by listening to people **explain**(8) things to you and by **discussing**(9) things with them.

(1) اخترت | (2) عمومًا / فى الغالب | (3) تدوين الملاحظات | (4) رسوم توضيحية
(5) الرسم / الفن | (6) يصلح | (7) يفهم | (8) يفسر | (9) يناقش

• on Lesson 1 WB page 107

1- Habiba likes **summarising**(1) a text. For example, if a text is 100 words long, she writes **a summary**(2) in about 15-20 words. Habiba learns best by writing .



(1) يلخص | (2) ملخص / تلخيص

2- Fares remembers things **easily**[3]. I showed him a map of how to walk to my house yesterday. He says he can see the map in his head today ! Fares learns by seeing things .



3- For Dareen, the best way to remember **English grammar**[4] is to **make up**[5] a song about it !
Then she sings the song quietly to herself. She says it is a great way to remember **irregular verbs**[6] ! Dareen learns best by **listening**.



4- Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does **an experiment**[7] in the **laboratory** [8], he always understands what is happening ! Marwan learns best by doing things .



(3) بسهولة
(4) قواعد اللغة الانجليزية
(5) يؤلف
(6) الأفعال غير المنتظمة
(7) تجربة علمية
(8) معمل علوم

Answer the following questions :

Extracting information. استخراج المعلومات.

Learn 1. What is the best way to remember English grammar for Dareen ?

- For Dareen, the best way to remember English grammar is to make up a song about it.

Practise 2. How does Marwan learn best ?

....

Listening

- On Lesson 2 SB page 56

Fares :



My name's Fares. When I was young, I didn't use to like studying. But, one day, I **failed an exam**[1]. My father was **disappointed**[2]. He said that one day he wanted me to be the **manager**[3] of our family shop. He explained about all the **skills**[4] that I needed to work there : maths, reading, writing and English. Now I'm working hard to **pass my exams**[5] so I can make my family **proud**[6]. Next year, I'm starting **secondary school**[7] and I'll **continue**[8] to study hard !

(1) يرسب في الامتحان (2) محبط (3) مدير (4) مهارات (5) يجتاز الامتحانات (6) فخور (7) المدرسة الثانوية (8) يستمر

Nevine :



When I was nine, I was playing with my sister when I fell and hurt my arm. The doctor at the hospital was so clever and **kind**[9], so I decided *I wanted to be a doctor too ! I know it will be* hard to **achieve**[10] my **dream**[11]. I need to go to **university**[12] and pass lots of exams. My uncle lives in the USA so I'm going to study there when I'm older and then I want to **come back**[13] to Egypt and work in a hospital.

(9) عطوف / طيب | (10) ينجز / يحقق | (11) حلم | (12) جامعة | (13) يعود

on Lesson 2 SB page 57



When I was young, I wanted to be a **scientist**[1]. Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I will be a scientist ! I'm not really sure what I want to do, but my family are always telling me that school is very important and I need to study hard. I know I want to **travel**[2] so I am learning lots of **languages**[3]. Next year, I am starting **French classes**[4]. I am going to take the exam to go to secondary school and I hope I will pass !

(1) عالم | (2) يسافر | (3) لغات | (4) حصص لغة فرنسية

on Lesson 2 WB page 108

My **village**[1] didn't use to have any **tourists**[2], but now lots of **visitors**[3] come here every year. At the moment, lots of American tourists are taking photographs of the **castle**[4]. Last year, we had visitors from China and Japan, too! Next year, they are going to build a new hotel in the park. I am disappointed about this, because I think they will **cut down**[5] some of the trees to build it.

(1) قرية | (2) سياح | (3) زائرين | (4) قلعة | (5) يقطع

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. After secondary school, we 'll go to the ....
   a. castle b. factory c. workshop d. university
2. We go to the .... in science lessons.
   a. library b. garden c. museum d. laboratory
3. The teacher asked us to .... the story in three lines only.
   a. fix b. read c. summarise d. learn
4. We did the science .... in the laboratory.
   a. experiment b. expert c. experience d. export

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. SB It is hard to .... on what job you want to do.
   a. pass b. take c. do d. decide
   (East Port Said - Port Said 2023)
6. WB The best .... study their subjects for at least one hour a day.
   a. learners b. farmers c. managers d. parents
7. He works hard to .... his dream. *(Tamiya - Fayoum 2022)*
   a. fail b. achieve c. miss d. lose
8. The engineer is coming to .... our phone tomorrow morning.
   a. repair b. smell c. cause d. throw
   (Sumusta - Beni Suef 2022)
9. When he failed in the test, he felt ....
   a. bored b. excited c. proud d. disappointed

El-Moasser Exercises

10. Read the .... well before turning on this washing machine. It's important.
    a. summary b. instructions c. diagram d. dictionary
11. I searched for the .... to order fast food.
    a. list b. menu c. view d. plan
12. I learn best by seeing things, so I love to look at ....
    a. wards b. songs c. researchers d. diagrams

Definitions

13. .... means feeling happy because you or people you know have done something well.
    a. Disappointed b. Bored c. Angry d. Proud
14. .... is to be successful in a test or exam.
    a. Pass b. Back c. Bend d. Hit

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

15. I'm sorry, I don't agree .... you.
   a. in   b. of   c. with   d. for
16. The teacher asked us to .... research about the environment.
   a. make   b. do   c. take   d. give

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

Asking and answering questions about styles of learning

توجيه الأسئلة والإجابة عليها عن طرق التعلم

Questions	Answers
1. How do you prefer to learn ? - كيف تفضل أن تتعلم ؟	- I prefer to learn in different ways. I don't like doing the same things. - أفضل التعلم بطرق مختلفة. لا احب فعل نفس الأشياء.
2. What type of classes are your favourite ? - ما نوع الدروس / الحصص المفضلة بالنسبة لك ؟	- I would like classes when we get to do things and not only listen or read. - أحب الحصص التي نتعلم بها فعل الأشياء وليس فقط الاستماع والقراءة.
3. What type of learning would you like to do more ? - أي من طرق التعلم تود أن تؤديها أكثر ؟	- I like to learn by seeing things; watching videos and looking at diagrams. - أرغب في التعلم بواسطة رؤية الأشياء ومشاهدة الفيديوهات والنظر إلى الرسوم التوضيحية.
4. What type of learning would you like to do less ? - ما طريقة التعلم التى تود أن تؤديها بشكل أقل ؟	- I would like to learn less by listening. - أنا أود أن اتعلم باستخدام الاستماع بشكل أقل.

3. Writing

مهارة الكتابة

"Ways of learning" طرق التعلم

1. There are many types of learners.
   ١. يوجد العديد من أنواع المتعلمين.
2. Some people prefer learning by reading books others prefer watching films.
   ٢. يفضل بعض الناس التعلم عن طريق قراءة الكتب والبعض الآخر يفضل مشاهدة الأفلام.
3. Learning to play sports is different.
   ٣. تعلم ممارسة الرياضة مختلف.
4. Some people learn best by doing things. They like to make and repair things.
   ٤. بعض الناس يتعلمون أفضل عن طريق فعل الأشياء، فإنهم يحبون أن يصنعون ويصلحون الأشياء.
5. Others learn by listening to people explaining things.
   ٥. آخرون يتعلمون عن طريق الاستماع إلى الناس وهم يشرحون الأشياء.

III Language

Review on tenses مراجعة على الأزمنة

Remember تذكر

Present tenses أزمنة المضارع

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I / They / We / You (فاعل جمع) + inf. (المصدر)

He / She / It (فاعل مفرد) + inf. (المصدر) + s/es/ies

يستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتعبير عن العادات الشخصية والحقائق العلمية الثابتة.

ex. - My uncle lives in the USA.

- The sun rises in the east.

2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

I / He / She / It / (اسم مفرد) / We / You / They / (اسم جمع) + am / is / are + inf. المصدر + ing

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يقع الآن.

ex. I'm emailing my uncle now.

يستخدم أيضًا زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات مستقبلية.

ex. Next year, he's starting secondary school.

Past tenses أزمنة الماضي

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. "used to" for regular past habits and routines :

تستخدم [used to] للتعبير عن العادات والأعمال الروتينية في الماضي

Formation التكوين

A — Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

في الإثبات نستخدم [used to] بمعنى أعتاد أن

Subject (الفاعل) + used to + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

ex. I used to play basketball.

B — Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

للنفي نستخدم [didn't use to] :

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + use to + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

ex. I didn't use to play tennis.

2. The past continuous tense : زمن الماضي المستمر

Formation التكوين

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + was + [inf. + ing]
You / They / We/ اسم جمع + were + [inf. + ing]

ويستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا في الماضي وقطعه حدث آخر.

ex. I was playing tennis with my sister when it started to rain.

Future forms صيغ المستقبل

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. Future with "(be) going to" المستقبل باستخدام (be) going to

يستخدم للتعبير عن التخطيط المسبق والنية لفعل شيء في المستقبل.

Formation التكوين

1 — Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

Subject	be		
I	→ am	+ going to	+ inf. (مصدر الفعل)
He, She, It, أو اسم مفرد	→ is	+ going to	+ inf. (مصدر الفعل)
You, We, They, أو اسم جمع	→ are	+ going to	+ inf. (مصدر الفعل)

ex. I'm going to go to university.

2 Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

Subject (الفاعل) + am / is / are + not + going to + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

ex. - They are not going to **visit** Alexandria.
- He is not going to **eat** fish.

2. Future with "will"

المستقبل باستخدام (will)

◂ يستخدم للتعبير عن تنبؤات مستقبلية بدون دليل واضح.

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject (الفاعل) + will ('ll) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

ex. He will go to the zoo.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject (الفاعل) + will not (won't) + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

ex. He won't go to school tomorrow.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Gamal .... at the moment. *(Gomrok - Alexandria 2023)*
   a. is studying b. studied c. studies d. study
2. They are going to .... their flat next week. *(Abou Homos - Beheira 2023)*
   a. painted b. paints c. painting d. paint
3. He .... spend most of his money on toys. *(Matay - Minya 2022)*
   a. use b. uses c. used to d. using
4. About five million people .... in Alexandria. *(Abu El Matamir - Beheira 2022)*
   a. live b. lives c. is living d. living

5. WB Nadia looked at the menu and .... to have fish with rice.
   a. decided b. decides c. decide d. deciding
6. SB Now I find science very difficult so I don't think I .... be a scientist.
   a. will b. won't c. shouldn't d. have
7. SB I was playing tennis with my sister when it .... to rain.
   a. was starting b. started c. starts d. start

El-Moasser Exercises

8. What .... you doing yesterday evening ?
   a. are b. were c. was d. is
9. When it started to rain, I .... home.
   a. was going b. go c. am going d. will go
10. They usually .... to school by bus every day.
   a. go b. goes c. going d. gone
11. Listen ! The boy .... in a loud voice.
   a. talk b. talked c. is talking d. talking
12. My father didn't .... to have a mobile when he was young.
   a. using b. uses c. used d. use

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Aly .... (leave) to Cairo at the moment. *(Gomrok - Alexandria 2023)*
2. Yesterday , we .... (visit) Siwa Museum. *(Aswan - 2023)*
3. .... (Do) you going to see the concert ? *(El Ameriya - Alexandria 2022)*
4. WB My village .... (not use) have any tourists, but now lots of visitors come here every year.
5. SB When I .... (be) young, I wanted to be a scientist.
6. Hanin .... (doesn't) go to school yesterday. *(El Tor - South Sinai 2022)*

El-Moasser Exercises

7. It .... (rains), I can see some dark clouds.
8. I think it .... (be) hot this summer.
9. I .... (not used) swim when I was four.
10. My uncle .... (work) in a big oil company now.

General Exercises On LESSONS 1 & 2

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Marwan finds it .... to understand science books.
   a. difficult b. sick c. easy d. heavy
2. Marwan does a/an .... in the laboratory.
   a. mistake b. hobby
   c. sport d. experiment
3. Marwan learns best by doing ....
   a. listening b. things c. writing d. speaking
4. Marwan likes ....
   a. history b. technology c. geography d. sports

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rawan is asking Soha about her future plans.

Rawan : Do you have any future plans, Soha ?

Soha : (1) ....

Rawan : (2) .... ?

Soha : First, I want my parents to be proud of me.

Rawan : (3) .... ?

Soha : By studying hard to be a famous doctor.

Rawan : What are you going to do when you become a doctor ?

Soha : (4) ....

Rawan : How are you going to help the poor ?

Soha : (5) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The old man gave us the .... to get to the library.
   a. recipes b. sounds c. directions d. results

   (El Saf - Giza 2023)
2. When the boy failed, his parents were ....
   a. disappointed b. happy c. pleased d. relaxed
3. My car doesn't work. I'll ask a mechanic to .... it.
   a. break b. change c. repair d. invent
4. I'm so .... of my father. He is a great doctor.
   a. angry b. sad c. disappointed d. proud

5. Salem is .... tired. He has done a lot of work this morning.
   a. must   b. the most   c. at most   d. mostly
6. SB The best way to remember English grammar is to .... a song about it.
   a. take   b. do   c. make   d. get
7. My teacher always asks me to write a .... of long texts.
   a. postcard   b. climate   c. song   d. summary
8. He usually .... milk for breakfast.
   a. to drink   b. drinking   c. drinks   d. drink
9. While I .... lunch, my cousins came. *(Abnub - Assiut 2022)*
   a. had   b. have   c. was having   d. will have
10. WB I think they .... down some trees to build a new hotel.
    a. will cut   b. cut   c. cutting   d. to cut

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. In the future, I think there .... (be) houses under oceans. *(Benha - Qalyubia 2023)*
2. WB Last year, we .... (have) visitors from China and Japan.
3. Where .... (is) you going to spend your next weekend ? *(El Zarqa - Damietta 2022)*
4. Did you use .... (read) short stories ? *(Kerdasa - Giza 2022)*

5 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :

[illegible]

To your friend Sama telling her about what job you'd like to do in the future. Your friend's email address is sama@gmail.com.
Your name is Maha and your email address is maha@yahoo.com.

New message ×

Secure | https:

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,
....
....
....
....
....

Lessons 3 & 4

SB pages 58 : 60
WB pages 109 & 110



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

body language	لغة الجسد	expert (n)	خبير
eye contact	التواصل البصري [بالعين]	dialect (n)	لغة محلية - لهجة
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	national (adj)	محلى - قومى
voice (n)	صوت [بشرى]	advantages (n)	مميزات
sound (n)	صوت [شيء]	identity (n)	هوية
copy (ied) (v) , (n)	ينسخ - يقلد / نسخة	connect (ed) (v)	يربط - يصل
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	community (n)	مجتمع
multilingual (adj)	متعدد اللغات	bilingual (adj)	ثنائي اللغة

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ **Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :**

voice - copy - Advantages - dialect - Facial

1. Every area in Egypt has its own .... They speak differently.
2. .... expressions help us to know what the person wants to say.
3. "..................." is the opposite of "disadvantages".
4. Raise your.................., please. I can't hear you.

Lesson 3

SB pages 58 &59 WB page 109

miss (ed)(v)	يفتقد	dance (d) (v)	يرقص
professor (n)	أستاذ جامعي	scared (adj)	مرعوب - خائف
lovely (adj)	فاتن - جميل	possible (adj)	ممكن - محتمل
bright (adj)	ذكى - لامع	field (n)	حقل - ملعب
serious (adj)	جاد	side (n)	جانب
bees (n)	نحل	role - play (ed) (v)	يقوم بلعب الادوار

UNIT 12

Lesson 4

SB page 60 WB page 110

normally (adv)	بشكل طبيعي	home language	اللغة الأم
believe (d) (v)	يعتقد	southwest (n)	جنوب غرب
whole (adj)	كامل	crossword (n)	كلمات متقاطعة
	Languages لغات		
Italian	اللغة الإيطالية	German	اللغة الألمانية
French	اللغة الفرنسية	Romansh	اللغة الرومانشية
English	اللغة الانجليزية	Portuguese	اللغة البرتغالية

Conjugation of Irregular Verbs

تصريف الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present المضارع	**Past** الماضى	**P.P.** التصريف الثالث
mean يعنى	meant	meant

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

body language	the way you move your body, that shows people what you are feeling لغة الجسد
eye contact	if two people make eye contact, they look at each other at the same time التواصل البصري
facial expression	the look on someone's face showing what they feel or think تعبيرات الوجه
identities	the qualities that make you different to other people هويات
connect	join two things or places together يربط - يصل
expert	someone who has a lot of skills in or knowledge about something خبير
advantage	something good about a situation that helps you ميزة
dialect	a form of language that people speak in a particular part of a country لهجة / لغة محلية
voice	the sounds that are made when people speak or sing صوت بشرى
multilingual	be able to speak more than two languages متعدد اللغات
national	relating to or typical of a whole country and its people قومى - محلى
touch	put your hand onto something or someone يلمس

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة		Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد	
national	قومى - محل	local	international	دولى / عالمى
true	صحيح	correct	untrue	غير صحيح
possible	ممكن / محتمل	probable	impossible	مستحيل

Prefixes & Suffixes مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
–ion	تحول الفعل إلى اسم	communication expression	اتصال تعبير
multi–	تكون الصفة وتعنى معنى عديد	multilingual	متعدد اللغات
bi–	تكون الصفة وتعنى معنى اثنين	bilingual	ثنائى اللغة
–al	تحول الاسم لصفة	facial	متعلق بالوجه
–ese	تكون الصفة الدالة على الجنسية	Portuguese	برتغالى الجنسية
–an	تكون الصفة الدالة على الجنسية	European	أوروبى الجنسية

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

1. To get the nationality from the word "Europe", we add the suffix "..............".
   a. –al b. –ese c. –an d. –ity
2. "Communicate" is a verb, but "communication" is a/an ....
   a. adjective b. adverb c. noun d. verb
3. To get the opposite of "true", we add the prefix "..............".
   a. dis- b. un- c. in- d. ir-

General Notes on Reading & Listening

* **field**
  * **field(n)** حقل...
    - Farmers are working in their **fields**.
  * **field(n)** ملعب...
    SB All the players in the blue team are leaving the **field** slowly.

(WB page 109)

Important Expressions & Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
use body language	يستخدم لغة الجسد	make noise	يصدر ضوضاء
have advantages	لديه مميزات	give identity	يعطي هوية
make eye contact	يقوم بالتواصل البصري	soft voice	صوت رقيق
bring together	يجمع [بين]	copy sounds	يقلد الأصوات
Prepositions			
communicate with	يتواصل مع	on the internet	يستخدم الإنترنت/ متصل بالإنترنت
forms of communication	أشكال التواصل	spend time with...	يقضي وقت مع...
connect to	يربط بـ	have their heads down	يخفضوا رؤوسهم [دليل على الحزن]
at the front door	عند الباب الأمامي		
go away	يذهب بعيدًا	on a farm	في مزرعة

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Listening

• on Lesson 3 SB page 58



Munir : What do you know about animals ? Do you think they understand you ? Today I'm talking to Dr Ahmed who is going to tell us about how animals **communicate**(1). Hello Dr Ahmed.

Dr Ahmed : Hello.

Munir : Let's talk about the animals that you often see on **a farm**(2). My brother is a farmer and I think that his cat understands him sometimes. Is that **possible**(3) ?

(1) يتواصل | (2) مزرعة | (3) ممكن



Dr Ahmed : I'm sure the cat understands when he is angry and understands words like 'dinner', for example.

Munir : But of course, the cat can't talk to him.

Dr Ahmed : No, animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can **copy**[4] sounds. But animals do communicate, both to us and to each other. One **way**[5] animals communicate is by using **body language**[6]. For example, horses touch noses to say hello to another horse they like and **bees**[7] dance when they find a good flower.



Munir : So can I learn to communicate better with animals then ?

Dr Ahmed : **From my point of view**[8], it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you. You should be careful about how you use your body and **voice**[9]. So, if an animal is **scared**[10], you should move slowly and use a soft voice. How about listening to the way your cat makes a noise ? Does it sound different if it is frightened, wants some food ? I think it will !

(4) يُقلد | (5) أسلوب / طريقة | (6) لغة الجسد | (7) النحل | (8) من وجهة نظرى | (9) صوت بشرى | (10) خائف

on Lesson 3 WB page 109



Ola : I'm looking after my baby cousin Lina today. Isn't she lovely?

Injy : Yes, but how can you understand what she wants?

Ola : From my point of view, you should first look at the baby's facial expressions, so you know if they are happy or sad.

Injy : That's true.

Ola : I think Lina's tooth is hurting her. You can see from her body language.

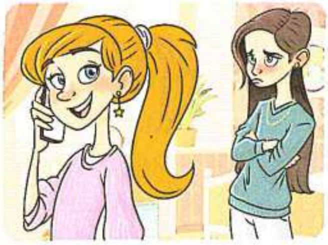
Injy : What should we do?

Ola : Let's try to make her laugh.

Injy : Good idea. How about singing a funny song!

Reading

• on Lesson 3 SB page 59



Can anyone give me some advice ? I have an older sister (she's three years older than me). We used to be best friends, but now she doesn't want to **talk to**[1] me very much. She is always **on the internet**[2] or talking to people on her phone. She tells me to **go away**[3] if I try to talk to her. I miss being friends with her. How can I get her to spend time with me again ? Please give me some advice !
Yours, Radwa

(1) يتحدث إلى	(2) يستخدم الانترنت	(3) تبتعد

• on Lesson 3 WB page 109

Forms of communication

1- Shady is waiting at the **front door**[1] of his friend's house. He knows someone is inside the house because he can hear sounds.

2- It's the end of **a football match**[2]. All the **players**[3] in the blue team are leaving the **field**[4] very slowly. They all **have their heads down**[5]. We know they are disappointed with the **result**[6] by their **body language**[7].



3- A **blind man**[8] walks into a clothes shop and buys a shirt. He chooses the shirt by touch.

4- Malak and Randa are sitting on different sides of a busy library. They must be quiet in the library. Randa knows that Malak wants to leave because she makes **eye contact**[9] with her.

5- Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their **facial expressions**[10].

(1) الباب الأمامي	(2) مباراة كرة قدم	(3) لاعبين	(4) ملعب / ساحة المباراة	(5) يخفضون رؤوسهم لأسفل
(6) نتيجة	(7) لغة الجسد	(8) رجل كفيف	(9) التواصل البصري	(10) تعبيرات الوجه

on Lesson 4 SB page 60

Multilingual[1] Africa



Experts[2] believe that there are more than 2,100 languages spoken in Africa. Many **African**[3] people speak three languages : their **dialect**[4] (or home language), the **national**[5] language and another European language such as English, **French**[6] or **Portuguese**[7] that they learn at school. This means they are multilingual. Of course, many people speak more than three languages ! People who speak different languages have lots of **advantages**[8]. If you speak more than one language, you can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better.

It also gives people different **identities**[9]. If you speak your home language, it **connects**[10] you to your community. Your national language connects you to your country and all the other people in it. An international language, like English, connects you to an **international community**[11].

(1) متعدد اللغات
(2) خبراء
(3) أفريقي
(4) لهجة / لغة محلية
(5) محلى / قومى
(6) اللغة الفرنسية
(7) اللغة البرتغالية
(8) مميزات
(9) هويات / كيانات
(10) يوصل - يربط
(11) المجتمع الدولي

on Lesson 4 WB page 110

The languages of Switzerland[1]

Switzerland is a small **European**[2] country. Here, you do not need to be an expert to speak many languages. That is because nearly all people in Switzerland are **multilingual**[3] : they speak the country's four **national**[4] languages. That is because each **area**[5] of Switzerland has always had its own **identity**[6] and its own language.



The parts of Switzerland near Italy speak Italian, the parts near Germany speak German and the parts near France speak French. In the **southwest**[7] of Switzerland, they also speak a **dialect**[8] called Romansh. Each language **connects**[9] the people with their area, but they are also very proud of their country.

(1) دولة سويسرا	(2) أوروبية	(3) متعدد اللغات	(4) قومي / محلي	(5) منطقة
(6) هوية / شخصية	(7) الجنوب الغربي	(8) لهجة / لغة محلية	(9) يصل - يربط	

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

Key vocabulary

1. In the library, we can't talk, so we communicate using eye ....
   a. voice b. smell c. contact d. dialect
2. Some birds can .... the voices like the parrots.
   a. take b. copy c. give d. find
3. Languages .... people together.
   a. connect b. speak c. understand d. protect
4. I think my brother isn't sleeping,I can hear his ....
   a. sound b. language c. voice d. ideas

SB , WB and Previous Exams

5. The .... are the qualities that make you different to other people.
   a. forms b. subjects c. identities d. similarities
   (Shoubrakheit - Beheira 2023)
6. SB A person who speaks lots of languages is ....
   a. national b. multilingual c. old d. different
   (Hosh Issa - Beheira 2022)
7. WB The .... is a person who knows a lot about a subject.
   a. tourist b. expert c. writer d. learner
8. People often use .... language in their everyday life.
   a. busy b. face c. body d. head
   (Tebin - Cairo 2022)
9. WB Some children are watching a film. We know the film is scary by their ....
   a. language b. eye contact
   c. facial expressions d. sounds

El-Moasser Exercises

10. The square has four ....
    a. shapes b. forms c. sides d. sizes
11. She is singing in a .... voice to make the baby sleep.
    a. hard b. high c. fast d. soft

▸ Definitions

12. ………………… means relating to or typical of a whole country and its people.
    a. International b. Normal c. National d. Strange
13. Something good about a situation that helps you is called a/an ………………… .
    a. advantage b. disadvantage c. expression d. language

▸ Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

14. You shouldn't ………………… noise in the library.
    a. do b. make c. listen d. hear
15. My father always tells me that everyone ………………… advantages.
    a. has b. goes c. gives d. brings
16. Using the internet today is the fastest ………………… of communication.
    a. frame b. form c. farm d. fair

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

▸ Discussion on the importance of learning languages

مناقشة عن أهمية تعلم اللغات

Questions	Answers
1. Do you feel different when you speak a different language ? Why ? - هل تشعر بالاختلاف عندما تتحدث بلغة مختلفة ؟ لماذا ؟	- Yes. Because it connects me with the international community. - نعم. لأنها تجعلني أتواصل بالمجتمع الدولي.
2. What other languages would you like to learn ? - ما اللغات الأخرى التي تود / ترغب أن تتعلمها ؟	- I would like to learn Turkish and French. - أرغب في تعلم اللغة التركية والفرنسية.



Speaking & Writing Corner

Paragraphs, E-mails & Dialogues للحصول على أعلى الدرجات فى أسئلة الـ
قم بإستمرار بحل تدريبات هذه الصفحة.

80 Dialogues
80 Paragraphs & E-mails

The importance of learning language

Step 1 Vocabulary
اختبر اتقانك للمفردات اللغوية

Read and complete :

1. Do you know the meaning of the word .... ? متعدد اللغات
   - Yes, I do.

2. Is learning .... very important ? اللغات الأجنبية
   - Yes, it is.

3. Do you think that learning foreign languages is helpful to you ?
   - Yes, I think so. Because it connects me with the international .... المجتمع

Step 2 Speaking
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة التحدث

Complete the following dialogue :

A : Can I ask you some questions ?
B : (1) ....
A : Do you know the meaning of the word multilingual ?
B : (2) ....
A : (3) .... ?
B : Yes, learning foreign languages is very important.
A : (4) .... ?
B : Because learning foreign languages connects you to the international community.
A : How many languages can you speak ?
B : (5) ....

Step 3 Writing
اختبر مدى اتقانك لمهارة الكتابة

Write a paragraph on :

"The importance of learning languages"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

III Language

1 Making suggestions : تقديم اقتراحات

هناك عدة صيغ لتقديم الاقتراحات

1. Let's + inf. مصدر الفعل — هيا بنا ....
2. Why don't you / we + inf. .... ? — لما لا ... ؟
3. Shall we + inf. .... ? — هلا فعلنا ... ؟
4. How about + [inf. + ing]... ? — ما رأيك في ... ؟

ex. - Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm.
- Why don't you / we go to the zoo ? - Shall we have a cold drink ?
- How about listening to how your cat makes a noise?

2 Giving advice إعطاء النصيحة

Subj. فاعل + should + inf. مصدر الفعل — ينبغي أن ....

ex. You should be careful about how you use your body and voice.

3 Giving opinion إعطاء الرأي

1. In my opinion / From my point of view, subj. فاعل + verb فعل ..... — من وجهة نظري ....
2. I think that + subj. فاعل + verb فعل ..... — أعتقد أن ....

ex. - From my point of view, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you.
- I think that it is very important to learn foreign languages.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. SB You .... be careful about how you use your body and voice.
a. shouldn't b. should c. will d. would
(Faqous - Sharkia 2023)

2. WB Let's .... to make her laugh.

a. tried b. tries c. try d. trying

3. WB Good idea! .... about singing a funny song ?

a. Who b. When c. How d. Why

4. WB I .... Lina's tooth is hurting her. You can see from her body language.

a. thinks b. think c. thought d. thinking

El-Moasser Exercises

5. Why don't you .... the football team ?

a. joins b. join c. joined d. joining

6. Shall we .... home now ?

a. going b. goes c. go d. to go

7. We should .... hard to pass the next quiz.

a. study b. studying c. studies d. studied

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

SB , WB and Previous Exams

1. Let's .... (went) to the club. *(Ismailia - Ismailia 2023)*
2. How about .... (play) football ? *(Nagah Hamady - Qena 2023)*
3. What about .... (cook) lunch now ? *(Helwan - Cairo 2022)*

El-Moasser Exercises

4. Why don't you .... (wearing) this nice scarf ?
5. Shall we .... (invited) Mira to the party ?
6. I should .... (learning) more than one language.
7. Why .... (haven't) you take part in the school play ?

General Exercises On LESSONS 3 & 4

• Understand • Apply • Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Yara is my .... sister.
   a. older b. younger c. taller d. baby
2. Yara is .... years old.
   a. 50 b. 15 c. 5 d. 51
3. Yara is always on the ....
   a. beach b. radio c. internet d. coast
4. Yara talks on .... for a long time.
   a. Facebook b. Messenger c. her phone d. internet

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Fadi is talking with his friend Alaa about going to the theatre.

Fadi : Hello Alaa !

Alaa : Hello Fadi ! Let's go to the theatre.
(1) .... ?

Fadi : There is an exciting play for Ali Rabea. (2) .... ?

Alaa : Yes, I know him. He is a funny actor.

Fadi : What time are we going to meet ?

Alaa : (3) .... ?

Fadi : How are we going to go to the theatre ?

Alaa : (4) .... It's not far.

Fadi : OK ! Let's meet at 7 : 15 at the theatre.

Alaa : (5) ....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB To understand a young baby, try to look at his .... expressions.
   a. facial b. body c. eye d. language
2. Mr Baleegh is multilingual. He speaks more than one ....
   a. expression b. language c. contact d. identity

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

3. Can you give me some .... ?
   a. address   b. advice   c. opinion   d. area

4. SB Some animals and birds can .... sounds.
   a. speak   b. write   c. communicate   d. copy

5. Rahma has a nice .... She sings well.
   a. sound   b. noise   c. voice   d. tip

6. Although she speaks Arabic, I can't understand her ....
   a. dialect   b. identity   c. nationality   d. contact

7. " .... " means to join things or places together.
   a. Copy   b. Connect   c. Touch   d. Look

8. Let's .... for a picnic.
   a. goes   b. going   c. to go   d. go

9. How about .... to music ?
   a. listening   b. to listen   c. listen   d. listens

10. You should .... careful about your possessions ممتلكات.
   a. are   b. am   c. be   d. were

(El-Ameriya – Alexandria 2023)

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

إجابات مقترحة في نهاية الكتاب

"The importance of languages"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

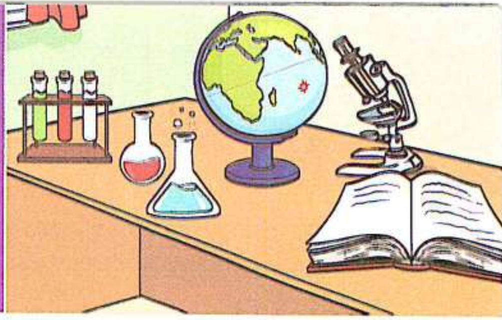
....

....

Lessons

5 & 6

SB pages 61 & 62
WB pages 111 & 112



I Vocabulary

Key Vocabulary

improve (d) (v)	يحسن - يتحسن	broken (adj)	مكسور
manage (d) (v)	يدير - ينظم	connected (adj)	متصل
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	organised (adj)	منظم
alone (adj), (adv)	وحيد - بمفرده	summer school	مدرسة صيفية
check (ed) (v)	يتأكد - يتحقق - يراجع	summer courses	مقررات تدريبية صيفية
personal statement	بيان شخصى	volunteer (n)	متطوع

Pop Quiz تدريب تلقائى يهدف لإتقان المفردات اللغوية

⊙ Complete the following sentences using the words in the box :

timetable - volunteer - organised - improves - connected

1. Hassan is a very clever boy. He's really ....
2. Speaking English outside school .... your language.
3. My phone is often ....to the internet.
4. My uncle is a .... in a hospital.

Lesson 5

SB page 61 WB page 111

titles (n)	عناوين	news article (n)	مقال إخباري
textbook (n)	كتاب مدرسي	test (ed) (v) , (n)	يختبر - اختبار
flashcards (n)	كروت / بطاقات تعليمية	furniture (n)	الأثاث
topic (n)	موضوع	revise (d) (n)	يراجع
context (n)	سياق الكلام	vocabulary (n)	مفردات لغوية

Lesson 6

SB page 62 WB page 112

advert (n)	إعلان	smoke (d) (v) , (n)	يدخن / دخان
friendly (adj)	ودود	application form (n)	استمارة طلب
comment (n)	تعليق	spelling (n)	الهجاء
nationality (n)	جنسية	teenager (n)	مراهق
address (n)	عنوان [سكنى]	frightened (adj)	مرعوب - خائف

Study these definitions

ادرس هذه التعريفات

organised	• arranged or planned • able to plan things carefully	منظم
improve	to get better at something	يتحسن
volunteer	a person who helps others without getting anything in return	متطوع

Collocations

متلازمات لفظية

make	a study timetable يصنع جدول مواعيد للدراسة (المذاكرة)	have	fun	يستمتع
			an exam	لديه امتحان
take	a break يأخذ استراحة		a plan	يخطط
get	better يتحسن - يتقدم	do	a sport	يلعب رياضة
			activities	يقوم بعمل أنشطة

Vocabulary Study

Synonyms and Antonyms

مترادفات ومتضادات

Word الكلمة	Synonym المرادف	Antonym المضاد
known معروف	common / popular	unknown غير معروف
personal شخصى	private	public عام

Prefixes & Suffixes

مقاطع بادئة وناهية

Prefix / Suffix	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة
dis–	تعطى عكس الكلمة	disconnected غير متصل
–al	تعطى الصفة من الاسم	personal شخصى

Exercise on Vocabulary Study

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. To get the adjective from the word "person", we add the suffix "..............".
 a. –ist b. –al c. –y d. –ful
2. Amr Diab is a famous singer. The synonym of the word "famous" is ".............. ".
 a. unpopular b. known c. unknown d. uncommon

General Notes on Reading & Listening

- **Vocabulary (n)**

اسم مفرد تأخذ فعل مفرد بعدها وللتجزئة تستخدم a piece of أو an item of ومعناها (المفردات اللغوية)

- English **vocabulary** is so easy to learn. *(SB page 62)*

Important Expressions & Prepositions تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Expressions			
English-language TV programme	برنامج تليفزيوني باللغة الانجليزية	do well in exam	يؤدي جيدًا في الامتحان
		sounds fun	يبدو ممتعًا
manage time	ينظم الوقت		
Prepositions			
organised by	منظم على حسب / طبقًا لـ	useful for	مفيد لـ
at the weekend	فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	date of birth	تاريخ الميلاد
walk past	يسير مارًا بـ	advert for	إعلان لـ
work with	يعمل مع / يتعامل مع	around the world	حول العالم

II Skills

1. Reading and Listening

Pop Quiz
تدرب على ١٢ من قطع الفهم ونصوص الاستماع

Reading

- on Lesson 5 WB page 111

Study plan(1) : how to learn English vocabulary(2)

1- Make **flashcards**(3) of words that you need to remember, **organised by topic**(4) (for example, words for **furniture**(5)).
2- Write the words in **context**(6) : that means putting the word in a written sentence, so you can see how it works with other words.
3- Don't try to remember too many words at the same time : find how many words is best for you.
4- Watch **English-language TV programmes**(7) or films and listen for **known**(8) words.
5- Read as many stories and **news articles**(9) as you can : it's the best way to learn vocabulary !
6- Work with a friend and try to **test**(10) each other on important words.

(1) خطة الدراسة	(2) المفردات اللغوية	(3) بطاقات تعليمية	(4) مرتبة حسب الموضوع	(5) أثاث
(6) سياق الموضوع	(7) برامج تليفزيونية باللغة الانجليزية	(8) معروف	(9) مقالات إخبارية	(10) يختبر

on Lesson 6 SB page 62

English Language Summer School for Teenagers ![1]



Do you want to **improve**[2] your English ? Would you like to study in England with other young people from around the world ? Come and stay at Hapstone House, in the south of England, for our **summer courses**[3] ! You can study every morning with our friendly, **expert teachers**[4] and spend the afternoons doing sports or other activities. Every weekend, we visit famous English places (like London or Oxford). Learn English, have fun, visit England !
For more information, visit our **website**[5].



(1) مراهقين | (2) يحسن | (3) دورات تدريبية صيفية | (4) مدرسين خبراء | (5) موقع إلكتروني

on Lesson 6 WB page 112

Hi



My name's Mario. I am fourteen years old.
My birthday is 14 February and I'm from Italy.
My address is 7 North road, Rome and my phone number is 889900. I don't have email (my parents don't like computers !). I want to improve my English because I want to do well in my exams next year. I think that your course sounds fun and I think I will enjoy your activities. I love playing sports such as football and tennis. I look forward to hearing from you,
Yours, Mario Dollo

on Lesson 7 WB page 113

When my father was younger, he used to help on his uncle's farm. One day, he was walking past the building where the horses slept when he saw some smoke. He realised there was a fire. The horses were frightened and they didn't want to leave the building. My father was very calm and made eye contact with the horses. Then, he carefully took them from the building. When I heard this story, I decided that I wanted to become a vet. Next year, I am starting studying at university. I think it will be difficult work, but I love animals. I'm looking forward to working with them in the future.

Exercise on Vocabulary

⊙ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

▸ Key vocabulary

1. I'll make a .... to arrange my day.
   a. summary b. sound c. map d. timetable
2. Teachers .... our homework to help us get better.
   a. do b. check c. have d. make

SB , WB and Previous Exams

3. SB Someone who plans things carefully is ....
   a. ready b. improved c. brave d. organised
4. I decided to have a summer .... to improve my English.
   a. address b. course c. timetable d. break
   (Matay - Minya 2023)
5. WB My .... is 7 North Road, Rome.
   a. dress b. age c. address d. way
6. WB Write the word in .... : that means putting the word in a written sentence. *(Ibshaway - Fayoum 2022)*
   a. crossword b. listening c. context d. map

El-Moasser Exercises

7. Today I read a/an .... about selling a panda in the newspaper !
   a. plan b. advert c. course d. idea
8. What's your .... ? - French.
   a. address b. nationality c. hobby d. country
9. I wrote a .... on my friend's photo on Facebook.
   a. review b. text c. comment d. letter

▸ Definitions

10. SB A .... statement is where you tell someone about yourself.
    a. public b. personal c. shared d. business
11. .... is to get better at something.
    a. Prove b. Improve c. Explain d. Disprove
12. A .... is a person who helps others without getting anything in return.
    a. volunteer b. teacher c. vet d. writer

Language Notes, Expressions & Prepositions

13. My father works .... computers. He's an engineer.
    a. on b. for c. of d. with
14. I'm looking .... going on a holiday in Rome.
    a. forward to b. into c. for d. up
15. What do you do .... the weekend ?
    a. form b. of c. at d. from

2. Speaking

مهارة التحدث

Discussion on studying tips for exams

مناقشة عن نصائح الدراسة والمذاكرة لأجل الامتحانات

Questions	Answers
1. Do you think you are good at studying ? Why/Why not ? - هل تعتقد أنك جيد في الدراسة/المذاكرة ؟ لما/لما لا ؟	- Yes, I think so. Because I am organised and I make a timetable. - نعم، أعتقد ذلك. لأنني منظم وأضع جدول زمني للمذاكرة.
2. Which things do you need to improve ? - ما الأشياء التي تحتاجها لكى تتحسن ؟	- I need to keep English vocabulary. - أريد أن أستذكر مفردات اللغة الإنجليزية.
3. How can you improve that ? - كيف يمكن تحسين ذلك ؟	- By putting the word in a written sentence. - عن طريق وضع المفردة اللغوية في جملة مكتوبة.

General Exercises on LESSONS 5 & 6

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب).

1. Nadia has gone to .... since last April.
   a. England b. France c. Germany d. Japan
2. She wanted to .... her English.
   a. forget b. break c. improve d. take
3. She is studying now with .... learners.
   a. expert b. old c. young d. fast
4. Every .... , she is taken to famous English places.
   a. weekend b. month c. day d. year

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Leen wants to have an English course. She is asked to fill in a form.

Headmaster : Welcome to our school. What's your name ?
Leen : (1) ....
Headmaster : (2) .... ?
Leen : I was born on 5th April 2008.
Headmaster : Where are you from ?
Leen : (3) ....
Headmaster : Well, Benha is a nice city. What's your phone number ?
Leen : (4) ....
Headmaster : (5) .... ?
Leen : It's leen@yahoo.com.

3 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. WB You can make .... of words that you need to remember.
   a. addresses b. flashcards c. courses d. volunteers
2. All people like Mohammed. He is ....
   a. friendly b. bored c. proud d. scary
3. A/An .... is someone who knows a lot about something.
   a. chef b. teenager c. adult d. expert

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

4. To know your lessons for tomorrow, you should look at your ....
   a. advantage b. timetable c. project d. break
5. I study more to .... my English.
   a. improve b. decay c. damage d. ruin
6. Good students always .... their time.
   a. break b. find c. manage d. make
7. I like working .... I don't like working with others.
   a. alone b. helpfully c. lazily d. slowly
8. He was doing his homework .... his dad called him.
   a. while b. as c. when d. just as
9. Did she .... to go to school on foot ?
   a. use b. to use c. used d. used to
10. I often .... TV in bed.
   a. watch b. watches c. watching d. is watching

4 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Your study plan"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Review on unit 12

قيم مستواك يقوم معلمك بتقييم مستواك باختبار من دليل المعاصر للمعلمين.

Vocabulary

English	Arabic
learner	متعلم
mostly	عمومًا
repair	يصلح
explain	يفسر
summarise	يلخص
achieve	يحقق / ينجز
body language	لغة الجسد
eye contact	التواصل البصري
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه
copy	يقلد
communicate	يتواصل
multilingual	متعدد اللغات
dialect	لغة محلية/لهجة
national	قومى / محلى
identity	هوية
community	مجتمع
international	دولي / عالمي
improve	يحسن
manage	ينظم / يدير
organised	مرتب / منظم
summer courses	دورات تدريبية صيفية

Language

Remember! تذكر أن

- When you are speaking or writing, remember to use the correct tense.

• عند الحديث أو الكتابة ، تذكر أن تستخدم الزمن المناسب.

Present : زمن المضارع

- My uncle lives (present simple) in the USA. I'm emailing (present continuous) him today.

Past : زمن الماضي

- I was playing (past cont.) tennis with my sister when it started (past simple) to rain.
- I didn't use to like tennis! I used to (past habit) like basketball.

Future : زمن المستقبل

- Next year, I'm starting (present continuous) secondary school.
  I'm going to go to university. I'm not going to get a job.
  I think studying will be hard but fun at university. I won't be bored.

Speaking

Giving advice, opinions & suggestions :

- Let's talk about the animals that you often see on a farm.
- I think that his cat understands him.
- From my point of view, it's important to watch and listen to what animals are trying to tell you.
- You should be careful about how you use your body and voice.
- How about listening to how your cat makes a noise ?

Skills

1 Reading Comprehension

Guessing the meaning

تختبر أسئلة قطعة الفهم مهارة [تخمين معنى مفردة فى السياق] وهنا تحتاج لقراءة النص جيدًا.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Read and answer the question :

Egypt has many ancient and wonderful buildings. The Citadel in Cairo is one of the most important monuments in Egypt. You can see its high towers far away. Some people call it Salah al-Din's Castle. This is because the King Salah al-Din built it to protect Cairo. It took eight years to complete. Work began in 1176 and ended in 1183. There are also four museums in the Citadel. You can visit **several** mosques, there.

Also, the Cairo Tower is one of the most famous buildings in Cairo, it took five years to build. It opened in 1961. It is 187 metres tall and stands next to the Nile on Gezira island.

• Choose the correct answer from a,b,c or d:

The underlined word "**several**" in the text means ....

a. a few   b. many   c. little   d. great

التحدى قد تجد صعوبة فى تخمين معنى مفرده فى النص.

مفتاح الحل عند قراءة الفقرة يتم التركيز على الجملة التى بها الكلمة لكى تحدد المعنى المطلوب بدقة.

2 Speaking

يختبر سؤال المحادثة [dialogue] معرفتك لقدر كاف من [Language Functions] والتى غالبًا ما تكون على شكل أسئلة والرد عليها.

◄ اقرأ وقم بالإجابة.

Complete the following dialogue :

Mona and Hala are talking about learning styles.

Mona : How are you ?
Hala : (1) ....
Mona : (2) .... ?
Hala : I prefer learning in different ways.
Mona : What type of learning would you like to do more ?
Hala : (3) ....
Mona : By seeing things! That's enjoyable!
Hala : (4) .... ?
Mona : I like learning by videos. What's your favourite subject ?
Hala : (5) ....

التحدى تريد التحدث عن [الطرق التى تفضلها عند التعلم] وتجد صعوبة فى تكوين أسئلة والرد عليها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من الأسئلة والردود التى قد تحدث بينك وبين زميلك.

3 Writing

يختبر سؤال كتابة الفقرة الإنشائية (paragraph) معرفتك لقدر كاف من المفردات وقدرتك على كتابة جمل تعبر عن الموضوع. "للمزيد من التدريب كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية للواجب المنزلى."

التحدى تريد كتابة موضوع عن (أنواع التعلم) و (أشكال التواصل) وتجد صعوبة فى كتابة عدة جمل عنها.

مفتاح الحل يجب عليك معرفة قدر كاف من المفردات اللغوية و كيفية استخدامها فى تكوين جمل للتعبير عن الموضوع المطلوب.

Topic

Types of learning

Step 1 Review your vocabulary

Write the meaning :

- رسوم توضيحية ....
- تدوين الملاحظات ....
- القراءة والكتابة ....
- رؤية ....
- إصلاح ....

Step 2 Sentences

Fill in using vocabulary :

1. Some people learn best by ....
2. They love words and learn best by reading about something and ....
3. Other people learn best by .... things.
4. Those people love to watch videos and look at ....
5. People who learn best by doing things are always busy making and .... things.

Step 3 Paragraph

Write a paragraph on :

"Types of learning"

....

....

....

....

....

....

Forms of communication

Step 1

- تعبيرات الوجه ....
- أشكال ....
- تواصل بصرى ....
- صوت بشرى ....
- لغة الجسد ....

Step 2

1. There are many .... of communication.
2. You can contact someone by .... or by calling them.
3. .... is also an important form of communication. You see players and their heads down. This means they are disappointed.
4. We know the film is scary by people's ....

Step 3

Write an email about :

"Forms of communication"

....

....

....

....

....

....

....

تدريب تلقائى على مهارة الكتابة

Questions collected from previous exams

تدريبات مجمعة من اختبارات المحافظات على الوحدة

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. To .... means to give the same sound. *(6th october - Giza)*
   a. dance b. copy c. try d. keep
2. How about .... Magdy to the party ? *(Itsa - Fayoum 2023)*
   a. inventing b. offering
   c. getting d. inviting
3. These traditional clothes keep me cool and .... me from the sun. *(Helwan - Cairo 2023)*
   a. leave b. protect c. help d. take
4. My father is .... , he isn't free. *(El Fath - Assiut 2023)*
   a. afraid b. busy
   c. boring d. scary
5. Do you want to .... your English ? - Of course.
   a. improve b. to improve
   c. improving d. improved
   (Tell El Keber - Sharkia 2023)
6. We should be .... to understand what animals want. *(Omranya - Giza 2023)*
   a. careful b. careless
   c. useless d. speechless
7. If you don't understand a lesson, you should ask your teacher to .... it again. *(Deir Mawass - Menia 2023)*
   a. study b. explain c. believe d. think
8. Ali would like to .... the phone for a new one. *(Tema - Souhag 2023)*
   a. take b. change c. make d. buy
9. Manal .... her homework at the moment. *(Qena 2023)*
   a. do b. does
   c. is doing d. doing
10. Is Mona going .... TV ? *(Armant - Luxor 2023)*
    a. watch b. watches
    c. watched d. to watch

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Hani used to be busy, but now he .... (don't). *(Armant - Luxor 2023)*
2. I hope she will .... (got) the gold medal. *(Aswan 2023)*
3. I'm looking forward to .... (visit) the new museum. *(6th October - Giza 2023)*
4. Mr Samy .... (be) going to visit Aswan next week. *(West Mahalla - Gharbia 2023)*
5. At the moment, we .... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake. *(East Alexandria - Alexandria 2023)*
6. Adel didn't .... (bought) a car last week. *(Menouf - Menoufia 2023)*
7. We are going to .... (travelling) to Japan. *(Burg El Arab - Alexandria 2023)*

Test on unit 12

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيا وتصويبه

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

قم بحل اختبار تراكمى فى الملحق

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

1. Fares remembers things ....
   a. hard b. easily c. difficultly d. slowly
2. I showed Fares a/an .... yesterday.
   a. album b. dictionary c. map d. photo
3. Fares said he can see the map in his .... today.
   a. head b. back c. nose d. leg
4. Fares learns by .... things.
   a. listening to b. speaking c. writing d. seeing

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Dareen is telling Habiba about her holiday plans.

Habiba : Tell me about your holiday plans, Dareen.

Dareen : (1) ....

Habiba : (2) .... ?

Dareen : I want to improve my English, so I'll take this English course.

Habiba : (3) .... ?

Dareen : I will travel to England and study there.

Habiba : How long is the English course ?

Dareen : (4) ....

Habiba : Is a three-week-course enough ?

Dareen : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

We don't live alone in this world. There are animals and birds living with us, too. Farmers have got a lot of animals on their farms. They keep cows, camels, buffaloes, horses and goats. Animals can't speak in the way people can, but some animals like birds can copy sounds.

● Understand ● Apply ● Create

Animals do communicate, both with us and to each other. Some animals use body language. For example, horses touch **their** noses to say (hello) to another horse they like. Bees dance when they find a good flower. To understand what animals want, you should be careful , watch and listen to what they are trying to tell you. *(El Reyad - Kafr El Sheikh 2022)*

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. To .... means to give the same sound.
   a. dance b. try c. copy d. keep
2. Horses touch their .... when they meet another horse they like.
   a. heads b. eyes c. mouths d. noses
3. We should be .... to understand what animals want.
   a. careful b. careless c. useless d. speechless

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title to the passage.

   ....

5. What does the underlined word "**their**" refer to ?

   ....

6. How do you think we can communicate with animals ?

   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. His facial .... tell me that he is angry. *(Heliopolis - Cairo 2023)*
   a. language b. contact c. connection d. expressions
2. Please, ... me some advice on how to communicate with my cat.
   a. take b. do c. give d. make
3. The policeman asked me for my .... card. *(Dishna - Qena 2022)*
   a. post b. identity c. wedding d. idea
4. WB Randa knows that Malak wants to leave because she makes eye .... with her.
   a. language b. connect c. expression d. contact
5. The charity needs some .... like you. *(Akhmim - Sohag 2022)*
   a. vans b. fans c. voluntary d. volunteers

6. If you don't study hard, you will .... your exams.
   a. fail b. pass c. succeed d. earn
7. Have you .... where you'll spend your summer holiday ?
   a. passed b. improved c. failed d. decided
8. Don't worry ! I .... help you with such a problem.
   a. going to b. am going c. was d. will
9. He used .... five kilometres a day.
   a. to run b. runs c. run d. running
10. At the moment, the girls .... in the garden.
   a. played b. are playing c. will play d. were playing

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word (s) in brackets :

1. Did you .... (used) to eat shrimps ? *(Kerdasa - Giza 2023)*
2. At 5:30 next Friday, Sally .... (have) a birthday party.
3. People, animals and plants .... (needing) water to stay alive.
4. Hala is carrying her bag. She .... (travel) to Alexandria.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on : مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

"Forms of communication"

Stop here !

Mini-Test on unit 12 for Al-Azhar students اختبار مصغر لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Supply the missing parts in the following dialogue :

Tamer and Omar are talking about reading.

Tamer : Where are you going, Omar?
Omar : (1) ....
Tamer : (2) .... ?
Omar : Yes, I like it very much. Reading is my favourite hobby.
Tamer : (3) .... ?
Omar : Science and historical books.
Tamer : Is reading a useful hobby ?
Omar : Yes, it is.

2 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. learners – you – **What** – of – are – type ?
....
2. like – learn – **Would** – to – you – swimming ?
....
3. do – in – **We** – laboratory – experiments – the.
....
4. advice – **Can** – some – give – you – me ?
....

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Students like to go to the .... in science lessons.
a. garden b. museum c. laboratory d. library
2. It is hard to .... what job you want to do.
a. take b. do c. decide d. win
3. Their facial .... tell us that what they are feeling now.
a. text b. expressions c. language d. plan
4. She didn't .... to ride a bike when she was young.
a. used b. uses c. using d. use
5. While I .... dinner, my uncle came.
a. had b. have c. was having d. will have

4 Write a paragraph of FIVE sentences about :

"Future plans"

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :

Hani and Omar are talking about the best place to spend their next holiday.

Hani : Hello Omar. When is your next holiday ?

Omar : Hello Hani. (1) ....

a. Two months ago b. Next August.
c. In January d. In the morning

Hani : I thing it will be hot. (2) .... ?

a. Where are you going to go
b. How long are you going to stay
c. What are you going to buy
d. When are you going to go

Omar : I'm going to go to Hurghada.

Hani : Are you going to go diving ?

Omar : (3) .... I like diving very much.

a. Yes, of course b. No, I haven't
c. No, I wasn't d. I don't think so

Hani : (4) .... ?

a. How much will you stay there
b. Where will you stay there
c. When will you stay there
d. How long will you stay there

Omar : I'll stay there for a week.

Hani : Have a nice time.

Omar : (5) ....

a. I am sad b. I'm sorry
c. Thank you d. That's mine

2. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets from a, b, c or d :

6. The students .... **(were doing)** an exam next Sunday. It's arranged.
   a. do b. are doing
   c. did d. have done
7. Ali .... **(not/ use)** to like fruit, but now he loves it.
   a. don't use b. isn't use
   c. didn't use d. doesn't use
8. What are you going to .... **(doing)** tomorrow ?
   a. do b. did c. does d. done
9. Did you .... **(using)** go to school by bus ?
   a. used to b. using to
   c. use to d. are using

Review D

SB pages 64 & 65 WB pages 114 & 115



Listening

on Lesson 1 SB page 64



Next month is our **school camping trip**[1]. We're leaving in three weeks and camping for three nights. The bus is leaving at 8 am on the 10th of May and we **will be back**[2] on the 13th at 6 pm.

As you know, we're going to the desert and it will be hot in **the day**[3] and cold at night. You will need to bring loose, cool clothes for the day and warm night clothes. You will also need comfortable trainers because we're going to do lots of walking.

You're going to be learning about life in the desert and about the geography of the area. You'll also need a camera, notebook and pen. Please take this letter for your parents which has all the information that you'll need.

(1) رحلة تخييم مدرسية | (2) سنعود | (3) النهار

Reading

on Lesson 2 SB page 65



On Monday, an exciting new shop is opening in the city centre. The **Eco Shop**[1] only sells things that are **environment-friendly**[2].Last week, we talked to the owner, "Mariam El-Soory about her new shop. "Lots of people want to help the environment but it is sometimes difficult to know what to buy. We are working with lots

(1) متجر صديق للبيئة | (2) صديق البيئة

of people to help **local**[3] industries, too. So, we're going to sell local fruit and vegetables, luxury, Egyptian cotton clothes and other local things that don't damage the environment. You can also bring glass, plastic and paper to the shop for recycling. We will also have cooking and sewing classes at the shop **soon**[4]".

Mariam worked for many years as a **guide**[5] at a beach. She was sad because she saw a lot of plastic bags used for things from other countries on the beach. When she was **picking up**[6] some rubbish one day, she decided she wanted to do more to help the environment and had the idea of a shop. The shop is having an **opening party**[7] at 1 pm in three days' time.

(3) محلى | (4) قريبًا | (5) مرشد | (6) يجمع / يلتقط | (7) حفل افتتاح

on Lesson 1 WB page 114

New technology means that **forms of communication**[1] are changing all the time. For example, think about how phones have **developed**[2] over the last 20 years. In the past, people used to **type**[3] messages using special letters on their phones. Then, people started to touch the screens on their phones to type their messages. Now, phones are able to understand people's voices and many people are speaking to their phones to send messages. Some scientists think that phones are going to know what people think in the future. Perhaps our phones will read our **facial expressions**[4] before they send a message!



(1) اشكال / انواع التواصل | (2) يتطور / يتقدم | (3) يكتب رسالة | (4) تعبيرات الوجه

on Lesson 1 WB page 114

Guide : We're going to climb that big mountain today, Karim.

Karim : Do you mean the mountain with the snow on top ?

Guide : No, we're going to climb the one with the tall, green trees on it.

Karim : It looks a bit scary to me!

Guide : From my point of view , it won't be scary if you wear the correct clothes.

Karim : OK, what should I wear ?

Guide : You should wear these **thick**[1] leather boots, and this **hard,**[2] plastic hat.

Karim : This hat is too big. Do you have a smaller size ?

Guide : Here you are. Does it fit ?

Karim : Yes, thank you.

Guide : OK, let's go up the mountain!

(1) سميك | (2) صلب

on Lesson 2 WB page 115

Tarek is wearing a long, loose, cotton **galabeya**[1]. He's also wearing a long, wool **scarf**[2]. Osama is wearing **casual**[3] clothes, but I think he looks smart. He's wearing a T-shirt with a blue and white shirt over it. He's also wearing **cotton**[4] trousers, but I don't think he's wearing a belt. Deena is at a **special**[5] occasion. She is wearing smart **traditional**[6] clothes. I love her beautiful, white scarf. She's also wearing a **loose**[7], long, dress with flowers on it.



(1) جلابية (ثوب فضفاض) | (2) وشاح | (3) غير رسمي | (4) قطن | (5) مميز / خاص | (6) تقليدي | (7) فضفاض

Videoscript

Unit 7

Lesson 5 SB page 9

Narrator :

What do you use when you want to find out the time ?

Do you use a watch or do you use a clock ?

These clocks either use numbers to tell the time or they use hands. These hands show hours, minutes and seconds . But how did people know the time in the past ? In Ancient Egypt, people used sundials. Sundials use the position of the sun to tell the time.

Then, in the year 1524, a scientist from Damascus called Taqi al-Din invented a watch that looked like the watches of today. It had three hands to show hours, minutes and seconds. It was also small, so people could carry it with them.

But watches today don't only tell you the time. Some watches will say that you should do exercise if you are sitting at a computer for a long time ! And some have apps, such as maps, that will give you directions if you are lost. What will the watches of the future be like ? Some will be like modern mobile phones. If someone calls you, you will be able to see them on a special video screen.

And some will look after your health. They will tell you what medicine you should take if you are ill, or that you should see a doctor.

Unit 8

Lesson 5 SB page 19

Narrator :

There is a lot of delicious, healthy Egyptian food. Dishes like kushari and rozzme'ammar are enjoyed by many in Egypt and around the world. But which Egyptian food is good for you before and after you play sport ?

Foul mudammas is a dish made of beans. People usually eat this with a little bread. The beans and the bread contain something called carbohydrate. Carbohydrate gives you energy to do sport.

Rice, pasta, fruit and vegetables contain a lot of carbohydrate, so why don't you eat these things before you go swimming or do athletics ?

Sugar also gives us energy to do sport. You can find sugar in chocolate, sweets, honey and some desserts like basbousa and kahk.

But you should only eat a little sugar because it is bad for your teeth.

After you play sport, how about eating food that contains protein ? Protein is something that helps our body to recover after exercise.

Meat, fish and dairy products, like milk and cheese, contain a lot of protein. So, you should eat things like kofta, sayadiya or shakshouka after you play sport.

It is important to look after your body. You should do exercise and eat a healthy diet.

Unit 9

Lesson 3 SB page 27

Narrator :

Can you sing ? Perhaps you can act. But are you able to sing and act at the same time ?

Actors who appear in opera can do all of these things. An opera is a type of play in which the actors sing and sometimes dance. There is also lots of music.

People can watch an opera in a special theatre called an opera house, like this famous one in Sydney.

There are many famous operas, such as Carmen, The Barber of Seville and Tosca. Opera singers such as Maria Callas, Placido Domingo and Luciano Pavarotti are able to sing really well.

Guiseppe Verdi was an Italian who wrote some important operas in the 19th century. One of his most famous operas is called Aida.

Aida is set in Ancient Egypt. It is about a soldier who loves a princess. It was first performed at the Khedivia Opera House in Cairo in 1871. At this time, this opera house was the biggest in Africa and one of the most important opera houses in the world.

It was destroyed in a fire in 1971, but a new opera house opened in 1988. It is called the Cairo Opera House. This is a beautiful building on Gezira Island.

Thousands of people come here every year to watch operas and other performances, such as ballet or music.

Do you like opera ?

Unit 12

Lesson 4 SB page 60

Hieroglyphics was a form of writing that was used in Ancient Egypt. It used pictures to represent letters and words. For example, this picture is the letter 'A' in English.

We know how to read these pictures because of the Rosetta Stone, which was found in Rashid in the 18th century. The Rosetta Stone is special. It was- perhaps- the world's first language dictionary. That is because the stone has both hieroglyphics and writing in the language of Ancient Greece.

Before they found the Rosetta Stone, people didn't understand the meaning of hieroglyphics. However, experts who understood Ancient Greek could work out what the pictures meant.

But did you know that many of us still use a form of hieroglyphics today?

These are emojis and people sometimes use them when they are sending text messages to their friends. Like hieroglyphics, emojis use pictures to represent letters or words. This emoji means that the writer is happy...and this one means the writer is sad.

Some emojis even look like hieroglyphics, like this scarab beetle and this ladybird. They both mean different things, however. The scarab beetle was used to represent 'strong' and the ladybird is used to represent 'good luck'.

Unit 7

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Shopping online"

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think it saves time because they don't spend much time travelling to the shops. They can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have many choices online. In their views, shopping online will make less cars on the streets so there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people don't think the same. They don't like shopping online because they always have a wrong delivery when they shop online.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Types of technology"

Technology has changed our life. It became important in our daily life. We use many types of technology daily. Smartphones, internet, robots and drones are examples of technology. They help us to live easier and better life. The internet gives us a lot of information about anything. Smartphones help us to communicate with people and also have apps to help you know more information about anything. But technology also has dangers. We have to be careful when we use technology.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Advantages and disadvantages of the internet"

Although the internet is very useful for us, it has also dangers. Using the internet can be good and bad at the same time. So we should be careful when we use the internet. When you are online, you should remember these rules. Keep your password secret. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't tell people your personal information. Don't spend a lot of time online. You will waste your time and you will damage your eyes if you spend too much time looking at screens. You should be careful as using technology too much time will make you addicted to the internet.

Test on unit 7

From : ali@yahoo.com

To : farid@gmail.com

Subject : how technology is useful

Dear Farid,

How are you doing ? I'm happy to send this email to you. I want to tell you about technology and how it is useful for us. We have studied about many modern inventions like new headphones that can translate from any language into your language. There's also a clever jacket which uses an app to make you warmer when the weather is cold. Another invention is half-motorbike and half-helicopter. It can push you into the air at the speed of a fast car. Write to me about your favourite invention.

Yours,
Ali

Unit 8

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

"Your favourite snack"

We like to eat snacks. They are delicious and light. I like snacks that have a lot of sugar. I like sweet food. Cake is my favourite snack. I like to eat cupcakes between meals when I feel hungry. Sometimes, I can't have cakes when there are nuts in them, as I'm allergic to nuts. I become sick if I eat them. So I must be careful about what I eat. My mother makes nice cakes at home for me when she has more free time. The cakes are healthier when mum makes them at home.

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

From : reda@gmail.com
To : sami@gmail.com
Subject : how to make an omelette

Dear Sami,

How are you and your family ? I write you this email to tell you about a new dish I've learnt to cook. It's omelette. It is a delicious dish. Its ingredients are eggs, milk and salt. Here's an easy recipe to make omelette. First, beat two eggs in a bowl with little milk. Second, add a little salt to the eggs and milk, but don't add too much salt. Much salt isn't good for you. Then, heat some butter in a frying pan. After that, pour the eggs into the frying pan and cook them in the butter. Finally, when the omelette is ready, take it out of the frying pan and serve it with salad.

Yours,
Reda

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Healthy food"

If you want to be healthy, you should be careful about what you eat. Not all kinds of foods are healthy. Fast food isn't healthy food as it has a lot of sugar, fat and salt. Fruits and vegetables are very healthy food. They have a lot of vitamins and natural sugar which are good for your body. Dairy products like milk and cheese are very useful. They help us to have strong bones. Meat and nuts have protein in them, so we need them to have a strong body.

Test on unit 8

"Fast food"

Fast food is the food that is quick and easy to buy or cook. Although it is very tasty, it is not healthy. It has much fat and sugar in it. So it is not a good idea to eat fast food. You should have healthy snacks between the meals when you feel hungry. Healthy food gives you energy and makes you strong. Fruits and vegetables are healthy snacks, so you can eat a lot of them. Nuts also are very good for your body. You can have nuts as a snack if you don't have an allergy to them. In conclusion, you should think before you eat anything if it is good or bad for your body.

Unit 9

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : khalid@gmail.com
To : soha@gmail.com
Subject : a visit to the Egyptian Museum

Dear Soha,

How are you ? I hope you are fine. I write this email to tell you about my visit to the Egyptian Museum. The Egyptian Museum is one of the most amazing places in Cairo. It's the oldest museum in Cairo. I went to the Egyptian Museum last Sunday on a school trip. We went very early as the museum isn't much crowded in the early mornings. I saw many statues and portraits. They were amazing. There were ancient things made of different materials. I recommend visiting the Egyptian Museum. It's an amazing place to visit.

Yours,
Khalid

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"How to help the disabled"

Disabled means someone who isn't able to use a part or parts of the body in the way other people can. Disabled people are not different, but they need more help. For example, the blind need special schools to learn how to use Braille. They can read and write, draw and even play music. They also need help in public transport. Deaf people also need help to be able to communicate well. To conclude, the disabled are heroes : they can do amazing things, but they need more help to live a normal life.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"A review of your favourite film"

I like watching films. My favourite kind of films is adventure films. They are very exciting. "Jurassic World" is one of my favourite films. It's an adventure film. It was made in 2015. The film stars are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas. It is about a theme park where scientists have helped dinosaurs to live again ! Then some of the dinosaurs escaped. I think the action is exciting and my favourite thing is the scary dinosaurs : they look very real. I recommend watching this film.

Test on unit 9

"Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra"

Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is an amazing orchestra. It's in a special school for blind girls in Cairo. This school is a music school. All the students study their normal subjects in the morning and they practise their instruments in the afternoon. Many of the students at this school join the orchestra. The orchestra plays concerts in Australia, Germany and China and all around the world. The orchestra plays international and classical music. They read with their hands. They have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time.

Unit 10

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Your favourite clothes"

There are many types of clothes. Clothes are different in every city, town and country. I like to wear clothes that are loose and made of cotton. I like to feel comfortable and relaxed in my clothes. I like my black, plastic sunglasses. They are very fashionable. I prefer to wear trainers most of the time. They are very comfortable and look nice. When I visit my grandpa, I like to wear traditional clothes like what he wears. He lives in a village in Assiut. It is important to wear comfortable clothes to enjoy your time.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

From : sherifa@gmail.com
To : samia@yahoo.com
Subject : the handbag you want to sell
Hi Samia,

How is it going ? I write to you to tell you about the advert that I want to make online. It's about my handbag. It is a present for my birthday , but I already have one that is the same. I don't need it so I will make an advert to sell it. It's very large and beautiful. It's perfect for work or school. It's made of leather. I will put three pictures of it with the advert. I hope someone likes it and calls me soon. What's your opinion about shopping online ?

Yours,
Sherifa

Test on unit 10

"Clothes in Ancient Egypt"

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes most of the time, but rich people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents. Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery. Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.

Unit 11

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : nader@gmail.com
To : tarek@yahoo.com
Subject : the summer holiday
Dear Tarek,

How are you ? I'm so excited to write to you about my plan for the summer holiday. I'm going to travel to Jordan. It's a beautiful Arab country. I'm going to visit Wadi Rum. It's a large area of desert in the south of Jordan. It's a very beautiful place with mountains, desert plants and wildlife. I'm going to go trekking and rock climbing. It'll be an amazing journey. I'll send you many photos when I arrive there. I'll stay in a hotel. There are many nice hotels there. I can't wait to go there !

Yours,
Nader

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"Water pollution"

Water is the most important thing to live. So that we must save water. Unfortunately, some people don't care about water. They throw out their rubbish in water. As a result the water became polluted in many places. Polluted water causes many diseases to us. But how we can save water from pollution. Some students have invented a system to take the rubbish from the water and others invented a green system to use sunlight to kill bacteria in water. These amazing inventions should be used all over the world.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"The activity you like doing in your free time"

I love nature very much. In my free time, I like to go to the park. I enjoy walking and watching trees, birds, clouds and animals. I like taking pictures for nature. That's my favourite activity in my free time. Nature is full of amazing scenes. I feel very happy when I am at the park. In Cairo, there are many beautiful parks. Al-Azhar Park is one of the biggest parks in Egypt. It's a very beautiful place to spend time in. I recommend visiting it.

Test on unit 11

"Plans for your next holiday"

Next holiday, I have an exciting plan. I'm going to travel to Siwa. It's a beautiful oasis in Egypt. There are many amazing places to visit there. Fatanas Island is a great place to watch the sunset like you have never done before. You can sit beside the water and see the most beautiful sunset scene. I'm going to visit Siwa Museum. In the museum, there are traditional clothes, potteries and jewellery which show you how the life in Siwa is. I'm also going to visit Siwa salt lake. I'm looking forward to visiting Siwa.

Unit 12

General Exercises on lessons 1 & 2

From : maha@yahoo.com
To : sama@gmail.com
Subject : What job you'd like to do in the future

Dear Sama,

How are you and your family ? I am pleased to write to you about what job I'd like to do when I'm older after finishing the university. I want to be a scientist so I can study science. Science is my favourite subject. I dream to invent a new robot. And that robot can help us a lot. I like to do experiments at the laboratory. I think it is an exciting job. The world always changes and needs more technology and inventions to help us live easy and better life. Write to me about your future job.

Yours,
Maha

General Exercises on lessons 3 & 4

"The importance of languages"

There are many languages around the world. Some countries speak more than one language. Languages are very important to communicate with each other. People who speak more than one language have more advantages. They can talk to different people in different places and in different ways. When you are multilingual, you are able to understand both your home and the world better. It also gives people different identities. If you speak your home language, it connects you to your community.

General Exercises on lessons 5 & 6

"Your study plan"

We are all different. So everyone has their plan to study and a way that they can use to learn best. We can make flashcards of words that we need to remember. We can also write the words in context. So you can see how it works with other words. We can learn English language from TV programmes or films and search for unknown words. We can read stories if we like reading. Learning with others is more fun. So you can work with a friend and try to discuss and test each other.

Test on unit 12

"Forms of communication"

Now, there are more forms of communication than in the past. Technology gave us different and new forms of communication. We all now have phones and we use them to make phone calls and text messages. More than this, some of people have smartphones which make them able to communicate with people in far places easily and for free. Smartphones have apps that can help you to call, text and even see anybody. In the future, maybe we will have phones that can read our facial expressions before they send messages.

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

Unit 7

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Hoda loves shopping online. It saves time. She doesn't want to spend lots of time travelling to the shops. She can stay at home and buy what she needs in a few minutes.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

Shady loves playing video games. His parents are angry because they think these games are useless. They told him that they will take the computer away if he doesn't stop playing them so much.

3 Test on unit 7

I ordered a new mobile phone last week and the delivery was today. When I opened the box, the screen was damaged. I phoned the shop back and they sent me a new one.

February Test

I'm Ali. Last weekend, I went to Luxor with my family. We stayed in a hotel for a week. We visited the Valley of the Kings. We took a lot of photos.

Unit 8

1 Lessons 1 & 2

We rarely order fast food from restaurants as my mum always cooks delicious food. She also says that fast food is unhealthy so we shouldn't eat it. I like fruits very much so I eat a lot of them.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

To be healthy, make sure you have a balanced diet and eat some of all the types of food. Eat healthy snacks, sleep well and don't worry too much.

3 Test on unit 8

Most people love snacks but some snacks are bad for us. Sometimes it is bad to eat crisps and cakes. Eating apples is a good example of healthy snacks.

Unit 9

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Last month, Hani visited the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art in Cairo. It's for free to visit. He saw portraits of important and normal Egyptian people.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

Rawan is a deaf girl. She likes sport. She plays table tennis. She came first in the last competition.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

Jurassic World is an adventure film. The stars of the film are Chris Pratt and Bryce Dallas Howard. It's about a theme park where scientists have helped dinosaurs to live again. Then some dinosaurs escaped.

4 Test on unit 9

Ramy went to see a scary film about dinosaurs last night. Ramy couldn't sleep after the film.

General Revision on units 7, 8 & 9

Fahmy is on the school athletics team. He goes running every day. He needs food that gives him energy, like rice and pasta. He also eats a few healthy snacks, like nuts.

Unit 10

1 Lessons 1 & 2

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes. The Ancient Egyptians didn't wear shoes, but some people wore expensive, leather sandals.

2 Lessons 5 & 6

I'm selling a beautiful new, black, leather handbag. It was a present for my birthday but I already have one that is the same. The price is L.E. 500.

3 Test on unit 10

Some people are starting to use a plant called bamboo instead of cotton to make clothes. The plant is an important crop in China where the bamboo industry makes a lot of money.

March Test

Tamer went to the Textile Museum in Cairo last month. He went with his friends. The museum has lots of clothes from different times in history. They thought the clothes from Ancient Egypt were fantastic.

Unit 11

1 Lessons 1 & 2

There is a lot of air pollution from the traffic in our city and this is very unhealthy. Trees are good for the environment and help reduce air pollution.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them, we can use a remote control. This means we can control drones from the ground. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

3 Test on unit 11

We have much air pollution in our city. Trees can reduce pollution. Trees are good for the environment. People should plant trees.

Unit 12

1 Lessons 1 & 2

Marwan finds it difficult to understand science books, but when he does an experiment in the laboratory, he always understands what is happening. Marwan learns best by doing things. He likes technology.

2 Lessons 3 & 4

Yara is my older sister. She is 15 years old. She is 3 years older than me. She is always on the internet or talking on her phone for a long time.

3 Lessons 5 & 6

Nadia has gone to England since last April. She wanted to improve her English. She is studying now with young learners from around the world. Every weekend, she is taken to famous English places.

4 Test on unit 12

Fares remembers things easily. I showed him a map of how to walk to my house yesterday. He says he can see the map in his head today ! Fares learns by seeing things.

ترخيص وزارة التربية والتعليم : ١٠٣ - ١٠ - ١٠ - ٢ - ١٠٨



EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

New Hello! ENGLISH

By a group of supervisors

كـــراســـة المعـــاصر
للمراجـعة والاخـتـبارات

داخل الملحق
مراجعة المنهج والتمكن منه فى ساعة واحدة قبل الامتحان

A WEEK IS ENOUGH

2nd Prep. 2024
SECOND TERM

الصف الثانى الإعدادى
الفصـل الـدراسـى الثانى

PART ONE

DAY 1

Listening, Language Functions and Reading Comprehension

1. Listening texts

نصوص الاستماع

على الطالب أن يستمع إلى نص حوالى (٣٠ - ٣٥) كلمة من الموضوعات الهامة فى الكتاب المدرسى التى تساعد فى التعامل مع السؤال الأول وبعد الاستماع إلى النص يجيب الطالب على أربعة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد متبوعة بأربع اختيارات لكل سؤال.

السؤال الأول فى ورقة الامتحان

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

A

1. What does Randa love ?
   a. Social media b. Football c. Handball d. Drawing
2. Is she addicted to social media ?
   a. Yes, she is. b. No, she isn't.
   c. I don't know. d. I am not sure.
3. What does she like watching online ?
   a. Videos b. Games c. Films d. Books
4. Who does she talk to on her mobile ?
   a. Sisters b. Fathers c. Mothers d. Friends

B

1. Dareen makes up .... to remember English grammar.
   a. diagrams b. songs c. shows d. texts
2. She sings .... to herself.
   a. lazily b. quietly c. slowly d. quickly
3. Singing is a great way for Dareen to remember ....
   a. irregular verbs b. nouns
   c. adjectives d. adverbs
4. Dareen learns best by ....
   a. writing b. listening c. reading d. all of them

2. Language Functions

الوظائف اللغوية

[راجع وتدرب فى نفس الوقت] عرض لجميع الوظائف اللغوية بطريقة سهلة متبوعة بتدريبات عليها.

السؤال الثانى فى ورقة الامتحان

1. Discussion on new inventions :

١. مناقشة عن الاختراعات الحديثة :

Questions	Answers
• What invention do you hope we will see in the future ? ما هو الاختراع الذى تتمنى أن نراه فى المستقبل؟	- I hope the flying motorbike will be invented soon. أتمنى أن يتم اختراع دراجة بخارية طائرة قريبًا.
• Which of the things do you think won't be used very much in Egypt ? Why ? أى الأشياء تعتقد لن تكون ملائمة [مستخدمة] كثيرًا فى مصر ؟ لماذا ؟	- I think that the jacket won't be very useful in Egypt because the weather here is not too cold. أعتقد أن الجاكيت لن يكون مفيد كثيرًا فى مصر لأن الطقس هنا ليس شديد البرودة.
• Which invention do you think will become the most used ? Why ? أى اختراع تعتقد سيكون الأكثر استخدامًا ؟ لماذا ؟	- I think the headphones will become the most used invention because they'll be useful for travelling. اعتقد سماعات الأذن ستكون الأكثر استخدامًا لأنها ستكون مفيدة للسفر.

2. Offering, accepting and refusing food politely :

٢. تقديم الطعام / قبول ورفض الطعام بطريقة مهذبة :

Questions	Answers
Offering food politely تقديم الطعام بطريقة مهذبة • Would you like some more rice pudding ? هل تود المزيد من الأرز باللبن ؟	**accepting** القبول - Yes, please. نعم، من فضلك. **refusing** الرفض - Thank you, but I am really full. شكرًا لك، لكنى بالفعل شبعان.

▶ 3. Talking about preferences : ٣. الحديث عن الأشياء المفضلة :

Questions	Answers
• What was your favourite thing in the museum ? ما هو الشيء الذى كان مفضلا بالنسبة لك فى المتحف ؟	- My favourite thing in the museum was a painting called Al Madina by Mahmoud Said. كان أفضل شىء فى المتحف بالنسبة لى لوحة تسمى المدينة لفنان يسمى محمود سعيد.

▶ 4. Giving recommendations : ٤. إعطاء توصيات :

Questions	Answers
• Do you like the film of Oliver Twist ? هل تحب مشاهدة فيلم أوليفر تويست ؟	- I thought it was great. I recommend watching it. أعتقد أنه رائع. أوصيك بمشاهدته.

▶ 5. Discussing and describing clothes : ٥. مناقشة ووصف الملابس :

Questions	Answers
• How do you decide what to wear ? كيف تختار ما سترتدى ؟	- I like to wear casual clothes, because they're comfortable and make me feel relaxed. أفضل أن أرتدى ملابس غير رسمية لأنها مريحة وتجعلنى أشعر بالاسترخاء. - I like formal clothes because I like to look smart. أفضل ارتداء الملابس الرسمية لأننى أحب أن أبدو أنيق.
• Do you listen to the opinions of your friends and family about clothes ? هل تستمع إلى آراء أصدقائك وأفراد عائلتك بشأن ملابسك ؟	- Yes, I usually ask for their opinion because I like to be smart. نعم، عادة ما أستشيرهم لأننى أحب أن أبدو أنيق. - No, I usually choose my clothes by myself because I'd like to be comfortable. لا، عادة ما أختار ملابسى بمفردى لأننى أفضل أن أشعر بالراحة فى ملابسى.

▶ 6. Making predictions and future plans : ٦. تقديم تنبؤات وخطط مستقبلية :

Questions	Answers
• What are you going to do at the weekend ? ماذا ستفعل فى عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟	- I'm going to help my father. سوف أساعد والدى.
• Where are you going to go for your next holiday ? أين ستذهب فى عطلتك القادمة ؟	- I am going to go to Alexandria. سوف أذهب إلى مدينة الإسكندرية.
• Are you going to recycle your mobile phone when it's old ? هل سوف تعيد تصنيع هاتفك المحمول عندما يصبح قديمًا ؟	- Yes, I am going to recycle it to help the environment. نعم سأعيد تصنيعه لمساعدة البيئة. - No, I am going to have a new one. لا سوف أشترى هاتف محمول جديد.

▶ 7. Talking about learning styles : ٧. الحديث عن طرق [أساليب] التعلم :

Questions	Answers
• How do you prefer to learn ? What type of classes are your favourite ? كيف تفضل أن تتعلـم ؟ ما نوع الدروس / الحصص المفضلة لك ؟	- I like to learn in different ways. I don't like always doing the same things. أحـب التعليم بطـرق مختلفة. لا احـب فعل نفس الأشياء دائمًا. - I like classes when we get to do things and don't only listen or read. أحب الحصص التى نتعلم بها فعل الأشـياء وليس فقط الاستماع والقراءة.
• What type of learning would you like to do more ? What would you like to do less ? أى نوع من أنواع التعلم تود أن تؤديه أكثر ؟ وما النوع الذى تود أن تقلل منه ؟	- I like to learn by seeing things; watching videos and looking at diagrams. أحـب أن تعلم عن طريق رؤية الأشـياء ومشـاهدة الفيديوهات والنظر إلى الرسوم التوضيحية. - I like to learn less by listening. أحب أن أقلل التعلم باستخدام الاستماع.

⊙ Complete the following dialogue :

1 **Huda wants to buy a new coat at the clothes shop.**

Shop assistant : Can I help you ?
Huda : (1) ....
Shop assistant : (2) .... ?
Huda : I'd like it medium, please.
Shop assistant : Medium! (3) .... ?
Huda : I'd like red, please.
Shop assistant : Can you try these on ?
Huda : (4) .... Where is the changing room ?
Shop assistant : It's over there!
Huda : (5) ....

2 ***Samar and Aya are talking about their next weekend.***

Samar : Where will you spend your next weekend ?
Aya : (1) ....
Samar : Who will you go with ?
Aya : (2) ....
Samar : (3) .... ?
Aya : We'll stay there for a week.
Samar : How will you go ?
Aya : (4) .... Do you like to come with us to Fatanas Island at Siwa ?
Samar : Yes, of course. (5) .... ?
Aya : We can sit by the water and watch the sunset. It's very beautiful.

3 ***Salwa and Dalia are talking about lunch.***

Salwa : Hi, Dalia. How are you ?
Dalia : Hi, Salwa. I'm good. What about you ?
Salwa : (1) .... Where are you going ?
Dalia : I'm going to have my lunch. (2) .... ?
Salwa : Yes, I'd love to. But (3) .... ?
Dalia : I'm going to eat fish and rice.
Salwa : (4) ....
Dalia : Fried chicken ! It's delicious with salad. Let's have it.
Salwa : Which restaurant do you recommend ?
Dalia : (5) ....

3. Reading Comprehension

قطع الفهم

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

وهو عبارة عن قطعة فهم ويجيب الطالب على ثلاث اختيار من متعدد بها أربع خيارات لكل سؤال وثلاثة أسئلة بأداة استفهام.

Read the following, then answer the questions :

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore **loose**, white, linen clothes with a belt. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but rich people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they were about six years old. Then **they** started to wear the same clothes as their parents.

Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery. Rich Egyptians wore beautiful gold necklaces. Other people wore cheaper jewellery.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word **"loose"** is the opposite of ....
   a. heavy b. tight c. comfortable d. big
2. Rich Egyptians wore beautiful ....
   a. coats b. gold necklaces c. silver rings d. heavy clothes
3. Children did not usually wear many clothes until the age of ....
   a. 5 b. 7 c. 6 d. 4

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

5. Do you think Ancient Egyptians' clothes look nice ?

....

6. What does the underlined pronoun **"they"** refer to ?

....

DAYS 2 & 3

Vocabulary, Language, Writing & Accumulative Tests

قم بحل اختبار على كل وحدتان من الاختبارات التراكمية

1. General Revision on Vocabulary

١. مراجعة عامة على أهم المفردات اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 7

Important Vocabulary

headphones (n)	سماعات الأذن	solar panels (n)	ألواح شمسية
invention (n)	اختراع	translate (d) (v)	يترجم
app (n)	تطبيق على الهاتف المحمول / الكمبيوتر	speed (n)	سرعة
motorbike (n)	دراجة بخارية	delivery (n)	خدمة توصيل (للمنازل، للمكاتب ...)
helicopter (n)	طائرة مروحية (هليوكوبتر)	businesses (n)	مشاريع أو أعمال تجارية
addicted (adj)	مدمن	social media (n)	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
horrible (adj)	رهيب / شنيع	lever (n)	رافعة / مقبض / ذراع تشغيل
headache (n)	صداع	explore (d) (v)	يستكشف
dangers (n)	مخاطر	debate (n)	مناظرة / جدال
screen (n)	شاشة	health (n)	صحة
hearing (n)	حاسة السمع	order (ed) (v) (n)	يأمر / يطلب - طلب

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB .... are things that you wear over your ears to listen to music.
   a. Mobile phones b. Headphones c. Apps d. Businesses
2. SB Can you .... this passage into Arabic ?
   a. translate b. transform c. transmit d. transport
3. WB A .... has two wheels and an engine.
   a. bike b. taxi c. motorbike d. truck
4. SB I can drive my car at the .... of 100 km/h.
   a. space b. speed c. height d. width
5. WB When they arrived at the hotel, they decided to .... its gardens.
   a. disappear b. appear c. pull d. explore
6. WB He drinks much coffee. He became .... to it.
   a. expert b. follower c. scientist d. addicted

Unit 8

Important Vocabulary

snack (n)	وجبة خفيفة	salty (adj)	مالح
spicy (adj)	متبل [كثير التوابل]	energy (n)	طاقة
juicy (adj)	ملئ بالعصير	allergic (adj)	لديه حساسية
sweet (adj)	حلو المذاق	fast food (n)	وجبات سريعة
dairy products (n)	منتجات ألبان	recipe (n)	وصفة [طهي]
protein (n)	بروتين	sense (n)	حاسة
bones (n)	عظام	instructions (n)	تعليمات
unusual (adj)	غريب / غير مألوف	fresh (adj)	طازج
smell (ed) (v), (n)	يشم - رائحة	taste (d) (v), (n)	يتذوق - طعم / مذاق
diet (n)	نظام غذائي	conclusion (n)	خاتمة
balanced (adj)	متوازن	conclude (d) (v)	يختم / يستنتج
advice (n)	نصيحة	pepper (n)	فلفل
reason (n)	سبب / مبرر	spinach (n)	سبانخ
relax (ed) (v)	يسترخي	sweet potato (n)	بطاطا

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB Watermelon and oranges are ....
   a. juicy b. spicy c. salty d. tasteless
2. WB A .... is a small amount of food eaten between meals.
   a. snail b. snake c. snack d. smoke
3. SB He doesn't eat any cakes because he is .... to nuts.
   a. allergic b. usual c. delicious d. enough
4. SB I don't put any salt on mine because I don't like .... food.
   a. balanced b. juicy c. sweet d. salty
5. SB We need .... to have a strong body.
   a. fats b. proteins c. sense d. salt
6. WB We call food that are made from milk ....
   a. dairy products b. snack
   c. fast food d. diet

Unit 9

Important Vocabulary

scenery (n)	منظر طبيعى - خلفية المسرح	theme park (n)	مدينة ملاهى
script (n)	نص - سيناريو [فيلم أو مسرحية]	century (n)	قرن [١٠٠ سنة]
costumes (n)	أزياء المناسبات الخاصة	view (n)	رأى / وجهة نظر
make-up (n)	المكياج [فن التجميل]	sculpture	النحت - قطعة فنية منحوتة
show(ed) (v), (n)	يعرض / عرض	recommend (ed) (v)	يزكى - يوصى بـ
acting (n)	التمثيل	review (n)	مقال نقدى
musical instruments (n)	آلات موسيقية	pottery (n)	صناعة الأوانى الفخارية
cool (adj)	رائع	portrait (n)	صورة شخصية مرسومة
cartoons (n)	رسوم متحركة	wonder (ed) (v)	يتعجب - يتسائل
orchestra (n)	فرقة موسيقية	hide (v)	يختبىء
musician (n)	موسيقار	hug (ged) (v)	يحضن - يحتضن
radio reporter (n)	مراسل إذاعى	blind (n) (adj)	أعمى - كفيف
disabled (n) (adj)	عاجز - لديه إعاقة	deaf (n) (adj)	أصم
concert (n)	حفلة موسيقية	Braille (n)	طريقة برايل للمكفوفين
proud (adj)	فخور	action (n)	حدث [فى فيلم أو رواية]
invitation (n)	دعوة	adventure film (n)	فيلم مغامرات
request (n)	طلب	star (n)	نجم / ممثل مشهور
offer(ed)(v), (n)	يعرض - عرض	reviewer (n)	ناقد أدبى
escape (d) (v)	يهرب	invite (d) (v)	يدعو

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB My sister likes playing musical ....
   a. costumes b. instruments c. acts d. shows
2. SB I .... you visit the Egyptian Museum when you go to downtown.
   a. take b. paint c. give d. recommend
3. SB I can talk to the people at drama club about ....
   a. painting b. drawing c. acting d. sewing
4. The children all wore funny .... for the family party.
   a. costumes b. instruments c. sceneries d. scripts
5. What's your .... about the Museum of Egyptian Modern Art ?
   a. review b. portrait c. interview d. view

Unit 10

Important Vocabulary

loose (adj)	واسع - فضفاض	try (ied) (v) on	يقيس [ملابس]
description (n)	وصف	striped (adj)	مخطط
size (n)	حجم - مقياس	climate (n)	مناخ
age (n)	عمر / سن	traditional (adj)	تقليدى
style (n)	طراز - أسلوب	casual (adj)	غير رسمى [ملابس]
describe (d)(v)	يصف	colourful (adj)	ملون
borrow (ed) (v)	يستعير	smart (adj)	أنيق / مهندم - ذكى
special occasion	مناسبة خاصة	industry (n)	صناعة
environment (n)	البيئة	perfect (adj)	مثالى - كامل
crops (n)	محاصيل [زراعية]	pick (ed) (v)	يقطف
luxury (n), (adj)	رفاهية - فاخر / فخم	soft (adj)	ناعم
chest of drawers (n)	خزانة ذات أدراج	customer (n)	زبون
price (n)	سعر	shopkeeper (n)	بائع فى محل
changing room (n)	حجرة تغيير الملابس	pretty (adj)	جميل
fit (ted) (v)	يلائم - يناسب	useful (adj)	مفيد

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. WB In winter, I usually wear heavy ....
   a. shirt b. trainers c. sandals d. jumper
2. SB You have to choose good .... to practise running.
   a. trains b. turns c. trainers d. slippers
3. WB .... is a plant such as a fruit, rice or wheat grown in large amounts to be sold or eaten.
   a. Crop b. Group c. Planet d. Plane
4. WB .... is a piece of jewellery, usually one of pair, worn in or on an ear.
   a. Ring b. Necklace c. Belt d. Earring
5. WB What .... would you like ? – Large, please.
   a. colour b. size c. number d. material
6. SB Scientists can make .... in laboratories.
   a. future b. quality c. chemicals d. industry
7. SB There are a lot of .... in the supermarket as there's a sale.
   a. occasions b. conservation c. customers d. passengers

DAYS **2&3**

Unit 11

Important Vocabulary

wildlife (n)	الحياة البرية	save (d) (v)	يحافظ على - ينقذ
solar panels (n)	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية	pollution (n)	التلوث
install (ed) (v)	يثبت - يركب	flood (n)	فيضان
reduce (d) (v)	يقلل - ينقص	safe (adj)	آمن
repair (ed) (v)	يصلح	intentions (n)	نوايا
wind turbine	توربينات الرياح	storm (n)	عاصفة
reuse (d) (v)	يعيد استخدام	happen (ed) (v)	يحدث
equipment (n)	معدات	solution (n)	حل
melt (ed) (v)	يذوب - ينصهر	hunter (n)	صياد
drought (n)	جفاف	system (n)	نظام
drone (n)	طائرة بلا طيار يمكن التحكم بها عن بعد	bacteria (n)	بكتيريا
conservation (n)	حفاظ - حماية	green system	نظام ملائم للبيئة
suitable (adj)	ملائم - مناسب	invent (ed) (v)	يخترع
chemicals (n)	مواد كيميائية	volunteer (n)	متطوع
trip (n)	رحلة قصيرة	land (n)	اليابس
forest (n)	غابة	suitcase (n)	حقيبة
filter (n)	مرشح - مصفاة	snorkel (led) (v)	يغطس بأنبوب التنفس
scary (adj)	مخيف	hot-air ballooning	ركوب منطاد الهواء الساخن
rock climbing	تسلق الصخور	bungee jumping	القفز من مكان عالٍ (مربوطًا بالحبال)
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	sandboarding (n)	التزحلق على الرمال

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB Hunters kill the desert animals, so there's much less .... now.
   a. plants b. wildlife c. coral reefs d. troubles
2. SB .... are planes without pilots.
   a. Boats b. Robots c. Rockets d. Drones
3. WB There's a .... as it hasn't rained for a long time.
   a. cloud b. drought c. flood d. storm
4. SB We can .... the plastic bottles again.
   a. reuse b. reduce c. turn d. save
5. SB The snow is going to ....
   a. mix b. freeze c. burn d. melt

Unit 12

Important Vocabulary

learner (n)	متعلم - دارس	future plans	خطط مستقبلية
mostly (adv)	فى الأغلب - عمومًا	disappointed (adj)	محبط
repair = fix (ed) (v)	يصلح	proud (adj)	فخور
choose (v)	يختار	summarise (d) (v)	يلخص
explain (ed) (v)	يشرح	pass (ed) (v)	يجتاز - ينجح فى
experiment (n)	تجربة علمية	achieve (d) (v)	يحقق - ينجز
laboratory (n)	معمل	dream (v), (n)	يحلم / حلم
body language	لغة الجسد	expert (n)	خبير
eye contact	التواصل البصرى [بالعين]	dialect (n)	لغة محلية - لهجة
facial expressions	تعبيرات الوجه	national (adj)	محلى - قومى
voice (n)	صوت [بشرى]	advantages (n)	مميزات
sound (n)	صوت [شىء]	identity (n)	هوية
copy (ied) (v)	ينسخ - يقلد	connect (ed) (v)	يربط - يصل
communicate (d) (v)	يتواصل	community (n)	مجتمع
multilingual (adj)	متعدد اللغات	international (adj)	دولى - عالمى
improve (d) (v)	يحسن - يتحسن	broken (adj)	مكسور
plan (ned) (v) / (n)	يخطط / خطة	connected (adj)	متصل
manage (d) (v)	يدير - ينظم	organised (adj)	منظم
timetable (n)	جدول مواعيد	summer school	مدرسة صيفية
alone (adj), (adv)	وحيد - بمفرده	summer courses	مقررات تدريبية صيفية
check (ed) (v)	يتأكد - يتحقق - يراجع	volunteer (n)	متطوع

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b , c or d :

1. SB Some birds can .... sounds.
   a. save b. copy c. text d. write
2. SB The .... of people in Cairo is different from those in Upper Egypt.
   a. connection b. multilingual c. dialect d. language
3. WB When you talk to your parents, use soft ....
   a. sound b. voice c. identify d. contact
4. WB You should first look at the baby's facial ....
   a. contacts b. expressions c. sound d. voice
5. WB .... means a good thing about something.
   a. Advantage b. Disadvantage c. Experience d. Business

2. General Revision on Language

٢. مراجعة عامة على أهم القواعد اللغوية لكل وحدة وتدريبات عليها.

Unit 7

If / When + should / shouldn't for advice

إعطاء النصيحة باستخدام **If / When + should / shouldn't**
بمعنى إذا / عندما ... ينبغى أن / ينبغى ألا ...

Formation التكوين

1. **If / When** (عندما - إذا / لو) present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) → , subject (الفاعل) + should + [inf.]..... . (مصدر الفعل)

للنصح بفعل شيء جيد أو مفيد :

ex. You should eat healthy snacks if you feel hungry.

2. **If / When** (عندما - إذا / لو) present simple tense (زمن المضارع البسيط) → , subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + [inf.]..... . (مصدر الفعل)

للنصح بعدم فعل أشياء غير مفيدة أو غير جيدة :

ex. When you go online, you shouldn't forget safety rules.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB I will do all my shopping online .... I'm older.
   a. why b. when c. where d. how
2. WB People who are addicted to eating sweets should .... eating fruits instead.
   a. try b. tried c. trying d. to try
3. SB If they don't change, maybe you .... find some new friends.
   a. shouldn't b. don't c. wouldn't d. should

4. WB You shouldn't stay outside when it ....
   a. rains b. rain c. raining d. rained
5. SB If you don't know someone, you .... make friends with them online.
   a. shouldn't b. would c. should d. couldn't

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. WB If Mona .... (feel) ill, she should see a doctor.
2. SB If you have free time, you .... (should) waste it.
3. WB When you .... (not understand) the lesson, you should ask your teacher for help.
4. WB If there is a new student in the class, you should .... (talks) to him.

Unit 8

a lot of, a little and a few

1 a lot of كثير من

+ countable noun اسم يعد

ex.- I have a lot of friends.

+ uncountable noun اسم لا يعد

ex. They ate a lot of pasta.

2 a little قليل من

تستخدم "a little" بمعنى [قليل من] قبل الأسماء التي لا تعد للتعبير عن كمية قليلة دون تحديدها :

ex. He has a little time for doing sport.

3 a few قليل من

تستخدم "a few" بمعنى [قليل من] قبل الأسماء التي تعد [اسم جمع] للتعبير عن عدد قليل دون تحديده :

ex. - They have a few seats left for the show.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB There is .... petrol in this car. We need more for travelling.
   a. a little b. a lot c. a few d. any
2. SB Hana has only .... flowers, she can't give you one.
   a. a few b. a lot c. any d. a little
3. WB There is .... water in the big ocean.
   a. a little b. some c. any d. a lot of
4. SB Could I have .... sugar for my tea, please ?
   a. a lot b. any c. a little d. a few
5. WB I would like to eat .... biscuits for breakfast.
   a. a little b. a few c. a lot d. any

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. SB I eat .... (a few) of rice and pasta.
2. WB They like .... (a little) olives on their pizza.
3. WB My brother likes .... (a few) milk in his tea.
4. SB If you want to be healthy, you should eat .... (lot) fruit and vegetables.

Unit 9

Expressing ability and inability in the present
التعبير عن القدرة وعدم القدرة فى المضارع

نستخدم can / can't + inf للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة للقيام بشىء ما فى المضارع.

1 Can يستطيع

- **Affirmative** الإثبات → Subject الفاعل + can + inf. مصدر الفعل.
  ex. - He can write stories.
- **Negative** النفى → Subject الفاعل + can't + inf. مصدر الفعل.
  ex. - She can't draw well.
- **Interrogative** صيغة الاستفهام → Can + subject الفاعل + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?
  ex. - Can they make a good play ?

2 Know how to ... يعرف كيف

تستخدم للتحدث عن معرفة كيفية فعل شـيء ما.

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject (الفاعل) + know / knows how to + inf. (المصدر).

ex. - I know how to catch fish.

Negative النفى

Subject (الفاعل) + don't / doesn't know how to + inf. (المصدر).

ex. - He doesn't know how to do a plan.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Do / Does + subject (الفاعل) + know how to + inf. (المصدر) ...?

ex. - Do you know how to ride a horse ?

3 be able to يكون قادر على

تستخدم للتعبير عن القدرة على فعل شـيء ما.

Affirmative الإثبات

Subject (الفاعل) + am / is / are + able to (قادراً على) + inf. (المصدر).

ex. - She's able to do make-up.

Negative النفى

Subject (الفاعل) + am not / isn't / aren't + able to (قادراً على) + inf. (المصدر).

ex. - They aren't able to go trekking.

Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

Am / Is / Are + subject (الفاعل) + able to (قادراً على) + inf. (المصدر) ...?

ex. - Is he able to play tennis ?
- Yes, he is. - No, he isn't.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. WB I .... swim very quickly, I'm the best swimmer.
   a. able to　b. can't　c. can　d. don't
2. WB A musician can .... musical instruments.
   a. plays　b. playing　c. play　d. played
3. WB I know how .... a review about a story.
   a. writing　b. to write　c. write　d. writes
4. WB The deaf aren't .... hear.
   a. can　b. know　c. able　d. able to
5. SB .... you know how to do any types of art ?
   a. Are　b. Does　c. Do　d. Have

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. SB .... (Will) you use a computer ? - Yes, I can.
2. WB I can .... (speaking) English well.
3. SB Which musical instruments are you able to .... (plays) ?
4. SB Dalia is able to .... (doing) make-up.

Unit 10

Adjective order ترتيب الصفات

Usage الاستخدام

- We often use more than one adjective in this order. We don't use more than three or four adjectives.

نستخدم غالبًا أكثر من صفة فى هذا الترتيب. ولا نستخدم أكثر من ثلاث أو أربع صفات.

كيفية ترتيب الصفات :

size/description الوصف / الحجم	shape الشكل	age العمر	colour اللون	material المادة الخام	noun الاسم
big / pretty	long	old	green	cotton	dress

ex. - Ancient Egyptians wore loose , white , linen clothes.

shape	colour	material	noun

One, ones

Usage الاستخدام

- **We often use "one" instead of repeating a singular countable noun.**

تستخدم غالبًا (one) بدلًا من تكرار الاسم المفرد الذى يعد فى الجملة.

ex. - I bought a new shirt instead of the old one.

- **We often use "ones" instead of repeating a plural noun.**

تستخدم غالبًا (ones) بدلًا من تكرار الاسم الجمع فى الجملة.

ex. - These flowers are the ones that my mum loves.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB My mother likes wearing .... clothes.
   a. long, white, linen b. linen, white, long
   c. white, long, linen d. long, linen, white
2. WB It's a beautiful, ... dress.
   a. linen, new, blue b. new, blue, linen
   c. blue, linen, new d. blue, new, linen
3. WB I finished my bottle of water, I need to buy an extra ....
   a. one b. some c. these d. this
4. SB These sculptures are the best .... in the hall.
   a. one b. any c. those d. ones
5. SB Shall I buy these black jeans or those .... ?
   a. ones b. any c. some d. one

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. SB It's a .... (new / beautiful / black) bag.
2. SB Salwa is a .... (tall / young) girl.
3. WB These sandals are the worst .... (one) in the shop.
4. WB This book is funny, but that .... (ones) is very boring !

Unit 11

Future with "be going to"

المستقبل باستخدام (be) going to :

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I	am					
He, She, It, أو اسم مفرد	is	+	going to	+	[inf.] مصدر الفعل	.
You, We, They, أو اسم جمع	are					

ex. - I'm going to buy a new bag.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

Subject الفاعل + am / is / are + not + going to + [inf.] مصدر الفعل .

ex. - She isn't going to travel to Luxor on the weekend.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

a Yes / No question السؤال بـ[هل]

Am / Is / Are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

ex. - * Are you going to recycle your old phone ?
- Yes, I am. - No, I am not.

b Wh-question السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

Question word كلمة استفهام + am / is / are + subject الفاعل + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل ...?

ex. - What are they going to grow ?

Usage الاستخدام

تستخدم هذه الصيغة فى الحالات الآتية :

1. **We use (be going to + inf.) to talk about your intentions for the future :**

١. نستخدم [be going to+ inf.] عند الحديث عن النوايا الخاصة بك فى المستقبل:.

ex. - He's going to study science at the university. It's his intention.

2. **We use (be) going to + inf. to make predictions about the future based on what we can see or know :**

٢. تستخدم [be going to+ inf.] عند التنبؤات عن المستقبل استنادًا إلى ما يمكننا رؤيته أو معرفته [تنبؤات مع وجود دليل على ذلك] :

ex. - The river is going to be polluted. Many people are throwing rubbish in it.

هنا دليل قوى على أن النهر سيصبح ملوث. لأن كثير من الناس يلقون المخلفات به.

The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Formation التكوين

1 Affirmative Statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

Subject	Verb
I	am
He, She, It, أو اسم مفرد	is
You, We, They, أو اسم جمع	are

am / is / are + inf. المصدر + ing.

ex. - She's reading at the library at the moment.

2 Negative Statements الجمل الخبرية المنفية

I / He / She / It فاعل مفرد غائب / We / You / They فاعل جمع + am / is / are + not + [inf. المصدر + ing] .

ex. - They aren't sleeping now.

3 Interrogative صيغة الاستفهام

a Yes / No question السؤال بـ(هل)

Am / Is / Are	+	I / he / she / it فاعل مفرد غائب / we / you / they فاعل جمع	+	(inf. المصدر + ing)	...?

ex. - Are you enjoying your time in Cairo ?

b Wh-question السؤال بكلمات الاستفهام

Question word كلمة استفهام	+	am / is / are	+	subject الفاعل	+	(inf. المصدر + ing)	...?

ex. - When are they having lunch ?

Usage الاستخدام

1. We use the present continuous to express actions happening now.
   نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث تقع الآن.
   ex. - He's planting a tree now.
2. We use the present continuous for future plans and arrangements, often with a time and date.
   نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن الخطط والترتيبات المستقبلية وغالبًا ما تكون بوقت وتاريخ.
   ex. - They are going to the mountains next week.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. SB I .... the dentist at half past four next Thursday.
   a. am visiting b. visit c. visiting d. visited
2. SB What are you going .... tomorrow ?
   a. do b. doing c. done d. to do
3. SB We .... a bus at 7.00.
   a. catching b. going to catch
   c. catches d. are catching
4. SB My father .... to paint our flat next week.
   a. is going to b. going c. is going d. go

5. WB Hatem .... a new mobile tomorrow. It's arranged.
   a. is going to buy b. bought
   c. will buy d. is buying

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. WB Ahmed .... (go) to his music lesson at 4 p.m.
2. WB Samia's family are going to .... (travelling) to Japan.
3. WB Mr Sherif .... (be) going to England in January.
4. SB Where are you going .... (spend) your weekend ?

Unit 12

Review on Tenses مراجعة على الأزمنة

Present tenses أزمنة المضارع

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. The Present Simple Tense : ١. زمن المضارع البسيط :

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة
- I / They / We / You / فاعل جمع + inf. المصدر
- He / She / It / فاعل مفرد + inf. المصدر + s/es/ies

ex. - He likes comfortable clothes.

2. The Present Continuous Tense : ٢. زمن المضارع المستمر :

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة
- I + am + inf. المصدر + ing
- He / She / It فاعل مفرد غائب + is + inf. المصدر + ing
- We / You / They فاعل جمع + are + inf. المصدر + ing

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث يقع الآن.

ex. - I'm wearing special clothes.

يستخدم أيضًا زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات مستقبلية.

ex. - Next summer, we're visiting Alexandria.

Past tenses أزمنة الماضى

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. "used to" for regular past habits and routines :

١. تستخدم [used to] للتعبير عن العادات والأعمال الروتينية فى الماضى :

Formation التكوين

A Affirmative statement الجملة الخبرية المثبتة

اعتاد أن

subject الفاعل + used to + inf. مصدر الفعل ...

ex. - I used to play tennis.

B Negative statement الجملة الخبرية المنفية

للنفى نستخدم (didn't use to) :

subject الفاعل + didn't + use to + inf. مصدر الفعل ...

ex. - I didn't use to play football.

2. The past continuous Tense :

٢. زمن الماضى المستمر :

Formation التكوين

I / He / She / It — was
You / They / We — were

I / He / She / It / You / They / We + was / were + (inf. + ing)

ويستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرًا فى الماضى وقطعه حدث آخر.

ex. - He was climbing a tree when he fell and hurt his leg.

Future forms صيغ المستقبل

هذا الجزء تم دراسته وشرحه

1. Future with "be" going to :

١. المستقبل باستخدام [be] going to :

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements الجمل الخبرية المثبتة

I + am + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل .
He / She / It أو اسم مفرد + is + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل .
We / You / They أو اسم جمع + are + going to + inf. مصدر الفعل .

ex. - I'm going to buy a new car.

2. The future with "will" :

٢. المستقبل باستخدام [will] :

Formation التكوين

Affirmative statements
الجمل الخبرية المثبتـة

Subject (الفاعل) + will + inf. (مصدر الفعل).

ex. - I think it **will be** cold tomorrow.

Exercises on Language

1. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Rania .... a nice story last night.
   a. read b. reads c. was read d. is reading
2. SB It .... me two years to build this model.
   a. take b. took c. taking d. is taking
3. SB I'll .... the past and the future.
   a. explores b. exploring c. explored d. explore
4. SB When I .... the box, the screen was damaged.
   a. opened b. opening c. opens d. open
5. SB What .... they eating now ?
   a. were b. will c. are d. have

2. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. SB What does the girl .... (wants) to buy ?
2. SB I think, it won't .... (flying) very high.
3. WB How .... (do) people know the time in the past ?
4. SB Companies are going .... (use) drones a lot.

3. Important Paragraphs and Emails

٣. أهم الفقرات الإنشائية والبريد الإلكترونى

موضوعات إنشائية ورسائل بريد ألكترونى هامة على الوحدات كما يمكنك مراجعة نماذج أخرى فى نهاية كتاب الشرح.

Model Paragraph 1

"Shopping online"

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think it saves time because they don't spend much time travelling to the shops. And they can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have many choices online. In their view, shopping online will make fewer cars on the streets so there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people don't think the same. They don't like shopping online. They say they always have a wrong delivery when they shop online. They don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery. They prefer to try things before buying them.

Model Paragraph 2

"Fast food"

Fast food is food that is quick and easy to buy or cook. Although it is very tasty, it is not healthy. It has much fat and sugar in it. So it is not a good idea to eat fast food.

You should have healthy snacks between the meals when you feel hungry. Healthy food gives you energy and makes you strong. Fruits and vegetables are healthy snacks. You can eat a lot of them. Nuts also are very good for your body. You can have nuts as a snack if you don't have an allergy to it. You should think before you eat anything if it is good or bad for your body.

Model Paragraph 3

"Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra"

Al Nour Wal Amal Chamber Orchestra is an amazing orchestra. It's a special school for blind girls in Cairo. This school is a music school. All the students study their normal subjects in the morning and then practise their instruments in the afternoon. Many of the students at this school join the orchestra. The orchestra gives concerts in Australia, Germany and China and all around the world. The orchestra plays international classical music. They always use Braille system. They read with their hands. They have to remember the music because they can't read and play at the same time.

Model Email 4

From : tarek@yahoo.com
To : omar@gmail.com
Subject : art museum

Dear Omar,

There are many art museums in Egypt. One of them is the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art. It's in Cairo. It's a part of the Cairo Opera House. There are art works by Egyptian artists from the 20th and 21th centuries. The artists' works are really good because they showed what life was like in Egypt in the past and now. There are portraits of important and normal Egyptian people in the museum. There are also a lot of sculptures, both big and small. The museum is free so you don't have to pay anything to visit it.

Yours,
Tarek

Model Paragraph 5

"Clothes in Ancient Egypt"

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes most of the time but rich people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals. Children did not usually wear many clothes until they are about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents. Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear heavy, metal jewellery. Rich people wore beautiful gold necklaces. Other people wore also jewellery but cheaper.

Model Paragraph 6

"Drones"

Drones are examples of modern technology. They can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them. We can use remote control. This means we can control drones from the ground. In the future, they are going to help solve some environmental problems. They don't make much noise and they don't cause as much air pollution as other forms of transport like cars, trains and lorries. We can use drones to help the wildlife after floods or fires. Drones can fly over places where we can't go to. We can think of more things we can use drones for.

Model Email 7

From : ali@yahoo.com
To : adel@gmail.com
Subject : how to learn best

Hi Adel,

How are you and your family ? How is your school ? I send you this email to tell you about how to learn best. You can learn things by trying to do them and sometimes find it hard to understand by listening or reading. If you love to watch videos, you can learn best by seeing things. You can also learn best by listening. If you love music and are often talking, you find it easier to learn by listening to people explain things to you and by discussing things with them.

Yours,
Ali

4. Accumulative Tests

٤. اختبارات تراكمية

Units 7 & 8

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. When did Lama order the phone ?
   a. Last month b. Last week
   c. Yesterday d. Three days ago
2. The delivery was ....
   a. today morning b. yesterday c. two weeks ago d. tomorrow
3. The screen of the phone was ....
   a. cool b. usual c. damaged d. online
4. She wants to .... the phone for a new one.
   a. push b. translate c. invent d. change

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sama asks Ola some questions about computer games.

Sama : Can I ask you some questions ?
Ola : (1) ....
Sama : (2) .... ?
Ola : In my view, not all computer games are bad.
Sama : (3) .... ?
Ola : Because some of them can help you to learn things.
Sama : Do you think it is a good idea to play games late at night ?
Ola : (4) ....
Sama : Should it be a problem if I only play quiet, calm games in the evening ?
Ola : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Not all people think the same about shopping online. Some people think shopping online is great. They think **it** saves time because they don't spend much time travelling to the shops. And they can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have many choices online. In their **view**, shopping online will make less cars on the streets so

there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people don't think the same. They don't like shopping online. They say they always have a wrong delivery when they shop online. They don't like to waste time waiting for a delivery. They prefer to try things and see materials before buying them.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word **"view"** can be replaced by ....
   a. pollution   b. opinion   c. material   d. shopping
2. If more people shop online, the streets will be less ....
   a. cleaned   b. popular   c. polluted   d. common
3. The underlined pronoun **"it"** refers to ....
   a. spending much time   b. shopping online
   c. delivery   d. travelling

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

   ....

5. What do you think of shopping online ?

   ....

6. Where can you stay while shopping online ?

   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I have a new phone that has a/an .... to help me do my homework.
   a. motorbike   b. app   c. wing   d. headphone
2. He can speak different .... such as French and German.
   a. books   b. inventions   c. ideas   d. languages
3. " .... " means very bad.
   a. Horrible   b. Nice   c. Amazing   d. Interesting
4. Some people feel worried when they can't .... their phones.
   a. shake   b. bake   c. wake   d. check

5. .... products like milk make our body strong.
   a. Daily b. Dairy c. Diary d. Little
6. Our food should contain ....
   a. protein b. vitamins c. wood d. a & b
7. Many sweets are not .... for us.
   a. bad b. good c. terrible d. useless
8. If you .... Cairo, you should go to The Egyptian Museum.
   a. visit b. visits c. visiting d. visited
9. My son .... 8 years old next month.
   a. will b. is being c. will be d. is going to be
10. .... drink many fizzy drinks.
   a. Not b. Don't c. Doesn't d. Didn't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Would you like .... (any) tea ?
2. If she is ill, she should .... (sees) a doctor.
3. Don't .... (arrived) late.
4. If you have a lot of money, ... (you will) buy a new car ?

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Healthy diet"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Units 9 & 10

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Where did Tamer go last month ?
   a. The cinema b. The Textile Museum
   c. The market d. The zoo
2. Who did Tamer go with ?
   a. His family b. His teachers c. His friends d. Alone
3. What did the museum have ?
   a. Clothes b. Books c. Food d. Vegetables
4. What did the statues showing people wearing clothes teach them about ?
   a. Life now b. Life in the future c. Modern life d. Life in the past

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ayman wants to buy a jacket for a special occasion.

Shopkeeper : Hello. Can I help you ?
Ayman : (1) ....
Shopkeeper : That's nice. (2) .... ?
Ayman : I'd like that black one. (3) .... ?
Shopkeeper : Of course. The changing room is over there.
Ayman : Thank you.
Shopkeeper : Does it fit you ?
Ayman : (4) .... Do you have a bigger size ?
Shopkeeper : Yes, here you are.
Ayman : (5) .... I'll take it.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

In Ancient Egypt, men and women wore similar clothes. They both wore loose, white, linen clothes with a belt. Most of the time, Ancient Egyptians did not wear shoes but people sometimes wore expensive leather sandals.

Children did not usually wear many clothes until **they** were about six years old. Then they started to wear the same clothes as their parents. Although Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple, they loved to wear **heavy**, metal jewellery. Like some people today, they liked to wear beautiful gold necklaces and other jewellery.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Men and women wore .... clothes in Ancient Egypt.
   a. gold b. light c. similar d. different
2. .... cost a lot of money.
   a. Loose clothes b. Cotton clothes
   c. Linen clothes d. Leather sandals
3. The opposite of the word "**heavy**" is ....
   a. light b. terrible c. bad d. amazing

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the best title for the passage ?

   ....

5. What does the underlined pronoun "**they**" refer to ?

   ....

6. Do you think Ancient Egyptian clothes look nice ? Why / Why not ?

   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. ".................." means expensive and good quality.
   a. Silly b. Weak c. Luxury d. Poisonous
2. I .... visiting the Pyramids if you are in Giza.
   a. prevent b. recommend c. show d. protect
3. Women prefer wearing fashionable .... in their ears.
   a. necklaces b. rings c. sunglasses d. earrings
4. ".................." has the same meaning as "ask".
   a. Wander b. Wonder c. Sell d. Sail
5. Mum always gives me a big .... when she sees me.
   a. hang b. blog c. hug d. bug

6. We need good .... to grow many crops.
   a. soil b. topic c. planet d. industry
7. When you want to buy something, ... it on to check the size.
   a. fry b. try c. dry d. cry
8. I would like to .... you to my brother's wedding party.
   a. invite b. invited c. inviting d. invites
9. Rich Egyptians wore .... necklaces.
   a. gold, beautiful b. beautiful, gold
   c. wooden, beautiful d. glass, beautiful
10. Salma is able to .... English and French well.
   a. speaking b. speaks c. spoke d. speak

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Does Ali .... (knows) how to spell words ?
2. Women used to wear .... (metal, heavy) jewellery.
3. Would you like .... (coming) to my birthday party ?
4. This book is the only .... (ones) that I prefer.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"A visit to the Egyptian Museum"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Units 11 & 12

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Can drones fly ? - ....
   a. Yes, they can b. No, they can't
   c. No, they don't d. I don't know
2. How can we fly drones ? - By using ....
   a. knives b. soldiers
   c. remote controls d. mobile phones
3. When are drones going to help solve problems ? - ....
   a. In the past b. Yesterday c. Last year d. In the future
4. What kind of problems can drones solve ? - .... problems.
   a. Educational b. Environmental c. Ancient d. Funny

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Injy is asking Ola about her baby cousin Lina.

Injy : Hi, Ola. What are you doing today ?
Ola : Hi, Injy. (1) ....
Injy : (2) .... ?
Ola : I can understand what she wants from her facial expressions.
Injy : Do you know if she is happy or sad ?
Ola : (3) ....
Injy : (4) .... ?
Ola : Her tooth is hurting. I can see from her body language.
Injy : Let's try to make her laugh.
Ola : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Heba is having a fantastic time with her family in Siwa. Today, they had a picnic on Fatanas Island. At the moment, she's sitting by the water and watching the sunset. It's very beautiful.

Heba's family are staying with **their** parents' friends and they are very kind. When they arrived the day before yesterday, it was very late. Heba parents' friends still wanted to get up and make them dinner and they bring them fresh dates for breakfast every day.

Yesterday morning, they visited Shali Fortress and the Siwa Museum. Heba has always wanted to go there. She learnt such a lot of history in one morning. Tomorrow, they're going to visit the Siwa salt lake. She's looking forward to visiting it. It **sounds** really interesting.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Heba is in ....
   a. Cairo b. Luxor c. Hurghada d. Siwa
2. The underlined word **"sounds"** means ....
   a. visits b. drives c. looks d. learns
3. Heba is sitting by the water and watching the ....
   a. sunset b. sunrise c. Siwa Museum d. Shali Fortress

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   ....
5. What does the underlined pronoun **"their"** refer to ?
   ....
6. Why does Heba think her parents' friends are kind ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Green energy can .... the pollution in our environment.
   a. cause b. reduce c. use d. lose
2. His facial .... tell me that he is very excited.
   a. connections b. expressions c. languages d. contacts
3. .... are things you can make in Chemistry.
   a. Tools b. Chemicals c. Plants d. Bacteria
4. A person who speaks lots of languages is ....
   a. different b. old c. multilingual d. national

5. .... can fly without a pilot.

   a. Helicopters   b. Ships   c. Trains   d. Drones

6. You shouldn't .... noise in the library.

   a. do   b. make   c. listen   d. take

7. Diving under water looks a bit .... to me.

   a. amazed   b. scared   c. scary   d. bored

8. There are dark clouds. It ....

   a. rains   b. is raining   c. is going to rain   d. will rain

9. Let's .... some food from the supermarket.

   a. buy   b. bought   c. buys   d. buying

10. I .... my cousins tomorrow. We have arranged everything.

   a. will meet   b. meet

   c. am meeting   d. am going to meet

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. The sun .... (rise) in the east.
2. What are you .... (go) to do next week ?
3. He used to .... (played) basketball.
4. The train .... (leave) in ten minutes' time.

E. Writing

6 **Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Omar telling him what you are going to do next holiday.** Your friend's email address is omar@yahoo.com. Your name is Ali and your email address is ali@gmail. com.

From :

To :

Subject :

.... ,

....

....

....

....

....

DAY

4

1. General Exercises collected from SB & WB

ا. تدريبات عامة مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

Unit 7

Exercise Based on Vocabulary — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. .... means websites and apps that allow people to talk to each other. *(WB page 72)*
   a. Social media b. Information c. Addiction d. Technology
2. If you .... enough money, you should buy this mobile. It is very cheap. *(WB page 75)*
   a. buy b. have c. waste d. lose
3. She handed me one .... , so I could listen, too. *(SB page 3)*
   a. helicopter b. motorbike c. headphone d. app
4. Sitting in the sun for half an hour .... me warmer. *(SB page 9)*
   a. did b. gave c. sent d. made
5. In your opinion, what is the most important .... , the mobile phone or the plane ? *(SB page 9)*
   a. invention b. invitation c. speed d. shopping
6. Do you think it is easy to .... from Arabic into English ? *(WB page 70)*
   a. move b. stay c. translate d. find
7. Eating many sweets is bad .... you. *(WB page 74)*
   a. at b. with c. by d. for
8. The manager was angry when he found .... the truth. *(SB page 7)*
   a. off b. out c. on d. in
9. They .... loudly when their friend told them a joke نكتة. *(SB page 8)*
   a. slept b. spent c. invented d. laughed
10. During COVID 19, people .... at home to protect themselves. *(SB page 9)*
    a. stayed b. died c. waited d. save

Exercise Based on Language

Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you feel tired, you .... have a rest. (SB page 11)
   a. shall b. shouldn't c. should d. won't
2. .... you have a problem, you should tell your parents. (SB page 7)
   a. What b. While c. Where d. When
3. When it is raining, you should .... at home. (WB page 76)
   a. stay b. staying c. stayed d. stays
4. When it is hot, you .... drink much water. (WB page 72)
   a. shouldn't b. should c. would d. won't
5. What .... if there is a new student at my class ? (WB page 72)
   a. should I doing b. I should do
   c. should I do d. I should doing
6. You should .... your hands with water and soap when you come back home. (WB page 76)
   a. washes b. washing c. washed d. wash
7. People should wear heavy clothes if it .... cold. (WB page 71)
   a. is b. has c. was d. had
8. .... you have a headache, you should go to bed. (SB page 7)
   a. While b. If c. Before d. By
9. .... tell my teacher if I don't understand ? (WB page 72)
   a. I should b. I have c. Should I d. Have I
10. You should help your mother with the housework when she .... tired. (SB page 5)
    a. is b. isn't c. was d. wasn't

Unit 8

Exercise Based on Vocabulary

Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It was not easy for him to join the school .... team. (SB page 14)
   a. athletics b. allergic c. tests d. athlete
2. I liked that cake. It was .... (SB page 15)
   a. terrible b. fast c. delicious d. energetic
3. Football is very .... all over the world. (SB page 13)
   a. juicy b. popular c. spicy d. dairy

4. He doesn't enjoy eating .... foods. *(WB page 80)*
   a. nice b. delicious c. tasty d. spicy
5. It's healthy to eat .... products. *(WB page 79)*
   a. unhappy b. easy c. diary d. dairy
6. Having something that makes you ill when you eat it or touch it means .... *(WB page 78)*
   a. allergic b. athletic c. horrible d. special
7. Eating .... vegetables and fruits makes you healthy. *(SB page 18)*
   a. salty b. dairy c. fresh d. allergic
8. He dropped his mobile. ...., it was broken. *(SB page 21)*
   a. Ugly b. Unfortunately c. Friendly d. Positively
9. You should eat healthy food to get the .... you need. *(SB page 19)*
   a. energy b. speed c. diary d. juicy
10. We .... with our noses. *(SB page 18)*
   a. taste b. touch c. hear d. smell

Exercise Based on Language — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Would you like .... tea ? *(WB page 78)*
   a. any b. some c. a lot d. few
2. I don't have .... free time to do my hobbies. *(SB page 19)*
   a. some b. few c. any d. many
3. Do you have .... water ? - I'm very thirsty. *(WB page 78)*
   a. few b. a lot c. some d. lots
4. Can I have .... rice, please ? *(WB page 83)*
   a. some b. many c. any d. few
5. Is there .... sugar in this coffee ? *(SB page 21)*
   a. some b. few c. many d. a lot of
6. I moved to this school last month, so I have .... friends. *(WB page 77)*
   a. any b. much c. a lot d. a few
7. My father likes .... sugar in his tea, not much. *(WB page 83)*
   a. a few b. many c. a little d. any
8. It is not healthy to put .... salt in your food. *(SB page 13)*
   a. much b. some c. any d. few
9. Children should drink .... milk to have strong bones. *(SB page 16)*
   a. little b. much c. any d. few

10. There are .... types of healthy snacks at this restaurant. (SB page 19)
  a. a little b. any c. much d. a few

Unit 9

Exercise Based on Vocabulary — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Maya's favourite hobby is .... a scenery. (WB page 84)
  a. saving b. reading c. painting d. playing
2. It took her a long time to be able to .... costumes. (SB page 23)
  a. do b. sew c. see d. say
3. The things that happen in a film are called .... (WB page 89)
  a. actions b. pottery c. portraits d. information
4. When he scored his third goal, he was .... (SB page 25)
  a. bored b. excited c. sad d. polite
5. In the museum, I saw a wonderful .... (SB page 24)
  a. script b. scenery c. description d. portrait
6. I asked my elder brother to .... me a musical instrument. (WB page 84)
  a. recommend b. advise c. do d. sew
7. Tourists visit Egypt because it is famous .... its ancient art. (SB page 22)
  a. by b. of c. for d. at
8. I'm interested .... playing instruments. (WB page 40)
  a. on b. in c. with d. about
9. You don't need to pay for this pen. It's .... (SB page 24)
  a. busy b. expensive c. cheap d. free
10. I think it was a nice story, so I recommend .... it. (SB page 25)
  a. reading b. read c. to reading d. to read

Exercise Based on Language — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Do you know how .... this bike ? (WB page 84)
  a. to ride b. riding c. to riding d. ride
2. She is able .... her bedroom. Don't help her. (SB page 23)
  a. tidying b. to tidying c. to tidy d. tidy

3. **Alaa :** .... you write a long paragraph about learning foreign languages alone ?
   Soha : Yes, I can. *(SB page 23)*
   a. Do b. Can c. Are d. Have
4. Farid .... to fix the car. He can do it. *(WB page 86)*
   a. isn't able b. cannot c. can d. is able
5. How .... you able to do that ? *(WB page 88)*
   a. do b. can c. are d. was
6. I don't know .... do this exercise. *(SB page 24)*
   a. what to b. how to c. how for d. who to
7. I cannot believe that you .... say these words. It is very easy. *(WB page 90)*
   a. aren't able to b. can c. know how to d. don't know
8. .... how to answer the dialogue question ? *(SB page 29)*
   a. Have you know b. Are you know
   c. Do you know d. Were you know
9. How .... you solve this puzzle ? *(SB page 23)*
   a. are able to b. are c. were d. can
10. It is not difficult to .... costumes. *(WB page 88)*
   a. know to sewing b. can sew
   c. know how to sew d. can to sew

Unit 10

Exercise Based on Vocabulary — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It is a beautiful jacket. You look very .... *(WB page 99)*
   a. strange b. smart c. long d. intelligent
2. I cover my bed with a nice .... made of linen. *(SB page 36)*
   a. sheet b. scarf c. belt d. skirt
3. Do you like wearing modern or .... clothes ? *(WB page 94)*
   a. smart b. comfortable c. long d. traditional
4. Heavy clothes help you in winter to .... warm. *(SB page 34)*
   a. have b. save c. keep d. wear
5. Before going to the club, I wear my .... *(SB page 38)*
   a. necklace b. trainers c. sandals d. earrings

6. Egypt is famous all over the world for its good .... It is an important crop. *(SB page 40)*
   a. metal b. glass c. cotton d. leather
7. People often wear some clothes for .... occasions as wedding or festivals. *(WB page 115)*
   a. metal b. material c. normal d. special
8. Before buying any clothes, you should try them on in the .... room. *(SB page 43)*
   a. changing b. playing c. staying d. making
9. Women usually wear .... to protect their hair. *(SB page 35)*
   a. skirts b. sandals c. trainers d. headscarves
10. Shoes, bags and belts are often made of .... *(WB page 94)*
   a. wool b. leather c. metal d. cotton

Exercise Based on Language — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My mother bought .... blanket. *(SB page 37)*
   a. an orange, heavy, pretty b. a pretty, heavy, orange
   c. a heavy, orange, pretty d. a pretty, orange, heavy
2. In winter, it is good to wear .... *(WB page 97)*
   a. long, wool socks b. socks long, wool
   c. long, socks wool d. wool, long socks
3. My grandfather used to have .... sandals. *(SB page 36)*
   a. old, light, leather b. light, leather, old
   c. leather, old, light d. light, old, leather
4. Young people usually like .... clothes. *(SB page 35)*
   a. colourful, cotton, modern b. cotton, colourful, modern
   c. modern, colourful, cotton d. cotton, modern, colourful
5. Do you like .... glasses ? *(WB page 94)*
   a. old, black, metal b. black, old, metal
   c. metal, old, black d. old, metal, black
6. In the past, people used to wear .... robes before sleeping. *(SB page 36)*
   a. long, linen, loose b. loose, linen, long
   c. loose, long, linen d. linen, long, loose
7. Our school chose .... uniform for this year. *(SB page 36)*
   a. a brown, beautiful, long b. a long, brown, beautiful
   c. a long, beautiful, brown d. a beautiful, long, brown

8. Can you give me .... book ? I cannot get it. (WB page 97)
   a. this b. that c. these d. those
9. .... are my dad's shoes. I will polish them for him. (SB page 39)
   a. Then b. These c. This d. That
10. Is .... your pen ? I have found it under the desk. (WB page 95)
   a. this b. there c. those d. these

Unit 11

Exercise Based on Vocabulary — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. In your opinion, is Omar suitable .... this job ? (SB page 51)
   a. of b. for c. on d. in
2. You should put .... in the bin. (WB page 101)
   a. coral reefs b. wildlife c. rubbish d. solar panels
3. To .... means to put equipment somewhere so it is ready to be used. (WB page 100)
   a. install b. fall c. reuse d. reduce
4. My mobile doesn't work, so I asked someone to .... it. (WB page 100)
   a. recycle b. repeat c. replay d. repair
5. Our science teacher told us that it is important to .... a lot of trees to save the environment. (SB page 48)
   a. plant b. cut c. damage d. flood
6. The word "lend" is the opposite of the word .... (SB page 49)
   a. decay b. install c. fix d. borrow
7. He refused to take part .... the race السباق. (WB page 101)
   a. on b. in c. at d. of
8. Scientists think that the climate change will .... many problems for the environment. (WB page 102)
   a. protect b. keep c. cause d. save
9. People should not use chemicals because they .... the environment. (SB page 50)
   a. pick b. protect c. collect d. pollute
10. .... are used to produce electricity. (SB page 48)
   a. Solar panels b. Coral Reefs
   c. Climate changes d. Mobile phones

DAY **4**

Exercise Based on Language — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The traffic is slow. We .... to be late. *(SB page 46)*
 a. gone b. are going c. going d. are gone
2. He studies hard. Do you think he .... first ? *(WB page 100)*
 a. comes b. is going coming
 c. is going to come d. was coming
3. Next Wednesday, I .... to Hurghada. *(WB page 100)*
 a. am going b. go c. went d. was going
4. .... you going to help me with my homework tonight ? *(SB page 46)*
 a. Do b. Were c. Will d. Are
5. When are you going .... the car ? *(SB page 49)*
 a. to wash b. to washing c. washing d. wash
6. The boys .... in the classroom at the moment. *(WB page 105)*
 a. shout b. are going to shout
 c. are shouting d. shouting
7. Listen! Your baby .... loudly. *(SB page 53)*
 a. cries b. is crying c. will cry d. is cried
8. Hamza intends to buy a new laptop. He .... it. *(SB page 53)*
 a. is buying b. will buy c. is going to buy d. buys
9. Salma .... a birthday party tomorrow. It's arranged. *(WB page 106)*
 a. has b. is going to have
 c. will have d. is having
10. Are you .... with us to the stadium next Monday ? We bought you a ticket. *(WB page 101)*
 a. coming b. to coming c. come d. comes

Unit 12

Exercise Based on Vocabulary — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you don't understand a lesson, you should ask your teacher to .... it again. *(SB page 61)*
 a. explain b. study c. believe d. recycle
2. The opposite of the word "fail" is .... *(WB page 108)*
 a. feel b. fall c. pass d. lose

3. I listen carefully to my teacher and write down ....
   a. notes b. medals c. learners d. models
4. One of the mobile's .... is to use it everywhere. *(SB page 60)*
   a. dialects b. experts c. voices d. advantages
5. Do you .... what she said ? I don't think she said the truth. *(SB page 63)*
   a. believe b. look c. touch d. pass
6. To get better at something means to .... *(SB page 63)*
   a. prove b. improve c. fail d. explain
7. When they lost the final match, they were .... *(WB page 108)*
   a. pleased b. happy c. disappointed d. interested
8. If you want to get high marks, you should .... a study timetable. *(SB page 61)*
   a. do b. listen c. save d. make
9. The boy was afraid of his father's facial .... when he was angry. *(WB page 110)*
   a. experts b. explanations c. expressions d. exams
10. Do you agree .... him or not ? *(SB page 59)*
   a. with b. at c. for d. about

Exercise Based on Language — Student's Book & Workbook

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Where did you .... when you were young ? *(SB page 56)*
   a. used to play b. used to playing
   c. use to play d. use to playing
2. Water always .... at 100 degrees. *(SB page 63)*
   a. is boiling b. boils c. boiled d. was boiling
3. What .... now ? *(SB page 57)*
   a. are you doing b. do you do c. you are doing d. will you do
4. When I phoned my mother, she .... lunch. *(SB page 57)*
   a. cooked b. cooks c. is cooking d. was cooking
5. Where .... you spend last weekend ? *(SB page 62)*
   a. were b. are c. do d. did
6. Next summer holiday, I .... an English course. *(SB page 62)*
   a. am going to take b. take c. took d. was taking
7. He never .... Arabic. *(SB page 55)*
   a. is speaking b. speaks c. speak d. was speaking

السؤال الخامس في ورقة الامتحان

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

عبارة عن أربعة جمل على الطالب أن يكمل الجمل بالصيغة الصحيحة للكلمة / الكلمات التى بين الأقواس (الجمل تقيس القواعد اللغوية).

1. 1. If I go to the shops, I .... (spent) a lot of money. (SB p.5)
2. My little brother sometimes eats .... (a little) grapes for breakfast. (SB p.14)
3. What's .... (those) small thing by my chair ? (WB p.95)
4. You shouldn't .... (swam) in the sea if it is very cold. (WB p.72)

---

2. 1. Leila likes .... (a few) milk in her tea, but not very much. (SB p.14)
2. The boy and his father are going to .... (watches) a football match. (WB p.100)
3. If we go out, we .... (be) able to go to the cinema. (SB p.5)
4. Lara .... (play) tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow. (WB p.106)

---

3. 1. When Hoda .... (visit) Cairo, she will buy new shoes. (SB p.5)
2. I don't like this soup. There is too .... (many) salt in it. (WB p.83)
3. How about .... (listen) to how your cat makes a noise ? (SB p.59)
4. Could you .... (brings) some headphones ? (WB p.88)

---

4. 1. Hassan .... (not use) the internet when he is older. (SB p.5)
2. I also eat .... (a lot) rice and pasta. (WB p.14)
3. It's a long, stripped .... (snake plastic). (WB p.94)
4. When I was three years old, I didn't use to .... (went) to school. (SB p.63)

---

5. 1. Mona .... (look) online for a new phone when she gets home. (SB p.5)
2. I like .... (these) smart, red, cotton T-shirt. (SB p.43)
3. Shall I .... (brought) some cakes or fruit ? (WB p.88)
4. Can I have some more sugar, please ? There is .... (enough) in this tea. (WB p.83)

2. End of Term Practice

٢. اختبار نهاية الفصل الدراسى من كتاب التدريبات.

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. What does Injy know how to cook ?
   a. A few things. b. Many things.
   c. Only cakes.
2. Why do they decide to make a carrot cake ?
   a. Hala only eats vegetables. b. Hala likes healthy food.
   c. They find a recipe for it.
3. What will Amira do to make the cake ?
   a. Mix the flour and sugar. b. Add some eggs.
   c. Cut the carrots.
4. How many nuts should they put on the cake ?
   a. Four b. Fourteen c. Ten

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Baher : Fares, I was wondering if you would like to come to my house today to work on our school project.

Fares : Great. What (1) .... ?

Baher : Around 7. We could research some information together.

Fares : (2) .... ?

Baher : I think it's better if we use the computer. Books won't give us all the information we need.

Fares : That's true. It's a (3) .... to look at different websites.

Baher : Would you bring some paper ?

Fares : Why do you want them ? We are going to do online research!

Baher : (4) ....

Fares : (5) .... we need to take notes on important information.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

When we taste food, our mouths tell us if the food is sweet, salty or spicy. But why do some people like some types of food and not others ? There are many reasons. For example, some people don't like a type of food because they remember being ill after they ate it.

However, it is believed that you can change what you like. We often don't like unusual food because our brain doesn't understand it. So if you want to start liking food that is healthy, such as green vegetables, you should eat it more often. Then your brain will **recognise** it. You can also train your brain not to like something. For example, many people who stopped putting sugar on things found, after a time, that they didn't like sweet things.

So if you like sweets and don't like vegetables, you should train your brain to eat more healthily!

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Some people don't eat certain food because they ....
   a. ate it before and liked it
   b. ate it and didn't like it
   c. didn't try it before
   d. some people told them that it wasn't tasty
2. What do you think the word **"recognise"** means ?
   a. know because you have seen it before.
   b. photograph.
   c. learn about.
   d. like.
3. If you want to stop liking unhealthy food, ...
   a. eat healthy foods instead
   b. stop eating this type of food
   c. eat this type of food often
   d. (a) and (b)

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Why do people often not like unusual food ?

   ....

5. Why do you think people trained their brains not to like sugar ?

   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you feel ill, you .... a doctor.
   a. will see b. should see c. see d. would see
2. My grandfather had an accident when he was younger and now he .... to walk very well.
   a. can't b. doesn't know c. is not able d. won't
3. Please don't put .... salt on my food. I don't like it.
   a. many b. a lot c. a few d. any
4. Tarek is not very hungry, so he only wants .... rice with his chicken.
   a. a few b. a little c. a lot of d. any
5. Mona knows .... draw. Let's ask her to draw us a picture.
   a. how b. for c. how to d. able to
6. This email is in Spanish. Are you able to .... it for me ?
   a. translate b. taste c. say d. waste
7. Waleed can't come out this morning because he needs to .... for a delivery.
   a. buy b. pay c. save d. spend
8. People who do sport like to eat rice and pasta because they give them lots of ....
   a. fast food b. salt c. sugar d. energy
9. Before you fry food, you should .... some oil in a pan.
   a. make b. serve c. heat d. fire
10. Judy's little sister hurt her hand and started ....
   a. crying b. laughing c. hiding d. wondering

E. Writing

5 Read and complete with the correct form of these words :

visit - add - invent - act

1. Ramy's .... saves a lot of water and helps the environment.
2. The story was very slow and there was very little ....
3. Don't .... too much salt. It's unhealthy.
4. Reham is .... the museum next weekend. Her mum gave her tickets

6 Choose one of the following :

- Write a short review of about 90-100 words on a book, film or a place you like.
- Write an of email of about 90 - 100 words on an environmental problem you have near you, and how you could help solve this problem.

DAYS

5,6 & 7

20 Governorates Exams

٢٠ اختبار من اختبارات المحافظات المختلفة

1 Cairo Governorate — Shoubra Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. What object do you want to buy ?
   a. Trousers b. A skirt c. A handbag d. A uniform
2. What is it made of ?
   a. Linen b. Plastic c. Wood d. Leather
3. How did you get it ?
   a. I found it b. A present c. I bought it d. A prize
4. What is it useful for ?
   a. Work b. School c. Both a & b d. Sport

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Rania is tired because she spends many hours on her mobile phone.

Rasha : You look tired these days.

Rania : I don't know why. (1) ....

Rasha : Headaches! (2) .... ?

Rania : Yes, I spend many hours on my mobile phone.

Rasha : (3) .... ?

Rania : To check my social media.

Rasha : Social media ! (4) ....

Rania : I have a lot of free time. How can I spend it ?

Rasha : (5) ....

Rania : You are right. If I do exercise, I'll be healthy.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

When we taste our food, our mouths tell us if the food is sweet, salty or spicy. But why do some people like some types of food and not others ? There are many reasons. For example, some people don't like a type of food because they remember being ill after they ate it.

However, it is believed that you can change what you like. We often don't like unusual food because our brain doesn't understand it. So, if you

want to start liking food that is healthy, such as green vegetables, you should eat it more often. Then your brain will **recognise** it. You can also train your brain not to like something. For example, many people who stopped putting sugar on their things found after a time that they didn't like sweet things. So, if you like sweets and don't like vegetables, you should train your brain to eat more healthy food!

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We use our .... to taste food.
   a. eyes b. hands c. legs d. mouths
2. What do you think the word "**recognise**" means ?
   a. Know because you have seen it before b. Photograph
   c. Teach about d. Like
3. If you want to stop liking unhealthy food, ...
   a. eat healthy foods instead b. eat this type of food often
   c. stop eating this type of food d. both a and c

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the passage about ?
   ....
5. Why do people often not like unusual food ?
   ....
6. Why do you think people trained their brains not like sugar ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go down it on a/an ....
   a. plane b. invention c. motorbike d. tool
2. Rojak is very sweet and ....
   a. salty b. juicy c. hot d. spicy
3. Use a knife to .... the vegetables.
   a. chop b. shop c. stir d. pour
4. The children all wore funny .... to the family party.
   a. instrument b. paintings c. customs d. costumes
5. Look at those people in the street. I .... what they are looking at.
   a. wander b. wonder c. offer d. wind
6. Sara always gives her grandmother a big .... when she sees her.
   a. hang b. hog c. bug d. hug

7. If something is .... , it is expensive and good quality.
   a. poor b. old c. luxury d. ancient
8. Who will I talk to if I .... anyone at the school ?
   a. weren't knowing b. aren't knowing
   c. won't know d. don't know
9. Mona likes .... milk in her tea, but not very much.
   a. a little b. many c. a few d. a lot of
10. It's a beautiful new, blue, ... dress.
   a. big b. loose c. linen d. long

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I hope there .... (is) less air pollution in the future.
2. .... (Not boil) oil more than one time.
3. Are you going .... (sold) your bike ?
4. .... (be) he able to help with music ?

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"The advantages and disadvantages of technology"

....
....
....
....
....

2 Giza Governorate — South Giza Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. How old is Ali ?
   a. Fourteen b. Thirteen c. Twenty d. Forty
2. Last year, Ali went to ....
   a. Aswan b. Luxor c. Cairo d. Giza
3. Ali stayed in a nice ....
   a. school b. youth hostel c. hotel d. airpot
4. What did Ali visit there ?
   a. Schools b. The Pyramids c. The Sphinx d. The Temples

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Aya is asking Mona about online shopping.

Aya :Hello Mona ! Do you like online shopping ?
Mona : Hi, Aya ! (1).. .
Aya : (2).. ?
Mona : Because it saves time.
Aya : (3).. ?
Mona : Yes, it is easy to buy things online.
Aya :What kind of things do you usually order ?
Mona : (4).. .
Aya :Do you think we will do all our shopping online in the future ?
Mona : (5).. .

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

There are lots of jobs in our life. There are farmers who work in the fields. There are teachers who work at schools. There are carpenters who work in workshops. There are mechanics who work in garages. Among all of these jobs, the doctor's work is the most difficult and is more important than other jobs because **it** is concerned with people's lives.

There are many kinds of doctors who deal with different kinds of **patients**. The children's doctor deals with children who are ill. The eye's doctor deals with people whose eyes are ill. In many times, the doctors don't sleep at night if someone calls them to see a patient. Of course, we should respect all these jobs. Do you agree with me ?

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to the .... work.
   a. carpenter's b. mechanic's c. farmer's d. doctor's
2. The underlined word "**patients**" means .... people.
   a. old b. healthy c. sick d. strong
3. We must .... our doctors.
   a. sink b. respect c. hate d. prevent

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of passage ?

....

5. Why do you think a doctor can't sleep ?

....

6. Where does a carpenter work ?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I think I am .... to my phone. I use it a lot.
   a. horrible b. addicted c. worried d. deaf
2. How often do you .... social media ?
   a. wear b. save c. have d. check
3. The water in the sea is ....
   a. salty b. juicy c. sweet d. spicy
4. Meat, cheese and nuts have .... in them.
   a. salt b. protein c. sugar d. milk
5. A/An .... is a person who paints or draws for a job.
   a. writer b. photographer c. musician d. artist
6. Egyptian cotton is used to make .... clothes.
   a. loose b. luxury c. cheap d. heavy
7. .... are equipment that uses the wind to make electricity.
   a. Fans b. Wind turbines c. Powers d. Solar panels
8. Do you know how to .... an instrument ?
   a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
9. I .... able to draw and paint.
   a. am b. is c. are d. were
10. Sama .... tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
   a. played b. is played c. is playing d. to play

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. This dress is the best .... (ones) my grandma made me.
2. I think there is .... (a few) cheese in this dish.
3. (Adding) .... a little salt to the eggs and milk.
4. If you don't know someone, you (should) .... make friends with them online.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Healthy food"

....

....

....

....

....

3 Alexandria Governorate — Burj Al Arab Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. I love ....
   a. juice b. cake c. hawawshi d. chicken
2. It is .... to make it.
   a. easy b. hard c. natural d. bad
3. You put some .... and vegetables inside the bread.
   a. cheese b. pasta c. rice d. meat
4. We cook it in the ....
   a. fridge b. oven c. TV d. garden

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Tamer is asking Kamal about his holiday.

Tamer : Where did you spend your holiday ?
Kamal : (1) ....
Tamer : (2) .... ?
Kamal : Because I like the weather of Matrouh.
Tamer : (3) .... ?
Kamal : I came back on Saturday.
Tamer : Did you take photos ?
Kamal : (4) ....
Tamer : Can I come with you next time ?
Kamal : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Healthy food is really important for everyone. It helps us grow well and gives us energy. If you want to be healthy, you should eat all types of food. We need to drink much water every day. Dairy products like milk and cheese are healthy. **They** give us calcium. It helps us to have strong bones. Meat, cheese and nuts have protein in them. We need protein to have strong body. Fruits and nuts are healthy snacks. People need to eat fresh vegetables and fruit every day. Doing a sport is so important, too. Bad habits of having unhealthy food are the main **reasons** for health problems nowadays.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**reasons**" means ....
   a. meetings b. seasons c. proteins d. causes
2. Milk and cheese are .... products.
   a. bad b. dairy c. diary d. unhealthy
3. We should eat all types of food to be ....
   a. weak b. slow c. healthy d. sick

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What's the main idea of the passage ?
   ....
5. What does the underlined pronoun "**They**" refer to ?
   ....
6. Why do you think we need protein ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. She handed me one .... , so I could listen, too.
   a. motorbike b. headphone c. app d. cup
2. We .... with our noses.
   a. taste b. hear c. smell d. see
3. You don't need to pay for this pen. It's ....
   a. busy b. free c. big d. cheap
4. The things that happen in a film are called ....
   a. pottery b. athletics c. actions d. energy
5. Women usually wear .... on their ears.
   a. shirts b. watches c. necklaces d. earrings
6. Can you .... costumes ?
   a. sew b. cook c. bake d. grow
7. "............" means to change words into a different language.
   a. Waste b. Translate c. Protect d. Help
8. When it is hot, you should .... much water.
   a. drinks b. drinking c. to drink d. drink
9. Would you like .... coffee ?
   a. some b. a lot c. few d. many
10. I don't know .... do this exercise.
    a. how to b. what to c. how d. what

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Don't .... (putting) too much salt in the soup.
2. .... (Is) you able to write scripts ?

3. It's a .... (green, pretty) dress.
4. We are going to .... (travelling) to Japan.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Online shopping"

....
....
....
....
....

4 Qalyoubia Governorate

Qalyoub Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Nada is ....
   a. dumb b. deaf c. blind d. weak
2. Nada likes ....
   a. music b. food c. sport d. acting
3. Nada plays the ....
   a. guitar b. violin c. piano d. oud
4. I'm .... of Nada.
   a. sad b. angry c. annoyed d. proud

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Younis is talking with a tourist who is visiting Egypt.

Younis : Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from ?
Tourist : (1) ....
Younis : (2) .... ?
Tourist : I will stay for a month.
Younis : I'm sure you will enjoy your stay in Egypt.
Tourist : (3) .... ?
Younis : You can visit Luxor and Aswan.
Tourist : How can I go there ?
Younis : (4) ....
Tourist : Thank you for your help.
Younis : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

In our school project next week, we will be looking at healthy food. I have already started to research information about something called superfood. It can stop you from getting **old** and make you more intelligent. It is also believed that if you eat superfood, it can protect you from serious illness such as heart diseases. However, some scientists say that some of this information isn't **true**. People who want to be healthy should eat all types of food especially the fresh ones. People shouldn't rely on superfood to stay healthy, should they ?

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you eat superfood, it can make you more ....
   a. funny b. intelligent c. beautiful d. popular
2. The synonym of **true** is ....
   a. right b. lazy c. left d. ill
3. The word .... is the antonym (opposite) of the word **old**.
   a. good b. boring c. big d. young

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What diseases can superfood stop you from getting ?
   ....
5. What should healthy people have ?
   ....
6. What has the writer started to research information about ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There is a/an .... on this phone which tells me the weather in my city.
   a. app b. screen c. battery d. charger
2. Social media is very useful, but it has ...., too.
   a. information b. ways c. hobbies d. dangers
3. When you go to bed, you .... turn your phone off.
   a. won't b. will c. should d. have
4. My cousin is .... She uses sign language.
   a. tired b. strong c. deaf d. interested
5. Try to have a .... diet to keep you healthy.
   a. balanced b. long c. bad d. young
6. My grandmother spends .... time cooking in the kitchen.
   a. a lot of b. a few c. lots d. many

7. The soup is cold. Shall we .... it ?
   a. cool b. freeze c. heat d. wash
8. Durian fruits are very healthy and .... delicious.
   a. touch b. smell c. taste d. hear
9. A hammer is one of the carpenter's ....
   a. devices b. programs c. machines d. tools
10. Do you know .... to use this computer ?
   a. what b. which c. who d. how

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. These glasses don't fit me. I want the red .... (one).
2. I and my brothers are going to .... (watching) Al-Ahly final match at the stadium.
3. Can you see .... (these) birds on the tree over there ?
4. This dress is the .... (smarter) one I have ever bought.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"How to be safe online"

....
....
....
....
....

5 Sharkia Governorate — Fakous Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. When is Omar going to a special occasion ?
   a. Next year b. Next month c. Tomorrow d. Yesterday
2. Where will the party be ?
   a. At the park b. On the house roof
   c. At a hotel d. At home
3. What did Omar buy for the party ?
   a. New clothes b. A mobile phone
   c. A camera d. A car
4. What will Omar give his cousin ?
   a. Clothes b. A nice present c. A prize d. Money

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ramy tells Hany about his visit to uncle's farm.

Hany : Where did you go last Friday ?
Ramy : (1) ....
Hany : How did you go to your uncle's farm ?
Ramy : (2) ....
Hany : (3) .... ?
Ramy : He grew lots of crops on the farm.
Hany : (4) .... ?
Ramy : I came back home in the evening.
Hany : Did you enjoy your day ?
Ramy : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Holidays are good days. A lot of people like to enjoy their holidays after achieving their work. Some people like going to parks or beaches. Others prefer visiting new places.

Last summer holiday, Samy's family went to Hurghada to spend their holiday. Samy didn't have a car so they took the bus to Hurghada. When Samy arrived in Hurghada, he went to stay with his friend, Kamel but **he** was abroad so Samy stayed at a hotel. The family enjoyed their time in Hurghada. They played on the beautiful beach. They ate delicious fish. They went back home after spending a fantastic week in Hurghada.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Samy's family went to Hurghada by ....
   a. car b. train c. plane d. bus
2. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to ....
   a. holiday b. Samy c. Hurghada d. Kamel
3. The family stayed .... in Hurghada.
   a. with Kamel b. at a hotel
   c. in an apartment d. in a tent

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

   ....

5. How did Samy's family enjoy their time in Hurghada ?

   ....

6. Why do you think holidays are important in our life ?

   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. When Sara got the full marks in English, she was ....
   a. disappointed b. unhappy c. careless d. proud
2. This email is in French. Can you .... it for me, please ?
   a. waste b. translate c. touch d. taste
3. If you get up late, you .... the train.
   a. will miss b. would miss c. missed d. miss
4. Mum needs to .... eggs and milk before making omelette.
   a. wash b. fry c. beat d. chop
5. Salma .... her father when he gave her a new mobile.
   a. handed b. hugged c. hated d. harmed
6. I don't like this tea because there is too .... sugar in it.
   a. enough b. many c. few d. much
7. .... are jewellery that women wear around their necks.
   a. Necklaces b. Headscarves c. Handbags d. Earrings
8. I think electric cars will help to .... pollution in the future.
   a. increase b. reuse c. add d. reduce
9. Look at those clouds, it ....
   a. will rain b. is raining c. is going to rain d. rains
10. Most children are .... to video games.
    a. worried b. addicted c. damaged d. broken

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Do you know how .... (play) the guitar ?
2. .... (Doesn't) come late again.
3. It's a .... (brown, nice, wool) jumper.
4. .... (That) birds are flying very high.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Life in the future"

....

....

....

....

....

....

6 Menoufia Governorate — Al-Bagour Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. What's the speaker's favourite meal ?
   a. Breakfast b. Dinner c. Lunch d. Snacks
2. What does the speaker usually have with milk ?
   a. Eggs b. Cookies c. Cakes d. Cheese
3. Who cooks breakfast on Fridays and Saturdays ?
   a. Dad b. Sister c. Mum d. The speaker
4. What does the speaker have for breakfast at the weekend ?
   a. Beans b. Cheese c. Eggs d. Beans and eggs

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sami tells Hani about his visit to the museum.

Hani : Why are you going to Cairo tomorrow ?

Sami : (1) ....

Hani : (2) .... ?

Sami : I will be happy to come with me.

Hani : (3) .... ?

Sami : We can go the Egyptian Museum by taxi.

Hani : What does the museum contain ?

Sami : (4) ....

Hani : Does it cost a lot of money to get in the museum ?

Sami : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

There are many fast food restaurants in my town. Lots of people eat fast food, but I think it is not healthy. They eat this food because it's tasty, but everybody can have tasty meals at home.

The only problem is that buying fresh products and cooking them takes much time and people prefer to spend time doing other activities, such as watching films, meeting friends, walking in parks, etc. I also like to do these activities, but I am very careful about my diet.

Fresh fruit and vegetables will always give me energy for the day. I

like milk, eggs, roasted chicken and baked potatoes. Fried potatoes are nice, but unhealthy, like all fried foods. My favourite meal is fish. And for dessert, I eat fruit, but sometimes I eat chocolate.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... is an example of fast food.
   a. Egg b. Pizza c. Fish d. Roast chicken
2. The writer likes to eat healthy food, but he also likes eating ....
   a. fast food b. vegetables c. chocolate d. fruits
3. People don't prefer to spend time ....
   a. cooking b. watching TV c. walking d. meeting friends

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

   ....

5. Why do lots of people eat fast food ?

   ....

6. What food gives energy according to the writer ?

   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I like to use my .... to listen to music on my mobile phone.
   a. charger b. headphones c. laptop d. microphones
2. I don't like to waste time .... for the delivery.
   a. wait b. waits c. waiting d. to wait
3. When the man pulled the ...., the machine started to work.
   a. leg b. lever c. cover d. lesson
4. Put the eggs in the bowl and beat them with a ....
   a. feather b. spoon c. fin d. beak
5. There were .... of important and normal Egyptian people in the museum.
   a. plays b. portraits c. cartoons d. pottery
6. This snake is .... not spotted.
   a. striped b. fast c. slow d. thick
7. I got up late because my alarm clock didn't .... this morning.
   a. throw away b. get off c. put away d. go off
8. I can see some dark clouds. I think it ....
   a. rains b. is going to rain
   c. doesn't rain d. isn't going to rain
9. This jacket is not formal. It's ....
   a. suitable b. large c. casual d. fashionable

10. If I go to the shops on Saturday, I .... some new headphones.
a. buy b. bought c. am buying d. will buy

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. When she is playing netball, she drinks .... (a few) water.
2. I know how .... (sew) costumes.
3. He will feel tired if he .... (didn't) sleep well.
4. I want a/an .... (green, amazing, cotton) dress.

E. Writing

6 Write an email of about NINETY (90) words to your friend Ali to tell him about the job you'd like to do in the future. Your email is esam@gmail.com. You friend's email is ali@gmail.com.

From :
To :
Subject :

.... ,
....
....
....

7 Gharbia Governorate Zefta Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Lama bought a ....
a. computer b. TV c. laptop d. mobile
2. She ordered it ....
a. today b. a week ago c. last month d. yesterday
3. The screen was ....
a. OK b. great c. damaged d. fine
4. Lama wants to ....
a. fix it b. make another order
c. open it d. change it

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Amir is at a clothes shop. He wants to buy a shirt.

Assistant : Can I help you ?
Amir : (1) ....
Assistant : What would you like to buy ?

Amir : (2) ....
Assistant : (3) .... ?
Amir : I want it blue.
Assistant : (4) ....
Amir : (5) .... ?
Assistant : It's 300 pounds.
Amir : Here you are. Thank you.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Reading is a very helpful habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place to remember what you have read. It is better to wear your reading glasses if it is necessary. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read for **enjoyment**, just to feel happy and spend a nice time. **Others** read for work. Students read for their study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, e-mail and letters that we receive.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word **"Others"** refers to ....
   a. goals b. people c. points d. glasses
2. The underlined word **"enjoyment"** means ....
   a. discussion b. mysteries c. sadness d. pleasure
3. Students read for their study or ....
   a. search b. rich c. research d. reach

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   ....
5. Why do you think you need to read in a quiet place ?
   ....
6. Why do people read ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Football is very .... all over the world.
   a. popular b. juicy c. spicy d. dairy

2. It's important to write a .... to remember important events.
   a. diary b. dairy c. easy d. unhappy
3. Would you like .... tea ?
   a. any b. a lot c. some d. few
4. The things that happen in a film are called ....
   a. information b. portraits c. pottery d. actions
5. .... isn't a dairy product.
   a. Milk b. Rice c. Cheese d. Butter
6. How .... you solve this puzzle ?
   a. are able to b. are c. were d. can
7. We can use .... panels to make electricity.
   a. weak b. solar c. bad d. terrible
8. A .... person is the person who is not able to see.
   a. blind b. deaf c. wise d. stupid
9. Do you know .... to use a computer ?
   a. what b. who c. how d. which
10. You should put .... in the bin.
   a. coral reefs b. wildlife c. rubbish d. solar panels

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. A firefighter .... (are) able to stop fires.
2. What are you .... (do) this afternoon ?
3. There is too .... (many) salt in the soup.
4. You shouldn't .... (swam) in the sea if it is very cold.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Your last summer holiday"

....
....
....
....
....

8 Dakahlia Governorate — Temai Al-Amdeed Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. What kind of things do you usually go shopping for ?
   a. Clothes b. Food c. Shoes d. Socks

2. What kind of things don't you enjoy shopping for ?
   a. Clothes b. Food c. Shoes d. Socks
3. Who don't you like shopping with ?
   a. Boys b. Men c. Mother d. Girls
4. Why don't you like shopping with them?
   a. They take a long time. b. They take short time.
   c. They don't look at every item. d. They are quick at shopping.

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ahmed and Ali are talking about hobbies.

Ahmed: Where are you going, Ali ?

Ali : (1) ....

Ahmed: (2) .... ?

Ali : Because I have a tennis match today.

Ahmed: Great ! (3) .... ?

Ali : I started playing it a year ago. It's my favourite hobby. What about you ?

Ahmed: (4) ....

Ali : Can you teach me how to play the piano ?

Ahmed: (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My grandfather is my hero. He was born in a village to a poor family in January 1952. He worked hard at school and he went to the university. He was always interested in helping people and became a doctor. I **admire** him because he has stopped working as a doctor, but he hasn't stopped helping people. He teaches in the village school. He has taught many children who are now at the university. When he was a doctor, he helped the poor for free. Furthermore, **he** gave them medicine without money. He is really a great man.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to his ....
   a. uncle b. brother c. father d. grandfather
2. The writer's grandfather worked as a ....
   a. doctor b. pilot c. mechanic d. farmer
3. The underlined word "**admire**" means the same as ....
   a. hate b. love c. dislike d. live

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.

....

5. What was the writer's grandfather interested in ?

....

6. Why do you think the writer's grandfather is a great man ?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. If you want to be ...., you should eat some of all types of food.
   a. sick b. healthy c. ill d. unhealthy
2. I asked my aunt to .... a French internet article into Arabic.
   a. translate b. do c. make d. push
3. A/An .... is a person who does things without any money.
   a. shopkeeper b. customer c. volunteer d. assistant
4. Nadia looked at the menu and .... to have fish with rice.
   a. did b. decided c. took d. made
5. Don't get .... the bus before it stops.
   a. off b. for c. at d. up
6. Can I have some more sugar, please ? There is .... in this tea.
   a. too much b. too many c. a few d. not enough
7. This cake is made .... milk and flour.
   a. from b. of c. into d. by
8. All students should .... well at school.
   a. save b. make c. keep d. do
9. .... watch too much TV.
   a. Don't b. Shouldn't c. Didn't d. Mustn't
10. .... is a form of transport with two wheels and an engine.
    a. Motorbike b. Bus c. Car d. Taxi

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Rana .... (play) the piano yesterday. (..........................)
2. I .... (not / use) understand English, but now I speak it well. (..........................)
3. They .... (fly) to London on Friday evening at 8:15. (..........................)
4. If Aya .... (not / do) any exercise, she won't be healthy. (..........................)

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

"The computer is a great invention"

....

....

....

....

....

9 Beheira Governorate — Nobaria Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Omar's favourite hobby is ....
   a. writing b. reading c. singing d. drawing
2. Omar's .... loves nature.
   a. brother b. sister c. father d. mother
3. Omar usually plays games on his ....
   a. TV b. mobile c. laptop d. book
4. Omar doesn't like ....
   a. writing b. reading c. singing d. drawing

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Ali and Adel are talking about going to the cinema.

Ali : Hi, How are you ?
Adel : (1) ....
Ali : (2) .... ?
Adel : I went to the cinema.
Ali : (3) .... ?
Adel : I went there by bus.
Ali : What did you see there ?
Adel : (4) ....
Ali : Did you enjoy the film ?
Adel : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

My grandfather is my hero. He was born in a village to a poor family in January 1952. But he worked hard at school and he went to the university. He was always interested in helping people and he became a doctor. I **admire** him because he has stopped working as a doctor, but **he** hasn't stopped helping people. He teaches in the village school. He has taught many children who are now at the university. When he was a doctor, he helped poor patients for free. Furthermore, he gave them medicine without taking any money. He is really a great man.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**he**" refers to his ....
   a. uncle b. brother c. father d. grandfather
2. The writer's grandfather worked as a ....
   a. doctor b. pilot c. mechanic d. farmer
3. The underlined word "**admire**" means the same as ....
   a. hate b. love c. dislike d. live

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title to this passage.
   ....
5. What was the writer's grandfather interested in ?
   ....
6. Why do you think the writer's grandfather is a great man ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Shopping online is great. It .... us time.
   a. saves b. makes c. does d. pushes
2. I think electric cars will help to .... pollution in the future.
   a. repair b. install c. save d. reduce
3. The .... aren't able to use a part of their body.
   a. musicians b. rich c. poor d. disabled
4. We are going to .... to France.
   a. travel b. travels c. travelled d. travelling
5. If you feel tired, you .... have a rest.
   a. will b. would c. should d. can
6. Egypt is famous .... growing crops to make material.
   a. on b. to c. in d. for

7. You can try on this jacket in the .... room.
   a. dining b. changing c. living d. sitting
8. Are you .... remember your dreams ?
   a. able to b. can c. know how to d. knows how to
9. A .... is able to stop fire.
   a. manager b. pilot c. vet d. firefighter
10. We should use solar .... to make electricity.
   a. pans b. brushes c. turbines d. panels

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Listen ! The girl is (sing) ....
2. She bought a (plastic/red) cup ....
3. .... (Turns) the lights off before you sleep.
4. Those glasses are not good. Give me some good (one) ....

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"A visit to a museum"

....
....
....
....
....

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate — Sidi Salem Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Make sure you have a .... diet.
   a. balanced b. boiled c. fried d. grilled
2. Eat some of all .... of food.
   a. seeds b. tastes c. types d. smells
3. To be healthy, you have to .... well.
   a. play b. sleep c. study d. fry
4. Don't .... too much to be healthy.
   a. worry b. bring c. practice d. sleep

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sama asks Ola some questions about computer games.

Sama : Can I ask you some questions ?

Ola : (1) ....

Sama : (2) .... ?

Ola : In my view, not all computer games are bad.

Sama : (3) .... ?

Ola : Because some of them can help you to learn things.

Sama : Do you think it is a good idea to play games late at night ?

Ola : (4) ....

Sama : Should it be a problem if I only play quiet, calm games in the evening ?

Ola : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

In fact we should like reading because **it** is useful and necessary in our daily life. So it is my favourite hobby and I like it very much. We should read a lot of books during our free time to get a lot of knowledge. We can get new ideas which help us make our life better. That is why we should encourage our pupils to go to the school library to read and borrow books. It gives us the change to think well. Although we live at the age of modern technology, we need to read different books which we can carry with us everywhere and at any time. We have computers and the internet in our schools, but our best friend is a valuable book.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. We need to read books although we live at the age of .... technology.
   a. modern b. ancient c. old d. useless
2. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. life b. reading c. computer. d. TV
3. "Necessary" means ....
   a. ugly b. important c. happy d. easy

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Why should you read a lot of books ?

....

5. When do you read books ?

....

6. Where can pupils borrow books ?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. You .... tell your parents if you see people being horrible online.
   a. shouldn't b. couldn't c. don't have to d. should
2. The children wore funny .... at the family party. Ali was a firefighter.
   a. customs b. uniform c. costumes d. shoes
3. What .... do you think musicians need ?
   a. money b. skills c. time d. power
4. If Gamila feels ill, she .... to see a doctor.
   a. going b. go c. went d. should go
5. We should .... all our plastic to use again.
   a. burn b. recycle c. throw d. damage
6. Egypt is famous for growing .... to make materials.
   a. crops b. groups c. goals d. topics
7. I am .... draw and paint pictures.
   a. can b. able to c. do d. have
8. Don't drink water from the sea because it can be full of ....
   a. salt b. sugar c. nutrients d. light
9. .... your food in the fridge
   a. Keep b. Break c. Boil d. Fry
10. These trainers are much better than the .... I had before.
   a. on b. ones c. first d. one

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Do you think that we will .... (invents) a car that doesn't make any pollution ?
2. I don't like this soup. There is too .... (many) salt in it.
3. At the moment we .... (stay) in a small hotel near the lake.
4. Those earrings are the .... (one) my mum gave me.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Where will you go next summer holiday?"

....

....

....

....

....

11 Damietta Governorate — Ezbet El Borg Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Samir has got .... brothers.
   a. one b. two c. three d. four
2. His brother .... is a doctor.
   a. Ali b. Ahmed c. Samir d. Hala
3. Hala goes to a ....
   a. prep school b. KG
   c. primary school d. secondary school
4. Ahmed is a/an ....
   a. teacher b. engineer c. doctor d. mechanic

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali is talking to Omar about the next summer holiday.

Ali : Where will you spend the next summer holiday ?
Omar : (1) ....
Ali : (2) .... ?
Omar : I will go with my family.
Ali : (3) .... ?
Omar : We will stay in our flat near the sea.
Ali : Are you able to swim in the sea ?
Omar : (4) ....
Ali : I hope to spend a happy holiday in Alexandria.
Omar : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Egypt is famous for **its** ancient monuments everywhere. Thus, we need a museum to collect the most "**valuable**" part in one place. The oldest museum opened in Cairo in 1835. It had thousands of great treasures of Egypt on display. However, the museum didn't have space for other objects. In 2002, there was a competition to design a bigger and more modern museum. The competition had designs from more than eighty different countries. Finally, The Grand Egyptian Museum welcomed

its visitors in 2019. It is about two kilometres away from the Pyramids in Giza. One of the most beautiful parts of this museum is the entrance where there is the biggest statue of Ramses II. It is about 12 meters tall.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The oldest museum in Cairo opened in ....
   a. 1835 b. 2002 c. 2019 d. 2011
2. The word "**valuable**" in the passage means ....
   a. cheap b. great c. poor d. bad
3. Designers from about .... countries competed to design the Grand Egyptian Museum.
   a. 40 b. 18 c. 80 d. 90

b. Answer the following questions :

4. How tall is the statue of Ramses II ?

   ....
5. What does the underlined word "**its**" refer to ?

   ....
6. What is the most important part in the Grand Egyptian Museum ?

   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Eating .... food makes you strong.
   a. spicy b. salty c. healthy d. unhealthy
2. A flute is a musical ....
   a. instrument b. paper c. ticket d. band
3. Most of ancient Egyptian women liked to wear .... around their necks.
   a. boots b. necklaces c. shirts d. hats
4. When you .... something, it means you cut it into small pieces.
   a. chop b. ship c. share d. shop
5. There are a lot of floods because of ....
   a. climate change b. planting trees
   c. schools d. drought
6. You shouldn't .... your time playing video games.
   a. close b. stay c. need d. waste
7. A/an .... is a person who paints or draws for a job.
   a. doctor b. guide c. artist d. footballer
8. I don't like this red shirt, I'll buy a new ....
   a. one b. ones c. shirts d. a shirt

9. She .... her cousin in her birthday party next week.
   a. help b. helped c. helps d. is helping
10. You .... see a doctor when you are sick.
   a. didn't b. should c. shouldn't d. don't

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. It is .... (go) to rain. I can see dark clouds in the sky.
2. If you do exercise every day, you (won't) .... be fit.
3. He is able .... (ride) a bike.
4. I usually put .... (a few) salt in my food.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Healthy food"

....
....
....
....
....

12 Port Said Governorate — South Port Said Educational Directorate

A. Listening

- **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. What does Sama love ? (1) ....
   a. Sports b. Swimming
   c. Shopping online d. History
2. What does online shopping save ? (2) ....
   a. Time b. Money c. Water d. Pollution
3. Where can she shop online ? – At (3) ....
   a. shops b. school c. home d. work
4. Do you think Sama likes going to the shops ? (4) ....
   a. Yes, I think so b. No, I don't think so
   c. Maybe d. I don't know

B. Language Functions

- **Complete the following dialogue :**

Rasha is talking with Jana about technology.

Rasha : What are you reading about, Jana ?

Jana : (5) ....

a. He is eating
b. We're playing tennis
c. I'm reading about technology
d. I'm reading about sports

Rasha : Are you interested in technology ?

Jana : (6) ....

a. Yes, I'm
b. Yes, I have
c. No, I haven't
d. No, we aren't

Rasha : (7) .... ?

a. What is the most important sport
b. What is the most important food
c. What is the most important invention
d. What is the most important drink

Jana : I think the mobile phone is the most important invention.

Rasha : (8) .... For me, the internet is more important.

a. I think so
b. I agree with you
c. I disagree with you
d. sure

Jana : (9) .... ?

a. Why do you think so
b. Where is he from
c. Whose book is this
d. When did he come

Hana : Because it helps us do research and get many things.

Jana : I agree with you.

C. Vocabulary & Structure

• A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

10. We .... things when we put them in our mouths.
a. smell b. see c. taste d. hear

11. I .... visiting the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art in Cairo.
a. show b. recommend c. prevent d. protect

12. You can .... money when you buy from that shop. Things are cheaper in it.
a. save b. waste c. lose d. stay

13. You shouldn't .... outside for too long if it is very hot in the desert.
a. try b. stay c. swim d. visit

14. Don't .... your car outside the school.
a. bark b. park c. mark d. land

15. .... two eggs in the a bowl with little milk.
a. Beat b. Beats c. Beating d. Beaten

16. Mr Saber is blind. He .... to see.
a. isn't able b. can c. knows how d. is able

17. .... you like to see a film of little women ? - Of course.
    a. Did b. Are c. Would d. Will
18. Egypt is famous for growing .... to make materials.
    a. crops b. groups c. goals d. topics
19. Where did you buy .... sunglasses ?
    a. those b. that c. this d. then

B. Choose the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

20. We sometimes eat cake with .... (a few) tea.
    a. any b. some c. many d. a lot
21. When you go to bed, you .... (cannot) turn your phone off.
    a. should b. will c. won't d. have
22. I have a smaller .... (once). You can try it on.
    a. ones b. these c. those d. one
23. My village didn't .... (uses) to have any tourists.
    a. use b. using c. used d. use to

D. Reading Comprehension

• Read the following, then answer the questions :

Music has a very important role in human life. A lot of people all over the world enjoy listening to music or playing it. Some types of music are fast and others are **slow**. Music is useful for a lot of people. For example, some doctors use music for sick people to help **them** get better and to be happy. Some mothers play music for their babies at night to help them sleep well. At school, some teachers use music and songs to let students learn new languages and different subjects easily and in a very simple way. Also in the gym, music is played during practising sports to make them feel happy while doing sports. Every country has its own culture and music.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

24. Some doctors use music to help sick people get ....
    a. better b. bad c. ugly d. worse
25. The underlined word "**slow**" in the passage is the opposite of ....
    a. big b. fast c. tall d. happy
26. At school, some teachers use music to let .... learn new languages easily.
    a. players b. babies c. doctors d. students

b. Answer the following questions :

27. Give a suitable title to the passage.

....

28. What does the underlined pronoun "**them**" refer to ?

....

29. Do you think music is useful ? Why / Why not ?

....

E. Writing

30. Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Modern technology"

....
....
....
....
....

13 Ismailia Governorate | Ismailia Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Ancient Egyptians' .... were simple.
   a. houses b. clothes c. shoes d. children
2. They loved to wear .... metal jewellery.
   a. light b. cheap c. heavy d. expensive
3. They wore expensive leather ....
   a. shoes b. handbags c. earrings d. sandals
4. The ancient Egyptian women wore beautiful gold ....
   a. necklaces b. clothes c. shoes d. sandals

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Ali and Samy are talking about snacks.

Ali : What is your favourite snack, Samy ?
Samy : (1) ....
Ali : I like koshari, too but I prefer pizza.
Samy : (2) .... ?
Ali : Because it is very delicious.
Samy : (3) .... ?
Ali : I eat it in restaurants.
Samy : What else do you eat ?
Ali : (4) ....
Samy : How often do you eat fruits ?
Ali : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I'm Karim. I've got two brothers and three sisters. My father is an old farmer. My mother is a housewife. She spends all her time cooking and cleaning the house. **They** work day and night to help us live happily. We live in a nice house on the farm. My father grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps, some animals and birds. In my school, I have got a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals and birds. I'd like to study **farming** because I want to grow the main crops on our farm.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**farming**" means ....
   a. weaving b. growing crops
   c. making clothes d. playing music
2. Karim's mother woks at ....
   a. home b. a school c. a bank d. a company
3. The underlined pronoun "**They**" in the passage refers to Karim's ....
   a. brothers b. uncle c. grandparents d. parents

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ....
5. Why do you think Karim's parents work day and night ?
   ....
6. Why does Karim want to study farming?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. I'm sorry. I took your pen by ....
   a. social media b. shop c. debate d. mistake
2. Zip .... looks so scary.
   a. lining b. fishing c. surfing d. lifting
3. Don't .... your time playing video games.
   a. close b. waste c. appear d. need
4. Watermelon is a .... fruit.
   a. salty b. sour c. spicy d. juicy
5. .... means getting ill when you eat something.
   a. Allergic b. Addicted c. Delicious d. Energy

6. I have .... friends.
   a. much b. a little c. a few d. a lot
7. Old bowls were made of .... from the river.
   a. wood b. glass c. clay d. stone
8. .... you able to draw and paint ?
   a. Can b. Are c. Will d. Would
9. "............" is the opposite of "old".
   a. Modern b. Famous c. Strong d. Nice
10. I can .... a car.
   a. drive b. drives c. drove d. driving

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I will .... (visiting) a friend, tomorrow.
2. Let's .... (went) to the club.
3. When you have free time, you shouldn't .... (wasted) it.
4. If Huda .... (visit) Cairo, she will see the Cairo Tower.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Healthy Food"

....
....
....
....
....

14 Fayoum Governorate — Itsa Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Salma is a student at .... school.
   a. primary b. prep c. nursery d. secondary
2. Salma talks to her friends in the ....
   a. cinema b. playground c. theatre d. classroom
3. Salma and her friends always go to the ....
   a. cinema b. library c. corridor d. floor
4. Salma and her friends have .... lessons every day.
   a. seven b. eight c. six d. five

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Hussein and Abdullah are talking about food.

Hussein : I'm hungry. I would like to eat something.
Abdullah : (1) .... ?
Hussein : I would like to go to the new restaurant.
Abdullah : What kind of food do you like ?
Hussein : (2) .... Do you like koshari ?
Abdullah : (3) .... , but it isn't my favourite food.
Hussein : (4) .... ?
Abdullah : My favourite food is pizza. Do you like it ?
Hussein : (5) .... It's my favourite food, too.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

I love technology. It's very useful for me. Technology helps us to do our work. We use **it** every day. We can send messages, do research and play games. But to stay safe online, you have to follow some important instructions, first, keep your password secret. You shouldn't tell people your personal information. Don't make friends with people you don't know online. Don't send photos to people you don't know. Don't answer a phone call or video call from someone you don't know. If you are worried about something, tell a **parent** or a teacher.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. You should keep your .... secret.
   a. text b. email c. postcard d. password
2. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. telephone b. instructions c. call d. technology
3. The underlined pronoun word "**parent**" means ....
   a. mum or dad b. uncle c. teacher d. mum's sister

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What should you do when you are in trouble ?
   ....
5. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   ....
6. Why do you think you have to follow these rules when you are online ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. How about .... Magdy to the party ?
   a. inventing b. offering c. getting d. inviting
2. Don't put on your jacket. It's ....
   a. cloudy b. rainy c. hot d. cold
3. My dress is damaged, so my mother is .... it.
   a. cleaning b. sewing c. tiding d. washing
4. Hend can't play tennis, but she can .... a bike.
   a. drive b. circle c. buy d. ride
5. These traditional clothes keep me cool and .... me from the sun.
   a. leave b. protect c. help d. take
6. Look, that .... our house.
   a. is b. are c. were d. have
7. There's a lot of air pollution from the .... in our city.
   a. farms b. fields c. traffic d. flood
8. Farida is going .... the race.
   a. win b. to won c. winning d. to win
9. I would like to .... the phone for a new one that is not damaged.
   a. watch b. change c. exercise d. text
10. I hope that Egypt .... the richest country in the world.
    a. become b. will become c. becomes d. became

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. I eat .... (a little) healthy snacks.
2. Can you .... (to play) football or tennis ?
3. I don't like this meal, I want the other .... (ones).
4. I think Ali .... (buy) a car in the future.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"My visit to the museum"

....

....

....

....

....

15 Beni Suef Governorate | Samasta Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Mazen is a/an .... boy.
   a. lazy b. active c. bored d. sad
2. He spends .... hours studying.
   a. two b. three c. four d. five
3. Mazen sleeps .... every day.
   a. late b. early c. lately d. hard
4. He doesn't like ....
   a. karate b. swimming c. football d. running

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Sief and Ali are talking about modern technology.

Ali : Are you interested in modern technology ?
Sief : (1) ....
Ali : (2) .... ?
Sief : I think that the mobile is the most useful technology .
Ali : (3) .... ?
Sief : Because I can do many things on it.
Ali : What do you like to do with your mobile ?
Sief : (4) ....
Ali : When do you use the internet ?
Sief : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

We need many things to feel happy. We should get lots of rest. We don't often sleep enough, but this time in our life you need a lot of sleep. People who sleep eight to ten hours at night are much happier ! People should be friendly. It's good to be alone sometimes, but people need each other. Spend time with your family and also try to make new friends because this makes you happy. We need to go outside. People need nature to be happy. When you do something kind to someone else, this makes you feel happy, too. We should be helpful. One of the best ways

to be happy is to remember the good things in your life and feel happy about **them**.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. People should sleep .... hours a night.
   a. five b. six c. eight d. four
2. A kind person is the one who .... people.
   a. plays b. hits c. helps d. takes
3. People should be ....
   a. unkind b. friendly c. bad d. cruel

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the text ?

   ....

5. What does the underlined word "**them**" refer to ?

   ....

6. In your opinion, what is the best way to be happy ?

   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Kareem always eats .... olives, but not too many.
   a. much b. a few c. a little d. enough
2. Many people use social .... to communicate with each other.
   a. internet b. headphone c. media d. invention
3. Fast food is delicious, but it is ....
   a. healthy b. unhealthy c. funny d. small
4. He is .... to computer games. He always plays every day.
   a. addicted b. energy c. good d. nice
5. "............" is the opposite of the word "Old".
   a. Bad b. Fantastic c. Terrible d. Modern
6. My friend knows .... to drive a car.
   a. what b. whom c. how d. which
7. .... is bad for your teeth.
   a. Sugar b. Salt c. Vegetables d. Eggs
8. What do you use the headphones .... ?
   a. for b. of c. in d. at
9. Hany can't swim, but he can .... a kite.
   a. run b. drive c. ride d. fly
10. My friend has a/an .... on his phone which tells him the weather in his country.
    a. computer b. lap c. app d. job

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. That beautiful dress is the .... (ones) my mother made me.
2. There .... (aren't) any sugar in my tea.
3. How often .... (do) Ali go to the club ?
4. If I go to the shops, I .... (spend) a lot of money.

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

"Healthy Food"

....

....

....

....

....

16 Qena Governorate — Qeft Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Ancient Egyptians loved to wear .... clothes.
   a. loss, white b. loose, white c. loose, black d. lose, white
2. Men and women's clothes were ....
   a. cheap b. similar c. ugly d. different
3. Ancient Egyptians' clothes were made of ....
   a. metal b. wool c. linen d. leather
4. Children usually wore few clothes till they were ....
   a. seven b. sixteen c. seventeen d. six

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Basma meets her friend Amira at the library.

Basma : Hi Amira, How are you ?

Amira : (1) ....

Basma : What are you reading ?

Amira : (2) ....

Basma : (3) .... ?

Amira : The article is about recycling.

Basma : (4) .... ?

Amira : It means that we can use things again.

Basma : Do you think recycling helps the environment ?

Amira : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

It is well known that modern technology like computers and smart mobile phones have become part of everyday life. It is common to see that a lot of people are busy using the mobile phones for doing the shopping online as it saves time and gives more choices. Also, many people spend hours playing games or watching TV and that's one of the dangers of technology. Although modern technology has made life easier and more comfortable, **it** has bad effects on our lives. Some people are **addicted** to computer and this can also cause health problems such as bad eye-sight and becoming fat. So, if you use technology well, it should help you become more healthy.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Modern technology has made life ....
   a. older b. harder c. worse d. easier
2. The underlined word "**addicted**" means that some people .... the computer.
   a. hate b. always use c. never use d. recycle
3. The underlined word "**it**" refers to ....
   a. shopping online b. life
   c. modern technology d. computer

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?
   ....
5. Why do a lot of people like shopping online ?
   ....
6. What do you think the dangers of technology are ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We can't travel through time, it is ....
   a. possible b. probable c. impossible d. impolite
2. We .... things when we put them in our mouths.
   a. smell b. see c. taste d. hear

3. Athletes like to eat rice and pasta to give them a lot of ....
   a. energy   b. salt   c. sugar   d. emergency
4. We should .... all our plastic to use again.
   a. burn   b. recycle   c. throw   d. damage
5. .... use the wind to make electricity.
   a. Solar panels   b. Solar farms   c. Firefighters   d. Wind turbines
6. A .... is a large park with machines to ride on.
   a. theme park   b. zoo   c. museum   d. jungle
7. Esraa is wearing a nice pair of ....
   a. necklace   b. earrings   c. dress   d. belt
8. If Ahmed .... hard, he will win the race.
   a. will train   b. trained   c. trains   d. train
9. .... you able to help us with music ?
   a. Do   b. Will   c. Are   d. Can
10. The white shoes are too small, can I try the black .... ?
   a. once   b. one   c. two   d. ones

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Don't .... (boiling) eggs more than one time.
2. If you feel ill, you .... (see) a doctor.
3. I forgot my homework, my teacher is going to .... (is) angry.
4. Don't add too .... (many) salt, it's unhealthy.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"A person you are proud of"

....

....

....

....

....

17 Minia Governorate — Samalout Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Heba is buying a beautiful ....
   a. purse   b. handbag   c. dress   d. belt

2. The handbag is made of ....
   a. plastic b. metal c. glass d. leather
3. It was a present for her friend's ....
   a. birthday b. marriage c. success d. graduation
4. The price is ....
   a. LE 2000 b. LE 20 c. LE 200 d. LE 2

B. Language Functions

2 **Complete the following dialogue :**

Aya is telling Salma about her visit to Alexandria.

Salma : Can I ask you some questions ?
Aya : (1) ....
Salma : (2) .... ?
Aya : I'm travelling to Alexandria.
Salma : (3) .... ?
Aya : I will take my camera and some tasty food.
Salma : How long will you stay there ?
Aya : (4) ....
Salma : Have a nice time!
Aya : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 **Read the following, then answer the questions :**

There are many fast food restaurants in my town. Lots of people eat fast food, but I think it is not healthy. They eat this food because it's tasty, but everybody can have tasty meals at home. The only problem is that buying fresh products and cooking them takes much time. And people prefer to spend time doing other activities, such as watching films, meeting friends, walking in parks, etc. I also like to do these activities, but I am very careful about my diet. Fresh fruit and vegetables will always give me energy for the day. I like milk, eggs, roasted chicken, and baked potatoes. Fried potatoes are nice, but unhealthy, like all fried foods. My favourite meal is fish. And for dessert, I eat fruit but sometimes I eat chocolate.

a. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. The writer likes to eat healthy food, but he likes eating ....
   a. fast food b. chocolate c. vegetables d. fruit
2. People don't prefer to spend much time ....
   a. cooking b. watching TV c. meeting friends d. walking
3 .... is an example of fast food.
   a. Egg b. Pizza c. Roast chicken d. Fish

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

....

5. Why do lots of people eat fast food ?

....

6. What food gives energy according to the writer ?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We wear .... over our ears to listen to music.
   a. tablets b. headphones c. glasses d. DVD player
2. We asked the .... man to get us some food.
   a. delivery b. iron c. green d. wise
3. I am .... to nuts and cinnamon.
   a. bad b. lazy c. allergic d. funny
4. It is very sweet, so it is not very ....
   a. wealthy b. health c. wealth d. healthy
5. The road is not big enough for cars, but you can go on a ....
   a. train b. plane c. motorbike d. ferry
6. A .... is a piece of jewellery worn around the neck.
   a. class b. glass c. necklace d. wig
7. Wind .... use the wind to make electricity.
   a. beams b. turbines c. blow d. cars
8. I would like .... the phone for a new one.
   a. changing b. change c. changed d. to change
9. I bought a .... T-shirt.
   a. new, cotton, red b. red, new, cotton
   c. new, red, cotton d. cotton, new, red
10. Lamia and I .... how to use computer.
   a. knows b. knowing c. to know d. know

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If I miss the bus, I'll .... (taking) another.
2. I have .... (few) salt in my food. I need more.
3. We are .... (go) to travel abroad, tomorrow.
4. .... (Is) you able to remember names ?

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of NINTY (90) words on :

"My favourite healthy meal"

....

....

....

....

....

18 Assiut Governorate — Al Qusia Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. What is sfenj ?
   a. A kind of pizza b. A kind of books
   c. A kind of cake d. A kind of flour
2. What does sfenj have ?
   a. Sugar and milk b. Sugar and tea
   c. Sugar and vanilla d. Sugar and fat
3. Sfenj is very sweet, so it is ....
   a. very healthy b. not very healthy
   c. very good d. very easy
4. According to the text, when can we eat sfenj ?
   a. For supper b. For lunch c. For dinner d. For breakfast

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Baraa and Enjy are talking about snacks.

Baraa : What is your favourite snack ?
Enjy : (1) ....
Baraa : Why do you like koshari ?
Enjy : (2) ....
Baraa : (3) .... ?
Enjy : My mum always makes it for me.
Baraa : What else do you eat ?
Enjy : (4) ....
Baraa : (5) .... ?
Enjy : I eat fruits twice a day.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Not all people think the same about online shopping. Some people think online shopping is great. They think **it** saves time because they don't spend much time travelling to the shops. They can stay at home and buy anything they want in a few minutes. They think that they have many choices online. They also think online shopping will make people use fewer cars on the streets, so there will be less pollution. On the other hand, some people don't like online shopping. They don't like to waste their time waiting for a delivery. They prefer to try things before buying them.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If more people shop online, there will be .... pollution.
   a. less b. fewer c. any d. many
2. The underlined pronoun "**it**" refers to ....
   a. delivery b. online shopping
   c. money d. time
3. "Waste time" is similar in meaning to ....
   a. spend too much time b. have time
   c. keep time d. save time

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for the passage.
   ....
5. Why do you think some people don't like online shopping ?
   ....
6. What do you think of online shopping ?
   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. All tourists like to .... our ancient monuments.
   a. try b. explore c. invent d. invite
2. A .... is a small amount of food eaten between meals.
   a. stingray b. snake c. snack d. smoke
3. I can talk to my friends at drama club about ....
   a. sewing b. acting c. drawing d. painting
4. In winter, I usually wear heavy ....
   a. shorts b. jumpers c. necklaces d. sandals
5. We can .... the plastic bottles again.
   a. reuse b. reduce c. save d. turn

6. We .... things when we put them in our mouth.
   a. sew b. read c. taste d. hear
7. We can't drink seawater, it is ....
   a. sweet b. spicy c. salty d. fresh
8. Please, Adel, ... some tea into my cap .
   a. pours b. poured c. pour d. pouring
9. When it rains, you .... take your umbrella.
   a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. should d. need
10. Are you .... help me with my homework ?
   a. could b. know how to c. can d. able to

5 **Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :**

1. Soha will be fit if she .... (do) exercise more.
2. I don't like this watch. I want the other .... (ones).
3. He .... (not / know) how to make falafel.
4. I was .... (wonder) if you would like to have tea with me.

E. Writing

6 **Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :**

"A special occasion you are going to soon"

....
....
....
....
....

19 Sohag Governorate — Akhmim Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 **Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :**

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. Marwan finds it .... to understand science books.
   a. difficult b. sick c. easy d. heavy
2. Marwan does .... in the laboratory.
   a. mistakes b. shopping c. sport d. experiments
3. Marwan learns best by doing ....
   a. listening b. things c. writing d. speaking
4. Marwan likes .... so much.
   a. history b. technology c. geography d. sports

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Mazin is talking with Mohamed about healthy food.

Mazin : What types of food should we eat to be healthy ?

Mohamed : (1) ....

Mazin : (2) .... ?

Mohamed : Because dairy products help us to have strong bones.

Mazin : Great. (3) .... ?

Mohamed : No. Sugar is bad for our health.

Mazin : What else should we do to be healthy ?

Mohamed : (4) ....

Mazin : Do you have any other advice for me ?

Mohamed : (5) ....

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Egypt is a sunny country. In July, there are almost 400 hours of sunshine in Cairo, Aswan and Siwa. That long period of sunshine can be good or bad. It is good because it gives energy. It helps children to be strong and healthy. But it can **burn** people's skin if they stay out at noon. In Egypt, we are lucky to have a long period of sunshine all the year round. So, millions of tourists like to visit Egypt. In addition, sunshine is good for many crops and fruits to grow, but **they** can't grow if there isn't enough water.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word **they** refers to ....
   a. tourists b. crops and fruits
   c. children d. people
2. The sunshine helps children to be ....
   a. bad b. weak c. cold d. strong
3. The underlined word **burn** has the same meaning as ....
   a. give b. remember c. kill d. harm

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

....

5. How can sunshine be bad for people ?

....

6. Why do you think we are lucky in Egypt ?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Young people like wearing .... clothes like T-Shirts and trainers.
   a. casual b. formal c. different d. traditional
2. Falafel is really .... and it is very popular.
   a. horrible b. terrible c. bad d. delicious
3. .... are jewellery that women wear around their necks.
   a. Necklaces b. Headscarves c. Handbags d. Hats
4. My brother is .... to nuts. He must be careful about what he eats.
   a. healthy b. diary c. amazed d. allergic
5. He agreed to .... part in the race.
   a. take b. make c. have d. like
6. Green energy will .... pollution.
   a. lose b. cause c. use d. reduce
7. .... is a vegetable that is very healthy.
   a. Sugar b. Rice c. Apple d. Spinach
8. There is .... water in the big ocean.
   a. a little b. some c. any d. a lot of
9. Lara .... tennis at 4 o'clock tomorrow.
   a. is playing b. will play c. plays d. playing
10. Farid .... to fix the car. He can do it.
    a. isn't able b. cannot c. can d. is able

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Do you have .... (some) sugar ?
2. I recommend .... (look) at the clothes from other countries.
3. Would you like .... (coming) to my birthday party ?
4. Add .... (many) salt to the eggs. I don't like salt.

E. Writing

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"A visit to the museum"

....

....

....

....

....

20 Suez Governorate — West Suez Educational Directorate

A. Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. What did you watch yesterday ?
   a. An interesting film   b. A boring film
   c. An interesting play   d. Aa boring play
2. What was the film about ? - It was about a/an .... boy.
   a. rich   b. orphan   c. old   d. naughty
3. What was the boy's life like ? - It was very ....
   a. difficult   b. interesting   c. easy   d. exciting
4. The end of the film was so ....
   a. bad   b. happy   c. boring   d. scary

B. Language Functions

2 Complete the following dialogue :

Nada and Rana are talking about technology.

Nada : What are you reading about, Rana ?

Rana : (1) ....

Nada : Do you know much about technology ?

Rana : (2) ....

Nada : (3) .... ?

Rana : The type of technology I use every day is the internet.

Nada : Do you think it is the most important invention ?

Rana : (4) ....

Nada : (5) .... ?

Rana : Because it helps us to study and do research.

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Eleven years ago, Rana who was eight years old went to her father's library to take some books. Rana's father was pleased because he thought that his daughter was interested in reading. Rana took the books and carried them to the garden where there were some fruit trees and beautiful flowers. She put them under an orange tree. Rana's parents followed her to see what she would do with the books. To their surprise, they saw her putting the books and standing on them. She began picking some oranges of the branches **above** her head. They said to her, "Next time **you**'ll have to use the ladder to get oranges".

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined pronoun "**you**" refers to ....
   a. the oranges b. the parents c. Rana d. Rana's books
2. Eleven years ago, Rana was .... years old.
   a. 7 b. 8 c. 9 d. 10
3. The underlined word "**above**" is the opposite to............ .
   a. next to b. on c. up d. down

b. Answer the following questions :

4. What is the main idea of the passage ?

   ....

5. Where did Rana carry the books ?

   ....

6. Who followed Rana ?

   ....

D. Vocabulary & Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. It's .... today. I think it is going to rain.
   a. hot b. windy c. sunny d. cloudy
2. Life .... easier in the future.
   a. is b. was c. will be d. were
3. .... products like milk and cheese help us to have strong bones.
   a. Diary b. Daily c. Dairy d. Fairy
4. A: .... you like to drink some juice ? - B : Yes, please.
   a. Could b. Would c. Are d. Can

5. The museum is full of .... and many other historic objects.
   a. theatres b. statues c. stadiums d. castles
6. .... drive a car ?
   a. He can b. He can't c. Can he d. Can
7. This .... is made of expensive leather.
   a. handbag b. earrings c. necklace d. glass
8. These books are funny, but these .... are very boring !
   a. ones b. once c. one d. only
9. Trees are good for the environment and help .... air pollution.
   a. rewrite b. reuse c. recycle d. reduce
10. I am meeting my uncle at the new .... tomorrow to have a meal.
   a. home b. library c. restaurant d. hotel

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Hassan will be sad if he .... (got) low marks.
2. I don't have .... (some) cheese in the fridge.
3. Hany can .... (playing) the guitar.
4. This .... (are) my old jacket.

6 Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Plans for my next holiday"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

PART TWO

For Al-Azhar students & inclusive students

جزء خاص لطلاب الأزهر الشريف وطلاب الدمج

تنوية : تم تعديل الاختبارات طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣ / ٢٠٢٤

I. Sample tests for Al-Azhar students

١. اختبارات لطلاب الأزهر الشريف

1 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Minia Zone

1 Listen and choose the correct answer :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Five .... students were able to develop an app.
   a. Egyptian b. American c. Arab
2. This app helped small farmers to save .... and energy.
   a. money b. water c. electricity

2 Finish the following dialogue :

Mona and Ahmed are talking about their hobbies.

Mona : Good morning. Can I ask you some questions ?
Ahmed : Good morning. (1) ....
Mona : (2) .... ?
Ahmed : My favourite hobby is reading books.
Mona : (3) .... ?
Ahmed : Science books. What about you ?
Mona : I like diving.
Ahmed : Wonderful! I know it. It's a sport you can do under water .

3 Choose the correct answer of the following :

1. When Mona .... Cairo, she will buy a new shoe.
   a. visit b. visits c. visited d. visiting
2. Do you know .... to play an instrument ?
   a. who b. when c. how d. where
3. Laila likes .... milk in her tea.
   a. a little b. a few c. many d. any
4. The tree is going to fall .... and block the road.
   a. up b. out c. in d. down
5. A .... is able to stop fires.
   a. star b. teacher c. firefighter d. musician

4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

When we taste food, our mouths tell us if the food is sweet, salty or spicy. Some people don't like a type of food because they remember being ill after they ate it. We don't like unusual food because our brain doesn't understand it.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What do our mouths tell us when we taste food ?

....

2. Why don't we like unusual food ?

....

3. Give a suitable title for the text.

....

b. Choose the correct answer :

4. Some people don't like a .... of food.
   a. kind b. sweet c. spicy
5. Our .... doesn't understand the unusual food.
   a. tongue b. brain c. smell

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. make – don't know – you – Don't – friends – with – people – online.

....

2. loose – are – wear – like – I – to – that.

....

3. live – the most – Water – is – important – thing – to.

....

4. scenes – amazing – of – full – Nature – is.

....

6 Write a paragraph of five(5) sentences on :

"A visit to a museum"

....
....
....

2 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Qalyubia Zone

1 Listen and choose the correct answer :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Fast food is very ....
   a. taste b. tasteful c. tasty d. healthy
2. You should have .... between the meals.
   a. snakes b. snacks c. snails d. snaps

2 Finish the following dialogue :

Ahmed : Whose bike is that ?
Sami : (1) ....
Ahmed : (2) .... ?
Sami : My father.
Ahmed : Why did your father buy you a bike ?
Sami : Because I passed my exams.
Ahmed : What a beautiful bike !
Sami : (3) ....

3 Choose the correct answer :

1. I use my mobile to .... my friends.
   a. text b. spend c. addict d. visit
2. We shouldn't have .... fat in our diet.
   a. many b. few c. much d. a lot
3. I found a/an .... for a job in the newspaper yesterday.
   a. style b. occasion c. advert d. climate
4. The desert is a difficult .... to live in.
   a. park b. environment c. village d. city
5. Keep quiet, the baby ....
   a. sleep b. sleeps c. is sleeping d. slept

4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Disabled means someone who isn't able to use a part or parts of the body in the way other people can. The disabled are not different but they need more help. For example, the blind need special schools to learn how to use Braille. They can read and write, draw and even play music. They also need help to be able to communicate well. To conclude, the **disabled** are heroes. They can do amazing things, they need more help to live a normal life.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. What does the underlined word "**disabled**" mean ?

....

2. How can they read and write ?

....

3. What do they need to communicate well ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer :

4. The blind need .... schools to learn.
   a. especially b. special c. private d. public
5. They can do amazing things. "Amazing" here means ....
   a. boring b. dull c. surprising d. angry

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. video – favourite – Playing – games – my – is – hobby.

   ....

2. are – types – learners – of – many – There.

   ....

3. strong – Eating – makes – you – fish.

   ....

4. are – examples – Drones – technology – of – modern.

   ....

6 Write a paragraph of five(5) sentences on :

"Water pollution"

....

....

....

3 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — El-Beheira Zone

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b or c :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. The scientist speaks about ....
   a. planes b. drones c. motorbikes
2. We can control the drones by using a ....
   a. remote control b. person c. ground

2 Finish the following dialogue :

Tamer and Omar are talking about reading.

Tamer: Where are you going, Omar?

Omar : (1) .... to read a book.

Tamer: (2) .... ?

Omar : Yes, I like it very much. Reading is my favourite hobby.

Tamer: (3) .... ?

Omar : Science and historical books.

Tamer: Is reading a useful hobby ?

Omar : Yes, it is.

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. My little sister is .... to chocolate. She always wants to eat it !
   a. horrible b. addicted c. hate d. like
2. A/An .... is to present a summary, opinion, and recommendations of a film, book or a play.
   a. action b. theme park c. escape d. review
3. We live in a/an .... flat in Aswan.
   a. traditional, big, old b. big, old, traditional
   c. old, big, traditional d. traditional, old, big
4. My father had an accident when he was younger and .... to walk well.
   a. can't b. won't c. able to d. was not able
5. If I go to the shops on Sunday, I .... new speakers.
   a. am buying b. bought c. will buy d. buy

4 Read the following, then answer the questions :

The Red Sea is very important. People visit it from around the world to go scuba diving, and it is also home to many different species of wildlife, such as fish, turtles and birds.

The Red Sea also contains many coral reefs. A coral reef is a collection of plants, animals and rocks that you can find under the sea near the coast. Coral reefs are important because they are a habitat to lots of different underwater animals. But many coral reefs around the world are in danger. They are going to disappear because the water in the seas and oceans is getting warmer. Plastic is also very bad for coral reefs.

There are conservation groups that want to save the world's coral reefs. One of these is the Red Sea Environment Centre in Egypt. The coral reefs in the Red Sea and all around the world are beautiful. We are going to lose them if we don't look after them.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Why do people visit the Red Sea from all over the world ?

   ....

2. What is a coral reef ?

   ....

3. Why are coral reefs important ?

....

b. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

4. The water in the seas and oceans is getting ....
   a. colder   b. cooler   c. hotter   d. freezing
5. .... is very dangerous to coral reefs.
   a. Plastic   b. Conservation groups
   c. Turtles   d. Fish

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. area – different – The Islamic – includes – kinds of – calligraphy.

....

2. is – for – growing – materials – famous – Egypt – crops – to – make.

....

3. because – saves – it – time – is – online – Shopping – great.

....

4. help – communicate – Languages – people – to.

....

6 Write a paragraph of five(5) sentences on :

"Online shopping"

....

....

4 Al-Azhar Al-Sharif — Fayoum Zone

1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة [نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب].

1. Fava beans and falafel are very .... in Egypt.
   a. unknown   b. popular   c. dirty   d. unpopular
2. Many people in Egypt like to eat fava beans and falafel for ....
   a. breakfast   b. dinner   c. lunch   d. supper

2 Finish the following dialogue :

Samar and Aya are talking about their future jobs.

Samar : Why do you study hard ?
Aya : (1) ....
Samar : (2) .... after university ?
Aya : I would like to be an engineer. (3) .... ?
Samar : I want to be a doctor.
Aya : That's cool.

3 Choose the correct answer :

1. I am .... to fish. When I eat it, that makes me ill.
   a. addicted b. popular c. allergic d. ready
2. Ola always wears .... on the bus because she loves listening to music.
   a. mobiles b. headphones c. dresses d. tablets
3. These books are funny, but these .... are very boring.
   a. ones b. once c. one d. only
4. People who can't see are ....
   a. short b. deaf c. crazy d. blind
5. .... panels make electricity from the sun.
   a. Snow b. Wind c. Rain d. Solar

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Egypt is on the north coast of Africa. The Egyptians are kind and clever people. They speak Arabic. Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It's famous for the pyramids of Giza, the Egyptian Museum in Cairo, the beautiful temples in Luxor and Aswan, and the amazing High Dam south of Aswan. It's also famous for fine weather during the year. A lot of tourists from all over the world visit Egypt. They like to visit it in winter. They like to visit Khan al Khalili to buy presents for their families and their friends.

a. Answer the following questions :

1. Where is Egypt ?

   ....

2. When do tourists visit Egypt ?

   ....

3. Where do tourists buy presents ?

   ....

b. Choose the correct answer :

4. The Egyptians are ....
   a. lazy b. bad c. ugly d. kind and clever
5. The High Dam is in ....
   a. Cairo b. Luxor c. Aswan d. Alexandria

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences :

1. are – technology – of – Drones – examples – modern.

   ....

2. Morocco – cake – is – a kind – in – Sfenj – of – from.

   ....

3. what – eat – careful – You – about – you – be – should.

....

4. give – communication – of – new – Technology – us – forms.

....

6 **Write a paragraph of five(5) sentences on :**

"What you can eat to stay healthy"

....

....

....

2. Sample test for Inclusive Students

٢. اختبار لطلاب الدمج

Bani-Suef Governorate Bani-Suef Educational Directorate

A. Language Functions

1 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d to complete the following dialogue :**

Essam is telling Maher what he did last weekend.

Maher: What did you do last weekend ?

Essam : (1) ....

a. I played football. b. I went swimming.
c. I went to the museum. d. I visited my uncle.

Maher: Does your brother love playing football ?

Essam : (2) ....

a. No, she isn't. b. Yes, we do. c. Yes, he does. d. No, I don't.

Maher: (3) ....

a. When did you play tennis ? b. Where did you play football ?
c. Why did you play tennis ? d. How was the match ?

Essam : We played in the club.

Maher: Did you enjoy playing ?

Essam : (4) ....

a. Yes, we will. b. No, I don't. c. No, he didn't. d. Yes, we did.

Maher: (5) ....

a. Can I play with you ? b. Were they at the club ?
c. Have you got any hobbies ? d. Did you have lunch ?

Essam : Sure. We will be happy.

B. Reading Comprehension

2 Read the following, then answer the questions :

Sara likes clothes very much. She always goes shopping for new **fashionable** clothes. She likes colourful comfortable clothes. She likes to feel relaxed in her clothes. Her favourite colours are orange and yellow. She likes wearing a headscarf which matches the clothes she wears. Sara doesn't like traditional clothes. She thinks that they are something from the past. Her handbag is always the same colour of her blouse. She always wears sunglasses even in winter ! Her friends think that Sara is so **smart**. Sometimes they ask her from where she buys her cool clothes, but she never tells them !

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. .... is the opposite of **"fashionable"**.
   a. Colourful b. Comfortable c. Favourite d. Traditional
2. Sara likes .... clothes.
   a. fashionable b. old c. traditional d. the countryside
3. Sara's friends think she is ....
   a. smart b. special c. stupid d. local
4. Her favourite colours are orange and ....
   a. red b. white c. blue d. yellow
5. Her handbag is always the same colour of her ....
   a. headscarf b. shoes c. blouse d. dress
6. The underlined word "**smart**" means ....
   a. bad b. silly c. old d. good looking

C. Vocabulary & Structure

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There are .... students in class today.
   a. a little b. little c. a few d. a lot
2. No, I .... be free tomorrow.
   a. don't b. am not c. haven't d. won't
3. What are you going to .... next weekend ?
   a. do b. doing c. done d. did
4. Do you know how to .... an instrument ? - Yes, I do.
   a. plays b. play c. played d. playing
5. I don't like to have .... salt in my food because it is not very healthy.
   a. some b. many c. any d. several

4 **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :**

1. Many .... people can read using Braille.
   a. deaf b. strange c. blind d. disabled
2. Don't .... your time playing video games.
   a. close b. waste c. appear d. need
3. A flute is a musical ....
   a. instrument b. tool c. machine d. band
4. .... your food in the fridge.
   a. Break b. Boil c. Fry d. Keep
5. "Busy" is the opposite of ....
   a. scary b. free c. afraid d. boring
6. The teacher showed us the .... answers of the exam.
   a. false b. bad c. correct d. wrong
7. .... is something that gives you the power to do things.
   a. Plan b. Offer c. Problem d. Energy
8. My brother is a .... in the orchestra.
   a. owner b. player c. musician d. robot

D. Writing

5 **Choose the correct order of the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c, or d :**

We loved the beach best.
I hope to go there again this summer.
Last summer, we visited Alexandria.
We also enjoyed the nice weather.

a. Last summer, we visited Alexandria.
   We loved the beach best.
   We also enjoyed the nice weather
   I hope to go there again this summer.

b. We also enjoyed the nice weather.
   I hope to go there again this summer.
   Last summer we visited Alexandria.
   We loved the beach best.

c. I hope to go there again this summer.
   We loved the beach best.
   Last summer, we visited Alexandria.
   We also enjoyed the nice weather.

d. Last summer, we visited Alexandria.
   I hope to go there again this summer.
   We loved the beach best.
   We also enjoyed the nice weather.

Quick Look

An hour before the Exam

تمكن من مراجعة منهجك فى ساعة واحدة قبل الامتحان

أهم الأفكار المتكررة فى الامتحانات السابقة والتى تعتبر من أهم مواضع الامتحانات.

السؤال الأول فى ورقة الامتحان

A. Listening

1 A. Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

استمع إلى معلمك واختر الإجابة الصحيحة (نصوص الاستماع فى نهاية الكتاب).

1. When did Hani visit the museum ?
   a. Last week b. Last month c. Last year d. Last May
2. Where is the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art ?
   a. In Luxor b. In Giza c. In Cairo d. In Aswan
3. How much did Hani pay for the visit ?
   a. 20 pounds b. A little money c. Nothing d. Much money
4. What did Hani see there ?
   a. Sculptures b. Pyramids c. Portraits d. Instruments

B. Listen and choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Nadia has gone to .... since last April.
   a. England b. France c. Germany d. Japan
2. She wanted to .... her English.
   a. forget b. break c. improve d. take
3. She is studying now with .... learners.
   a. expert b. old c. young d. fast
4. Every .... , she is taken to famous English places.
   a. weekend b. month c. day d. year

السؤال الثانى فى ورقة الامتحان

B. Language Functions

2 A. Complete the following dialogue :

Hossam is talking with a tourist who will stay three weeks in Egypt.

Hossam : Welcome to Egypt. Where are you from ?

Tourist : (1) ....

Hossam : (2) .... ?

Tourist : I'll stay here for 3 weeks.

Hossam : I'm sure you 'll enjoy your stay in Egypt.

Tourist : (3) .... ?

Hossam : You can visit Luxor and Aswan.

Tourist : How can I go there ?

Hossam : (4) ....

Tourist : Thank you for your help.

Hossam : (5) .... *(Qena – Dishna 2023)*

B. Complete the following dialogue :

Mohamed is buying a jacket at a clothes shop.

Salesman : Hi. How can I help you ?

Mohamed : Hi, I'm looking for a jacket.

Salesman : How do you like your jacket, long or short ?

Mohamed : (1) ....

Salesman : What colour would you like ?

Mohamed : (2) ....

Salesman : (3) .... ?

Mohamed : It fits me. (4) .... ?

Salesman : It's 200 pounds.

Mohamed : (5) .... *(Beni Suef - Nasser 2022)*

السؤال الثالث في ورقة الامتحان

C. Reading Comprehension

3 Read the following then answer the questions :

Reading is a very helpful habit. It gives us new ideas and improves our language. When you read, you need to be in a quiet place. It is better to wear your reading glasses to keep headache away. You should read different topics. To remember what you read, it is a good idea to have a pen in your hand to underline or circle the important points. Try to discuss what you have read with your friends. People read for different goals. Some people read for **enjoyment** just to feel happy and spend a nice time. Others read for work. Students read for **their** study or research. All of us read the news and the weather report. We also read messages, emails, and letters that we receive.

a. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The underlined word "**enjoyment**" means ....
   a. discussion b. mysteries c. sadness d. pleasure
2. Many people read for different ....
   a. goals b. lessons c. breaks d. jobs
3. The underlined word "**their**" refers to ....
   a. students b. doctors c. engineers d. teachers

b. Answer the following questions :

4. Give a suitable title for this passage.

....

5. Why do you think reading is important ?

....

6. How can you remember what you read ?

....

D. Vocabulary & Structure

السؤال الرابع في ورقة الامتحان

4 A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. There is a great .... from the top of the tower. *(Fayoum – Youssef El-Sadeek 2023)*
   a. revision b. interview c. view d. review
2. My parents don't .... me to watch TV at night. *(Minya El-Qamh-Sharkia 2022)*
   a. drop b. let c. allow d. share
3. .... food tastes hot. *(Minya El-Qamh-Sharkia 2023)*
   a. Juicy b. Nice c. Sweet d. Spicy
4. "Braille" is a special writing for the .... *(El Matarya – Cairo 2023)*
   a. blind b. deaf c. orchestra d. disabled
5. Women like to wear .... around their necks. *(Rasheed - Beheira 2022)*
   a. boots b. necklaces c. skirts d. jeans
6. Many cars on the roads causes more ....
   a. floods b. inventions
   c. pollution d. earthquakes
7. Keep quiet, the baby .... *(Benha - Qalyubia 2023)*
   a. sleep b. sleeps c. is sleeping d. sleeping

8. Next year, I .... in the third year of prep school. *(Faqous - Sharkia 2023)*
   a. will be b. am c. was d. have
9. I don't like to have .... salt in my food because it is not very healthy. *(Harm - Giza 2022)*
   a. some b. any c. many d. several
10. .... you able to draw and paint ? *(Obour - Qalyubia 2023)*
   a. Can b. Are c. Will d. Would

B. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. He works hard to .... his dream. *(Tamiya - Fayoum 2022)*
   a. fail b. achieve c. miss d. lose
2. If the shops close, then lots of other .... like cafés will close, too. *(Qallin - Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)*
   a. jobs b. businesses c. ideas d. circles
3. Which of these is not a dairy product ? *(Maghagha – Minya 2022)*
   a. Milk b. Cheese c. Rice d. Butter
4. My friend is good at writing .... for plays. *(Maadi - Cairo 2023)*
   a. scripts b. scenery c. costumes d. instruments
5. There is a beautiful .... sheet on my bed. I prefer it. *(Qaha - Qalyubia 2022)*
   a. metal b. plastic c. linen d. leather
6. .... Panels make electricity from the sun. *(Kotor - Gharbia 2022)*
   a. Snow b. Wind c. Lunar d. Solar
7. People often use .... language in their everyday life. *(Tebin - Cairo 2022)*
   a. busy b. face c. body d. head
8. We went to the island in a/an .... boat. *(Kafr Sakr - Sharkia 2023)*
   a. wooden, long, old b. long, old, wooden
   c. old, wooden, long d. wooden, old, long
9. I'm .... to travel to Aswan. *(Ahnasia - Beni Suef 2023)*
   a. go b. going c. goes d. went
10. He .... spend most of his money on toys. *(Matay - Minya 2022)*
   a. a use b. uses c. used to d. using

السؤال الخامس فى ورقة الامتحان

5 A. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. If Emad goes to England, he .... (visit) London. *(Rafah – North Sinai 2022)*
2. He wasn't very hungry, so he didn't eat .... (little) rice. *(Shohada – Menoufia 2023)*
3. Do you know .... (what) to do make up ? *(Montazah – Alexandria 2022)*
4. They both wore .... (white, linen, loose) clothes with a belt. *(Armant – Luxor 2023)*

B. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word(s) in brackets :

1. Hanin .... (doesn't) go to school yesterday. *(El Tor – South Sinai 2022)*
2. You .... (should) stay up late if you have to get up early. *(El Sayeda Zeinab – Cairo 2023)*
3. Don't .... (putting) too much salt in the soup. *(Burg Al Arab - Alexandria 2023)*
4. Shall I .... (bringing) you a cup of coffee ? *(El Masara – Cairo 2022)*

E. Writing

السؤال السادس فى ورقة الامتحان

6 A. Write a paragraph of about NINETY (90) words on :

"Online shopping"

....
....
....
....

B. Write an email of about NINETY (90) words :

(Shebeen El Qanater – Qalyoubia 2023) (Nasr El Nuba – Aswan 2022)

"To your friend Sama telling her about "your healthy diet". Your friend's email address is sama@gmail.com. Your name is Maha and your email address is maha@yahoo.com"

From :
To :
Subject :

.... ,
....
....
....

Listening Texts

نصوص استماع

⊙ Listening (Day 1) :

A. My friend Randa loves using social media. She can't stop using it and has become addicted to it. She uses her mobile to watch many videos and talk to her friends.

B. For Dareen, the best way to remember English grammar is to make up a song about it! Then she sings the song quietly to herself. She says it is a great way to remember irregular verbs! Dareen learns best by listening.

Accumulative Tests

Test on | Units 7 & 8

Lama ordered a new mobile phone last week and the delivery was today morning. When she opened the box, the screen was damaged. She would like to change the phone for a new one.

Test on | Units 9 & 10

Tamer went to the Textile Museum in Cairo last month. He went with his friends. The museum has lots of clothes. The statues showing people wearing the clothes taught them about life in the past.

Test on | Units 11 & 12

Drones can fly, but they don't need a person to fly them. We can fly them by using remote controls. In the future, drones are going to help solve some environmental problems.

End of Term Practice

Amira : Hi, Injy. Do you know how to cook ?

Injy : Yes, I can cook a few things. What do you want to make ?

Amira : Shall we make a cake for Hala ? It's her birthday tomorrow.

Injy : Good idea! She likes healthy food, so if we want to make her something healthy, we should make a carrot cake.

Amira : Okay. We will need a recipe. Here's one on my phone.

Injy : What do we need ?

Amira : We need some flour, a lot of carrots, a little sugar and some eggs.

Injy : Good. I think we have all of those. What shall I do, Amira ?

Amira : Perhaps you could mix the flour and sugar in a bowl, Injy, I'll cut the carrots.

Injy : Okay. How old will Hala be ?

Amira : She is fourteen tomorrow.

Injy : If she is fourteen, we should put fourteen nuts on the cake when it's cooked. She likes nuts.

Amira : That's a good idea!

Listening Texts of Governorate Exams

1 Cairo Governorate
Shoubra Directorate

I went shopping yesterday. I wanted to buy a handbag. I found a very good one. It's made of leather. I bought it at once. It's very useful for school and work.

2 Giza Governorate
South Giza Directorate

My friend Ali is fourteen years old. Last year, he went to Luxor with his family. They stayed in a nice hotel. Ali visited the temples and enjoyed a lot.

3 Alexandria Governorate
Burj Al Arab Directorate

Hawawshi is Egyptian food. I love hawawshi so much. It's easy to make it. You can put some meat and vegetables inside the bread. We cook it in the oven.

4 Qalyoubia Governorate
Qalyoub Directorate

My friend Nada is blind. She likes music so much. She plays the violin. I'm proud of Nada. She is a very clever girl.

5 Sharkia Governorate
Fakous Directorate

Omar's friend invited him to his birthday party. He is going to have a party next month. The party will be at a hotel. Omar bought a camera for his friend as a nice present. Omar is very excited.

6 Menoufia Governorate
Al-Bagour Directorate

Breakfast is my favourite meal. I usually have cakes with milk. My sister cooks breakfast on Fridays and Saturdays. I like to help my mother. I prefer to have beans and eggs for breakfast at the weekend.

7 Gharbia Governorate
Zefta Directorate

Lama ordered a mobile online a week ago. It was broken. The screen was damaged, so she wanted to change it. She asked the assistant to send her another one.

8 Dakahlia Governorate
Temai Al-Amdeed Directorate

I like to go shopping at the weekends. I usually go shopping for clothes. I don't enjoy shopping for food. I don't like shopping with my mother. My mother takes a long time in shopping.

9 Beheira Governorate
Nobaria Directorate

My friend Omar likes drawing. His sister loves nature. Omar usually plays games on his mobile. Omar doesn't like reading.

10 Kafr El-Sheikh Governorate
Sidi Salem Directorate

To be healthy, you should have a balanced diet. You should eat some of all types of food. It's important to sleep well. Don't worry too much to be healthy.

11 Damietta Governorate
Ezbet El Borg Directorate

Samir has got two brothers. His brother Ali is a doctor. He has one sister. She is called Hala. Hala goes to primary school. Samir's second brother is called Ahmed. He is an engineer.

12 Port Said Governorate
South Port Said Directorate

My friend Sama loves shopping online. Online shopping saves time. We can shop online at home. Sama doesn't like going to the shops.

13 Ismailia Governorate
Ismailia Directorate

Ancient Egyptians' clothes were simple. They loved to wear expensive metal jewellery. They wore expensive leather shoes. The ancient Egyptian women wore beautiful gold necklaces.

14 Fayoum Governorate
Itsa Directorate

Salma is a student at prep two. She likes to talk to her friends in the playground. Salma and her friends always go to the library. Salma and her friends have six lessons every day.

15 Beni Suef Governorate
Samasta Directorate

My friend Mazen is an active boy. He spends five hours studying. Mazin sleeps early every day. He plays football, but he doesn't like karate.

16 Qena Governorate
Qeft Directorate

Ancient Egyptians loved to wear loose, white clothes. Men and women's clothes were similar. Ancient Egyptian's clothes were made of linen. Children usually wore few clothes till they were seven.

17 Minia Governorate
Samalout Directorate

Heba is buying a beautiful handbag. It's made of fine leather. She buys it as a present for her friend's success. The handbag's price is 200 LE.

18 Assiut Governorate
Al Qusia Directorate

Sfenj is a kind of cake. It has sugar and milk. Sfenj is very sweet, so it is not very healthy. We can eat sfenj for breakfast with tea or milk.

19 Sohag Governorate
Akhmim Directorate

Marwan finds it easy to understand science books. He does experiments

in the laboratory of his school. He learns best by doing things. He likes technology so much.

20 **Suez Governorate**
West Suez Directorate

I watched an interesting film yesterday. The film was about an orphan boy. The boy's life was very difficult. The end of the film was so happy.

Sample tests for Al-Azhar Students

1 **Minia Zone**

There were five Egyptian students were able to develop an app. This app helped small farmers to save water and energy. They were very clever students.

2 **Qalyubia Zone**

We all know that fast food is very tasty, but it's very unhealthy. You should have snacks between meals such as vegetables and fruits.

3 **El-Beheira Zone**

There is an interview with a famous scientist about drones. He says that we can control the drones by using a remote control.

4 **Fayoum zone**

Fava beans and falafel are very popular in Egypt. Many people in Egypt like to eat fava beans and falafel for breakfast. Tourists eat these kinds of food in Egypt.

Quick look an hour before the Exam

A. Last month, Hani visited the Museum of Modern Egyptian Art in Cairo. It's for free to visit. He saw portraits of important and normal Egyptian people.

B. Nadia has gone to England since last April. She wanted to improve her English. She is studying now with young learners from around the world. Every weekend, she is taken to famous English places.